

A COLLECTION OF  
Voyages round the World:  
PERFORMED

By ROYAL AUTHORITY.

Containing a complete HISTORICAL ACCOUNT of,

Captain C O O K ' s

First, Second, Third and Last

V O Y A G E S,

UNDERTAKEN

For making New Discoveries, &c. *viz.*

His FIRST—in the *Endeavour*, in the Years 1768, 1769, 1770, and 1771, in the Southern Hemisphere, &c.

His SECOND—in the *Resolution* and *Adventure*, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775, for making further *Discoveries* towards the South Pole, and round the World.

His THIRD and LAST—in the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, to the *Pacific Ocean*, in the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780, in the Northern Hemisphere, &c. Comprehending the Life and Death of *Capt. Cook*, &c. Together with *Capt. Furneaux's* Narrative of his Proceedings in the *Adventure* during the Separation of the Ships in the Second Voyage, in which Period several of his People were destroyed by the Natives of *Queen Charlotte's Sound*.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

Genuine Narratives of *other Voyages of Discovery round the World*, &c. *viz.* those of Lord BYRON, Capt. WALLIS, Capt. CARTERET, Lord MULGRAVE, Lord ANSON, Mr. PARKINSON, Capt. LUTWIDGE, Mess. IVES, MIDDLETON, SMITH, &c. &c. Including the Substance of all the most remarkable and important *Travels* and *Journeys*, which have been undertaken at various Times to the different Quarters of the World.

THE WHOLE COMPREHENDING

A full Account of whatever is curious, entertaining, and useful, both by Sea and Land, in the various Countries of the known World.

Being the most elegant and perfect Work of the Kind.

Illustrated with a vast Number of Copperplates finely engraved by the most eminent Masters.

---

This EDITION is compiled from the AUTHENTIC JOURNALS of several Principal Officers and other Gentlemen of the most distinguished *naval* and *philosophical* Abilities, who sailed in the various Ships.

---

V O L. V.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed for A. MILLAR, W. LAW, and R. CATER. 1790.

[ Price 2l. unbound in Eighty Numbers. ]

# **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**

## **Rare Books from 1600-1800**

### **ERRATA NOTICE**

One or more conditions of the original document may affect the quality of the image, such as:

Discolored pages

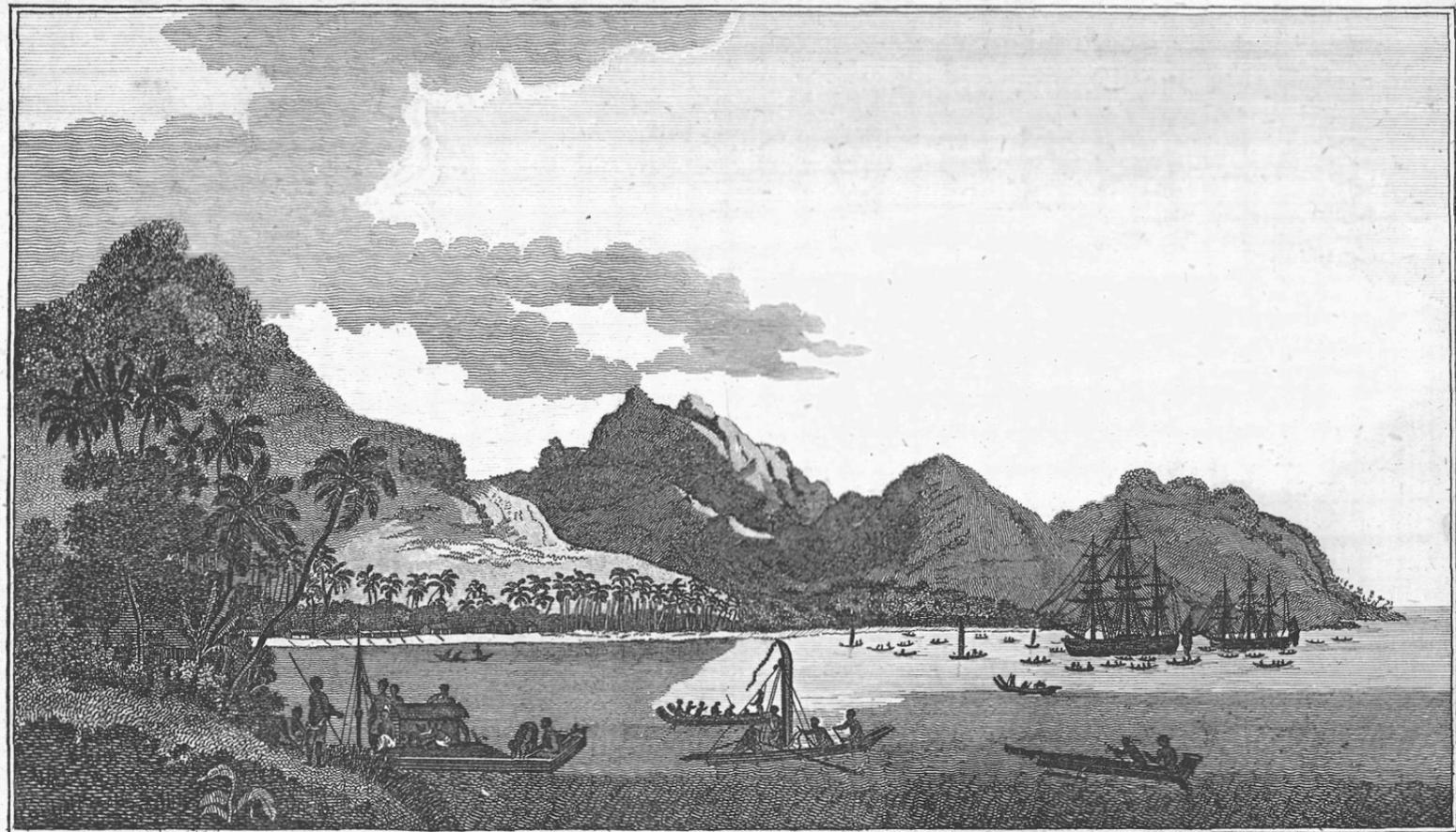
Faded or light ink

Binding intrudes into the text

This has been a co-operative project between the NOAA Central Library, the Climate Database Modernization Program, National Climate Data Center (NCDC) and the NOAA 200<sup>th</sup> Celebration. To view the original document, please contact the NOAA Central Library in Silver Spring, MD at (301) 713-2607 x124 or at [Library.Reference@noaa.gov](mailto:Library.Reference@noaa.gov)

HOV Services  
Imaging Contractor  
12200 Kiln Court  
Beltsville, MD 20704-1387  
April 8, 2009

*Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup> 16, Paternoster Row, London.*



*A View of HUAHEINE.*

# C O O K ' S

Third and Last

V O Y A G E.

---

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Party at the Solemnity at the Morai, re-embarked for Matavai—Conference with Towha respecting the human Sacrifice—Private Heevas among the Natives—Exhibition of Fireworks—Method of embalming the Body of a Chief—The Captains entertain the Natives by riding on Horseback—To prevent Thefts—Animals given him by Captain Cook—A mock Fight exhibited by War-canoes—Naval Strength of the Society Islands—Manner of conducting a War—Peace made with Eimeo—Otoo's Conduct censured—Otoo's Policy—Omiah receives a Present of a War-canoe—Otoo's Present and Message to Great Britain—An Account of the Modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otaheite—Expediton of the Spaniards—Resolution and Discovery depart from Otaheite, and anchor at Taloo in the Island of Eimeo—Detained by having a Goat stolen—Measures taken to recover it—Houses and Canoes burnt—The Goat restored—A Description of the Island of Eimeo—An Assembly of the Chiefs—Omiah's Establishment in this Island—A House built for him, and Steps taken to ensure his Safety—A Thief punished with uncommon Severity—Remarks on his Character and general Conduct—The two Ships proceed to Ulietea—A Deserter belonging to the Marines recovered—Two of the Mariners desert—The Chief's Son, &c. confined on Board—The Deserters recovered, and the Chief's Family set at Liberty—The*

*Resolution and Discovery prepare for their Departure from Ulitea.*

ON Tuesday, the 2nd of September, we re-embarked, in order to return to Matavai, revolving in our minds the extraordinary scene at the morai, as related in the preceding chapter, and to which we had been eye-witnesses. In the way, we paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where we met him the day before. Some conversation passed between him and Otoo; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of his chief. Before we took our leave, Otoo took an occasion to speak of the solemnity, at which we had been present. Among other interrogatories, he asked particularly, If it answered our expectations? What opinion we entertained of its efficacy? And, whether such religious acts and ceremonies were frequent in our own country? We had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, at the close of the extraordinary scene, freely expressed our sentiments on the subject to Otoo, and his attendants; consequently, Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it, alledging, that such a sacrifice, instead of making the Eatooa propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded, their intended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for, respecting this war, three parties were formed in the island, one violent in its favour, another indifferent about it, and a third the avowed supporters of Maheine, and his cause. Under these circumstances,

stances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled, as could insure success. Omiah acted as interpreter, in conveying the captain's sentiments on this subject to Towha, and he supported his objections with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, maeno! maeno! (vile! vile!) and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the servants and attendants of Towha; and when Omiah mentioned the punishment that would be inflicted, in England, upon the greatest chief, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively; and perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master. Leaving Towha, we proceeded to Oparree, where Otoo solicited us to pass the night. We landed in the evening, and on our way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves in their private heevas. We saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently on a drum, and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of us, and the performers never once ceased. When we arrived at Otoo's house it was almost dark. Here we were entertained with one of their public heevas, or plays, in which his three sisters represented principal characters. This they call a heeva raa, and no person is suffered to enter the house, or area, where it is exhibited. This is always the case, when the royal sisters are performers. There is a sameness in their drama,

that

that admits of little or no variation, as, perhaps, to foreigners, who are unacquainted with the language and manners of a country, there may appear to be in every stage exhibition, wherever performed. Be that as it may, we now beheld a more numerous and brilliant company of performers assembled for our entertainment, than we had ever seen on any stage in the tropical islands before. On this occasion, the dresses were entirely new, and by far more elegant and picturesque than formerly; the number of dancers were increased; and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner. Ten young ladies composed the first group, with their heads most magnificently ornamented with beads, red feathers, shells of the most beautiful colours, and wreathed with flowers in so elegant a style, as hardly to be excelled. A party of warriors were next introduced, dressed in their war habits, consisting, as has already been observed, of different coloured cloth, of their own manufacture, so ingeniously fashioned, and blended together with so much art, as, with the helmets that cover their heads, to fill the stage with men, of whose majestic figure it is not easy to conceive an idea. These were armed with spears, lances, and clubs; and exhibited all the forms of attack and defence, which are practised in real action. The principal performers were the king's brother, his three sisters, and we may add, a chief of a gigantic stature, who displayed such surprising grimaces and distortions of face and countenance, by way of provocation and challenge, as were not only laughable in some attitudes, but terrible in others. After these disappeared, the players came forward, and performed a more serious piece than we had yet seen, at which the natives sat graver and more composed than usual; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the numerous audience. The whole

concluded with a dance of ten boys, dressed in every respect like the girls in the first scene, with their hair flowing in ringlets down their shoulders, and their heads ornamented in a very beautiful style.

The next morning being the 3d, we proceeded to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparree; but his mother, sisters, in short all the royal family, and many women, attended us on board, and Otoo followed a short time after. During our absence from the ships, the supply of fruit had been scanty, nor had they many visitors; but after our return we had plenty both of company and provisions. On the 4th a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omiah, who had provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, the captain accompanied Otoo to his house, where he found all his servants very busy in getting a quantity of provisions ready. Among other articles was a large hog, which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding, the whole process of which the captain saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, plantains, taro, and pandanus nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut-kernels was put into a large tray, or wooden vessel; in which the other articles from the oven were put, together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; and, at last, the whole mass was nearly of the consistency of a hasty pudding. Some of these puddings are excellent, and few that we make in England equal them. This being made, and the hog baked, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, were sent on board the Resolution, followed by Otoo, and all the royal family.

Friday the 5th, in the evening, a young ram of  
the

the cape breed, and carefully brought up on board our ship, was killed by a dog; an accident the more regretted, by its being the only one we had of that kind, and one only of the English breed was now remaining. On the 7th, at the close of day, we exhibited some fire works, before a vast concourse of people, many of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; insomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to the conclusion of the entertainment. A table rocket was the last. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute of them flew with the utmost precipitation. On Monday, the 8th, a party of us dined with Oedidee, who made the trip to the southward with Captain Cook, in his former voyage. Our table was furnished plentifully with fish of divers sorts, and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dressed, and on the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo came to us, and asked the captain, if his belly was full? who answered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," said Otoo. The captain attended him to his father's, where he saw several people employed in dressing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. There were several pieces, one end of each was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm pits. The upper ends were then let fall, and hung in folds to the ground, over the other, so as to bear some resemblance to a circular hoop-peticoat: lastly, round the outside of all, were wrapped several pieces of cloth, of various colours, which considerably increased the size; it being five or six yards in circuit; and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could well support. To each were hung two taamees, or breast-plates, in order to embellish the whole, and give it a picturesque appearance.

Thus



Thus equipped, they were taken on board, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, the whole being a present to our commander from Otoo's father. Those who are dressed in this manner, are called atee; but, this ceremony is never performed, except where large presents of cloth are to be made. We never saw it practised upon any other occasion; but, both Captain Cook and Captain Clerke had cloth presented them afterwards wrapped round the bearers in the same manner. On the 9th, we received a present of five hogs, and some fruit, from Otoo; and one hog, and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in abundance; and great quantities of mackarel having been caught by the natives, for two or three days successively, some of them were sold at the tents, and in the ships; indeed, Otoo was equally attentive, to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th he treated a party of us at Oparree with a play; in which his three sisters were again performers, having each of them new and very elegant dresses. This day Captain Cook went to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On enquiry, it was found to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to him, when he last visited this island. It was lying in an elegant toopapaoo, in all respects similar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Waiadooda are deposited. We found the body was under cover, within the toopapaoo, and wrapped up in cloth. At the captain's desire, the person who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of bier, so as to allow a perfect view of it. The corpse having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, disposed in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect. The body was entire in every part; putrefaction seemed hardly to be begun: and not the least disagreeable smell proceeded from it, though this is one of the hottest climates, and Tee had been

dead above four months. There was, indeed, a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original state, and the several joints were pliable. On enquiry into the method of thus preserving their dead bodies, we were informed, that soon after they are dead, they are disemboweled, by drawing out the intestines, and other viscera; after which the whole cavity is stuffed with cloth; that, when any moisture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa-nut oil, which, frequently repeated, preserved them several months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omiah told us, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are thus preserved, and exposed to public view a considerable time after. At first, they are exhibited every fine day, afterwards the intervals become greater, and at last they are seldom to be seen. In the evening we took leave of Otoo, and departed from Oparree.

On Friday the 12th, all the royal family, except the king himself, honoured us with a visit. The chief, they said, was gone to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent from Tiaraboo, to be offered up at the morai. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous among this humane people. The captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason, he missed being at a public transaction, the preceding day, when the king, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived. On the 13th Otoo returned from exercising his royal duties; and on the 14th, we were honoured with his company, when the two captains, for the first time, mounted on horseback, and rode

London. Published by Alex. Hogg at the Kings Arms N<sup>o</sup> 6 Paternoster Row.



round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators, who gazed upon them with as much surprize as if they had been centaurs. Both the horse and mare were in good case, and looked extremely well. What the captains had begun was repeated daily, by one or other of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen and understood the use of these noble animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that had hitherto been carried among them. On the 15th, Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from our neighbourhood to Oparree, attended by several sailing canoes. It was said, Otoo did not approve of his being so near our station, where his people could conveniently invade our property. Otoo, we acknowledge, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies, and it was owing principally to his regulations that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two behind our post, and two others near our tents, between the river and the sea. Some of his people kept watch continually at all those places; and as his father resided usually on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day, and were ready to receive contributions from such girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measures he had taken to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits. Otoo acquainted Captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparree, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and desired his company thither.

The captain consented readily, expecting to meet with something deserving of notice.

Accordingly, Tuesday the 16th, our party, among whom was Mr. Anderson, set out. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth, and hogs, to Otoo, with a set speech. After this, a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at first, disapproved of it; but his objections were, at length, over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, it was too late to deliberate on this business; for Towhá, Potatou, and another chief, had already gone on the expedition, with the fleet of Attahooroo; and, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that they had reached Eimeo; that there had been some skirmishes; but that the loss, or advantage, on either side, had been very inconsiderable. On the 18th, in the morning, Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Omiah, went again to Oparrec, accompanied by Otoo, taking with them the sheep which the captain intended to leave upon the island. These were an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes, all which the captain made a present of to Otoo. Each of the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it adviseable to divide them, and carry one part to Ulietea. With this view he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his Spanish bull with Otoo, he should have our English bull and one of the cows. To this proposal Etary, at first, started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it. However, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever. Upon this, and the captain suspecting, that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, he dropped the idea of an exchange; and determined finally to leave them all with Otoo; whom

Whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparree, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands. This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary, and attended Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, a present from their master to the king. These were delivered, with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker enquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of the chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. Another chief, who constantly attending the person of Otoo, took the other side of the question, and supported his opinion against a war, with great strength of argument. Otoo received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance; and the captain was now convinced that he never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparree.

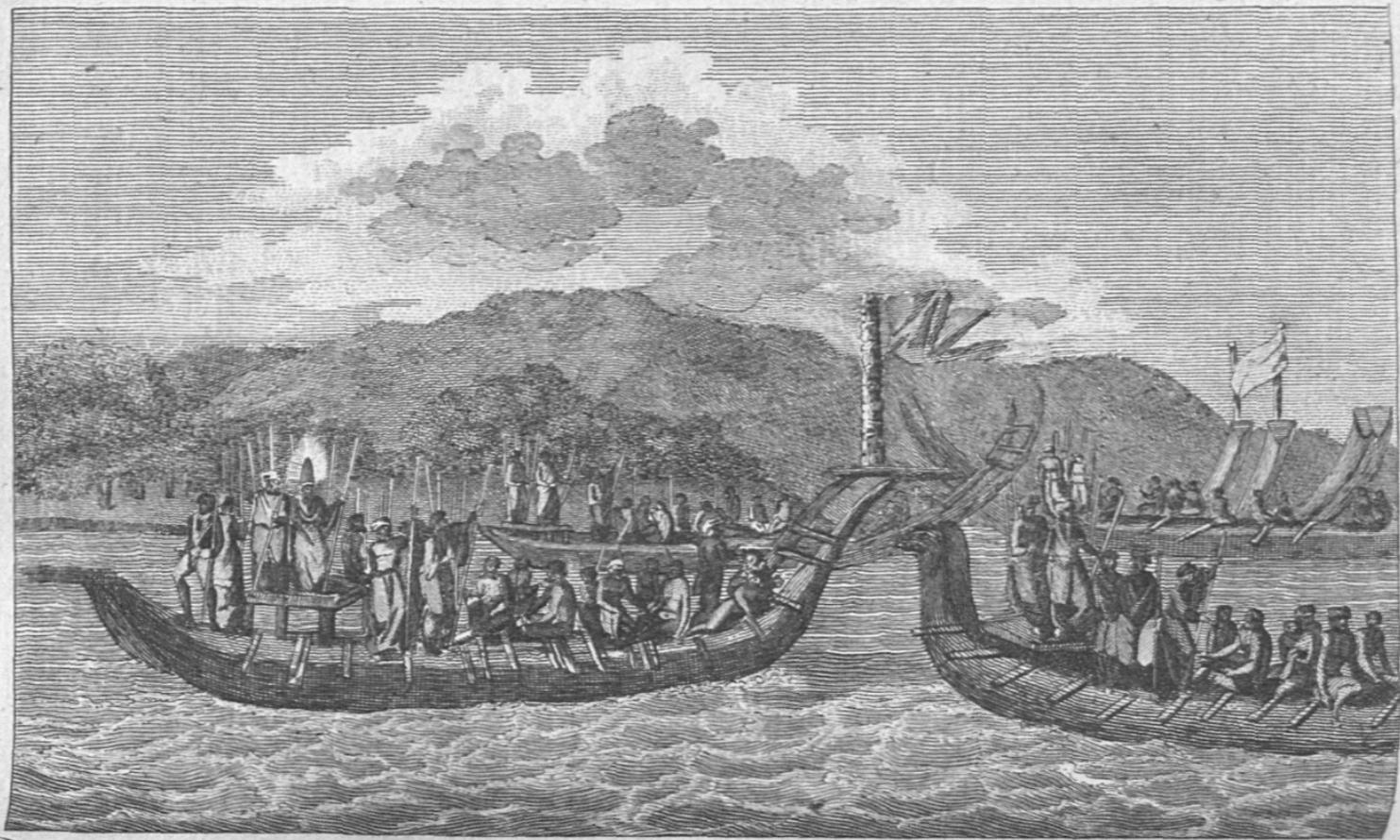
On Friday, the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit, as we had been the day before. Otoo being informed of this, he, and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparree, with a large supply for both ships. Next day, the 20th, all the royal family came with presents, so that now we had more provisions than we could consume. Our water and wood having been already taken on board, nothing remained but to strike the tents, and bring off the things belonging to the officers and men who were stationed on shore; and the commodore began to think of quitting the island, that he might have  
sufficient

sufficient time for visiting others in the neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails. Several of the sailors being very desirous to stay at Otaheite, Otoo interested himself in their behalf, and endeavoured to prevail on Captain Cook to grant their request; but he rejected peremptorily every application of that kind, though often repeated; nor would he suffer any of the natives to enter on board, though many would gladly have accompanied us wherever we intended to sail, and that too after they were assured, that we never intended to visit their country any more. Some of the women also would have followed their Ehoonoas, or Pretanne husbands, could they have been permitted; but our commander was equally averse to the taking any of the natives away, as to the leaving any of our own people behind. He was sensible, that when once cloyed with enjoyment, they would reciprocally pine for home, to which it would not be in their power to return; and that for a little present gratification, they would risque the happiness of the remaining part of their lives. The king, when he found he could not obtain his wishes in this respect, applied to Captain Cook for another favour, which was to allow our carpenters to make him a chest, or press, to secure the treasures he had accumulated in presents: he even begged, that a bed might be placed in it, where he intended to sleep. This request the captain readily granted; and while the workmen were employed, in making this uncommon piece of furniture, they were plentifully supplied with barbecued hogs, and such dainties as the country afforded, and were so carefully attended and protected, that they did not lose so much as a single nail. It was some of these workmen that Otoo was so desirous to retain; but they were of too much consequence on board to be parted with, had there been no other motive for bringing

bringing them away; nor was Otoo much concerned about the departure of the rest. While he was constant in attending the operations of our carpenters, Omiah had frequent conferences with him, on the subject of his travels. He astonished him more by the relation he gave of the magnificence of the morais in Pretanne, than by all the wonders with which he had before surprized him. When he told him that the king's morai was open to all comers, and that the persons of the deceased kings were to be seen as perfect to appearance as when in the vigour of youth, he seemed to lament, that his date of existence was to be limited, with his life; and that his remains were to perish, while his morai preserved no memorial, that he had ever had a being. Omiah endeavoured to impress him with an idea of the magnificence of the tombs of the dead that were to be seen in the morais of Pretanne; but having nothing to compare them to, he was unable to make himself sufficiently understood; nor was he more successful in describing the solemn grandeur of the places of public worship, where the people assembled every seventh day, and at other stated times, to offer up their prayers to the good spirit. Of the splendor of the theatres he could speak more intelligibly. When Omiah told Otoo of the magnitude of the palaces, and houses, in Pretanne; of their decorations and furniture; of the extent of their plantations; and the multitude of living animals with which they were stocked; he listened to him with peculiar attention, as not doubting the truth of his relation; but when he attempted to describe the roads, and the rapidity with which people travel in carriages, drawn by four footed animals, he seemed all amazement: no child could ever express greater surprize at Gulliver's travelling to the moon on ganzas, than Otoo, when Omiah assured him, they could traverse an  
 extent

extent of ground equal to the whole length of the island of Otaheite, in a single day.

On Sunday the 21st, Otoo came on board, to inform us, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparree, and that part of the island, where there would be a general review. The squadron of Matavai was soon in motion, and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore, near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of it. What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages whereon they fight, amount to about 60 in number; and there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The captain was ready to have attended them to Oparree; but the chiefs resolved that they would not move till the next day. This happened to be a fortunate delay; as it afforded him an opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres. Accordingly two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr. King embarked, and Omiah went on board the other. As soon as they had got sufficient sea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the mean time, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a variety of antic tricks, which could answer no other purpose than that of rousing their passions, to prepare them for the onset. Otoo stood by the side of one stage, giving the necessary orders when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye seems to be requisite in this department, to seize every advantage, and to avoid every disadvantage. At length the two canoes closed stage to stage; and after a severe, though short conflict, all the troops on Otoo's stage were supposed to be killed, and Omiah



Omiah and his associates boarded them; when instantly Otoo, and the paddlers in his canoe, leaped into the sea, as if reduced to the necessity of preserving their lives by swimming. But, according to Omiah's representation, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner: for they sometimes lash the two vessels together head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one side or the other are killed; yet this close combat is never practised, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer, or die. Indeed, in this instance, one or the other must infallibly happen; for they never give quarter, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the day following. All the power and strength of the Society Islands lie solely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of; and all their decisive actions are on the water. When the time and place of battle are fixed by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in feasting and diversions. When the day dawns, they launch the canoes, make every necessary preparation, and with the day begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the dispute. The vanquished endeavour to save themselves by a precipitate flight; and those who reach the shore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, spare neither the aged, women, nor children. They assemble the next day, at the morai, to return thanks to the Eatooa for the victory, and offer there the slain and the prisoners, as sacrifices. A treaty is then set on foot; and the conquerors obtain usually their own terms; whereby large districts of land, and even whole islands, sometimes change their proprietors and masters. Omiah said he was once taken prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and conducted to that island, where he, and many others would have suffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to escape in the night.

When the mock-fight was concluded, Omiah put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the shore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude so much as was expected; the novelty being in a great degree lost upon some of them, who had seen it before; and there were others, who had conceived such a dislike to Omiah, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however singular and new. This day notice had been given to Otoo of our intentions to sail with the first fair wind; in consequence of which on the 22nd, in the morning, he came on board, desiring to know when we proposed to depart, and, at the same time expressed great concern at our sudden resolution. He brought with him hogs, fruit, and other valuable productions of the island. No people on earth could express their gratitude with more seeming sincerity and cordiality, than the king and his chiefs, for the presents they had received, nor were our commander and officers wanting in suitable returns. The captain having heard of there being a good harbour at Eimeo, had informed Otoo and his party, that he would visit that island in his passage to Huaheine; and they proposed now to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail, at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take our departure, the captain submitted to them the appointment of the day. The Wednesday following was fixed upon, when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points settled, Captain Cook proposed setting out immediately for Oparree, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, in order to be reviewed. But as he was getting into his boat, news arrived, that a treaty had been concluded

cluded between Towha and Maheine, and that Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparree, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparree, accompanied by Mr. King and Omiah. Soon after their arrival, a messenger from Eimeo made known the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was censured severely, whose delay, it was said, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was, at the same time, currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared, that immediately after our departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whoever presumed to attack him, by any combination of parties, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to that island. This declaration, probably, had the desired effect; for, if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. This old chief wisely considered, that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not take an active part in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the captain, though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected. While we were discoursing on this subject, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the morai in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the Eatooa for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook's company was requested; but, being much out of

order, chose to decline attending them. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on such an occasion, he sent Mr. King and Omiah to observe the particulars, and returned on board, attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women. At first the captain imagined that this numerous train came into his boat, in order to get a passage to Matavai. But they assured him, they intended passing the night on board, for the purpose of curing the disorder he complained of; which was a rheumatic pain, extending from the hip to the foot. He accepted the friendly offer, had a bed prepared for them upon the cabin floor, and submitted himself to their directions. He was first desired to lie down among them; when all those who could get near him, began to squeeze him with both hands all over his body, but more particularly on the parts complained of, till they made his bones crack, and his flesh became almost a mummy. In short, after suffering this severe discipline, about a quarter of an hour, he was happy to get away from them. The operation, however, gave him immediate relief, and encouraged him to undergo a repetition of the same discipline, before he retired to bed; and it was so effectual, that he found himself pretty easy the whole night after. His female physicians very obligingly repeated their prescription the next morning, before they left him, and again in the evening, when they returned; after which the cure being perfected, they took their leave of the captain the following morning. This is called by the natives *romee*, an operation far exceeding that of the flesh-brush, or any external friction. It is universally practiced among these islanders. Captain Wallis, and his first lieutenant, had the same operation performed upon them. If at any time, a person appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they practice the *romee* upon his legs, and it always has an exceeding good effect.

On Thursday the 25th, Otoo, Mr. King, and Omiab, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr. King favoured us with a narrative of what he had seen to the following purport. "At sun-set, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparree. About nine o'clock, we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected would be interesting. Otoo, and his attendants, seated themselves on the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain tree and dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been, for some time, seated close to Otoo, Towha neither stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me, if Toote was displeased with him? I answered no; that he was his taio; and that I was ordered to repair to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omiab then entered into a long conversation with this chief, but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I would go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omiab and I left him. On my questioning Omiab on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that he and Otoo would soon converse in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe. The next morning the ava was in great plenty. One man drank to such excess that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one: it was the meeting of Towha and his wife, with a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced

braced the chief, and appeared perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded, Terridiri, (Oberea's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him, which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought in a war canoe from Eimeo, I enquired if he had killed the people belonging to her, and was informed, that there was not a single person in her when she was captured. About ten o'clock we left Tettaha, and landed close to the morai of Attahooroo, early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, opposite the morai, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo with a small pig, and a plantain tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together, and the Eimeo chief often repeating the words *warry, warry*, "false," Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it. The next day, Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the morai. Several plantain trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony commenced, by the principal priest bringing out the maro, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what I supposed to be a grave. Then three priests sat down at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain tree, a branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of a flower of the cocoa-nut. The priests separately repeated sentences; and, at intervals, two, sometimes three, chanted a melancholy lay, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a short prayer, the chief priest uncovered the maro, and Otoo rose up, wrapping



*Royce sculp.*

The Habit of A PRIEST of the SOCIETY ISLANDS

ping it about him, and holding in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with heiva! and the people echoed back to him three times Earee! The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's morai; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The maro was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers. The people proceeded to a large hut, near the morai, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by another of Attahooroo: Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tooteo, Otoo's orator, exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omiah said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations, and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the morai, one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something on the occasion. Returning to Oparree, the sea breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparree.

A tree,

A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business."

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related from Mr. King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omiah told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr. King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began, when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also that they first invest their kings with the maro. Omiah, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now related by Mr. King, though perhaps upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates, and probably on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo before he mentioned his errand, after which he seated himself before him and related particulars. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity. It is indeed the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

On Friday, the 26th, all the women were ordered to be put on shore; a task not easily effected, most  
of

of them being very unwilling to depart: nor was it of much consequence, as they found means to follow us afterwards to Huaheine, Ulietea, and the other Society Isles; nor did they leave us till our final departure to our northern discoveries, never more to return. Our friends knowing, by this, we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit, and brought more hogs than we wanted; for we had sufficient for our present use, and had no salt left to preserve any. On the 27th, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo to Oparree; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way, and properly attended to. Two of the geese, and two of the ducks were fitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them began to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea, and to reserve two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north. On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed Captain Cook that he had got a canoe, which he desired he would take with him as a present from the earee of Otaheite to the eareerahie no Pretanne. The captain was highly pleased with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. At first, the captain supposed it to have been a model of one of their vessels of war, but it proved to be a small ivahah, about 16 feet long. It was double, and probably had been built for the purpose, and was decorated with carved work, like their canoes in general. It being too large to take on board, the captain could only thank him for his good intention, but the king would have been much better pleased if his present could have been accepted. The following circumstance, concerning Otoo, will shew that the people of this island are capable of much address and art to accomplish their purposes. Among other things which the captain had at different times given to this chief, was a

spyng-glass: having been two or three days possessed of it, he perhaps grew tired of his glass, or discovered that it could not be of any use to him; he therefore carried it privately to Captain Clerke, telling him, that he had got a present for him, in return for his friendship, which he supposed would be agreeable: "but (says Otoo) Toote must not be informed of this, because he wanted it, and I refused to let him have it." Accordingly, he put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, assuring him, at the same time, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke, at first, wished to be excused from accepting it; but Otoo insisted that he should, and left it with him. A few days after, he reminded Captain Clerke of the glass; who, though he did not wish to have it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking a few axes would be most acceptable, produced four, and offered them in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed, "Toote offered me five for it." Well, says Captain Clerke, if that be the case, you shall not be a loser by your friendship for me; there are six axes for you. He readily accepted them, but again desired that Captain Cooke might not be made acquainted with the transaction.

By calms, and gentle breezes from the west, we were detained here some time longer than we expected, during which the ships were crowded with our friends, and surrounded with canoes, for none of them would quit the place till we departed. At length, on Monday the 29th, at three o'clock, P. M. the wind came at east, and we weighed anchor. When the Resolution and Discovery were under sail, to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, we fired several guns; after which all our friends, except his majesty, and two or three more, took leave of us with such lively marks of sorrow and affection, as sufficiently testified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo being desirous of seeing the Resolution sail, she made a stretch out  
 to

to sea, and then in again immediately, when the king took his last farewell, and went ashore in his canoe. It was strictly enjoined to the captain by Otoo, to request, in his name, the Fareerahie no Pretanne, to send him by the next ship some red feathers, and the birds which produce them, also axes, half a dozen musquets, powder and shot, and by no means to forget horses. When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them, by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we obtain by barter. But being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply, as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. In general, we paid for each lot or separate article as we received them, except in our intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the captain. Whatever this chief desired, if it could be spared, was never denied him, and the captain always found him moderate in his demands.

If the captain could have prevailed on Omiah to fix his residence at Otaheite, we should not have quitted the island so soon as we did: for there was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and it was rather extraordinary, had never once been interrupted or suspended by any accident or misunderstanding, nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct, resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities

commodities than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was settled, in some degree, at the first interview with their chiefs, after our arrival; for the commodore declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omiah was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from us, were left in the captain's possession till the day before we sailed, the king declaring that they could be no where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased, and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left among them are highly prized; and they are continually asking us for some. We have already mentioned one having been made for Otoo, at his request, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security, but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could not get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they staid, and when they departed. The more we made enquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened, especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, from the inscription

inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha Bay, in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal, which we were afterwards informed was a ram, at this time at Bolabola. The hogs, being large, have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island; and, on our arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without them. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts; had they all been hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. A young ram we had fell a victim to one of these animals. Four Spaniards remained on shore when their ships left the island, two of whom were priests, one a servant, and the other was much caressed among the natives, who distinguished him by the name of Mateema. He seems to have so far studied their language, as to have been able to speak it; and to have been indefatigable in impressing in the minds of the Oteheiteans exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the English. He even assured them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that Pretanne was but a small island, which they had entirely destroyed; and as to Captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot had sent his ship, and every soul in her, to the bottom, so that his visiting Otaheite was, of course, at this time, very unexpected. Many other improbabilities were propagated by this Spaniard, and believed by the inhabitants; but Captain Cook's returning to Otaheite was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had advanced. With what views the priests remained cannot easily be conceived. If it was their intention to convert the natives

natives to the catholic faith, they certainly have not succeeded in a single instance. It does not appear, indeed, that they ever attempted it; for the natives say, they never conversed with them, either on this or any other subject. The priests resided the whole time at Oheitepeha; but Matcema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arriving at Otaheite took them on board, and sailed in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, their hasty departure shews they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they intended to return, and would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, he would not permit them to enter Matavai fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him; but he did not consider that an attempt to complete it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberty. Though this shews how easily a settlement might be effected at Otaheite, it is hoped that such an event might never take place. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments among Indian nations are conducted) a permanent settlement at this island would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of, as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

We have already observed, that Captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is somewhat remarkable that we never saw him afterwards, especially as the captain received him with uncommon civility. It was supposed that

Omiah,

Omiah, from motives of jealousy, had kept him from the captain, he being a traveller, who, in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omiah, who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other traveller, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, those two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, it is true, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bestowed upon Omiah, whose advantages are so great from having been at England, that if he should sink into his original state of indolence, he has only himself to blame for it; and we are inclined to think this will be the consequence of his indiscreet behaviour. Some time before, the captain, his unchangeable friend and patron, had made up a suit of colours for him, but he considered them as too valuable to be used at this time, and therefore patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his canoc. This, as might be expected, drew a great number of people to look at her. He had completely stocked himself with cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are better and more plentiful at Otaheite than at any of the Society Isles, insomuch, that they are considered as articles of trade. Omiah would not have behaved so inconsistently, as he did in many instances, had it not been for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few select companions, engrossed him to themselves, in order to strip him of every article he possessed: and they would certainly have succeeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the most useful articles of his property into his possession. However, Omiah would not have been saved from ruin, if the captain had permitted these relations

and

and friends of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of settlement at Huaheine. This, indeed, was their intention, but our commodore disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear at Huaheine, while he continued at the Society Islands, and they knew him well enough not to comply.

On Tuesday, the 30th, having sailed from Otaheite, we continued our course under double reefed top-sails, and stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omiah, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking some necessary measures, to shew us the best anchoring place. We were not, however, without pilots, having several natives of Otaheite on board, and among them not a few women. Unwilling to rely wholly on these guides, two boats were sent to examine the harbour, when, observing the signal made for safe anchorage, we stood in with both the ships close up to the head of the inlet, where we cast anchor in ten fathoms water, over a bottom of soft mud, and moored with a hawser fast to the shore. The name of this harbour is Taloo. It is situated on the north side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo, or Poonohoo, and runs above two miles between the hills, S. or S. by E. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trading wind. Several rivers fall into it, one of which is so considerable, as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water is perfectly fresh. The banks, on the sides of this stream, are covered with what the natives call the pooroo-tree, on which they set no value, as it serves only for firing: so that wood and water may be procured here with great facility. The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within  
than

than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. There are two or three more harbours on the south side of the island; but they are not so considerable as those we have already mentioned. We were received by the natives of Eimed with every mark of hospitality; great numbers of whom came aboard the ships, but from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter.

On Wednesday the 1st of October, our live stock was landed, our carpenters sent out to cut wood, and our purveyors to collect hogs. Here we found Omiah, who, on his arrival, had been diverting himself and the natives with his feats of arms; and had raised their curiosity to a very high degree, by acquainting them with our attention of paying them a visit, as no European ship had ever anchored at their island before. The next day, being the 2nd, several canoes arrived, from distant parts, bringing with them a copious supply of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers being not so much demanded here as at Otaheite. This day, in the morning, Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island. He approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, knowing us to be friends of the Otaheiteans; for these people have no idea that we can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we are told, is sister to Oamo, of Otaheite, whose death we heard of while we remained at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and after staying about half an hour, they went on shore; soon after they returned with a large hog, presenting it as a return for the captain's favour; but he made them

an additional gift to the full value of it; after which they went on board the *Discovery* to visit Captain Clerke. Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself, in some degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald-headed, a circumstance rather uncommon, in these islands, at that age. He seemed ashamed of showing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it. Whether they considered this deficiency of hair disgraceful, or whether they supposed we considered it in that light, is not easy to determine; the latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen us shave the head of one of the natives, whom we detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was a kind of punishment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen, whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected by them of being tetos. Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omiah mounted on horseback, and rode along the shore. Omiah having forbid the natives to follow us; our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of Towha had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were very numerous and every where conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

On Monday the 6th, we hauled the ship off into the stream; intending to put to sea the next day, but the following disagreeable incident prevented it. We had, in the morning, sent our goats ashore to graze; and, in the evening, the natives contrived to steal one of them, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them. This was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the captain's

captain's views of stocking other islands with those animals he, therefore, was determined, if possible, to recover it. On the 7th, we received intelligence, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was, at that time, at Parowioah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. The captain, therefore, dispatched some of our people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up. Maheine had, only the day before, requested the commodore to give him two goats, but, as there were none of these animals at some other islands, he refused to gratify him. Willing, however, to oblige him in this particular, he desired an Otahete chief, then present, to request of Otoo, in his name, to convey two goats to Maheine; and to insure his compliance, sent him, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement, but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves. Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second; while the necessary measures were taken to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiscovered. As it was missed immediately, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out after it, different ways, for they all endeavoured to persuade us, that it must have strayed into the woods; not one of them admitting that it was stolen. We were, however, convinced of the contrary, when we found not one of the pursuers returned their

intention being only to amuse us, till their prize was safely deposited; and night coming on prevented all farther search. At this instant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had purloined it. The next morning being Wednesday the 8th, most of the natives were moved off. They had carried with them a corpse that lay on a toopapoo, opposite the ship; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired, to the remotest part of the island. It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the commodore had refused to give; and that, having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid; and the commodore was equally resolved to have it back again: he, therefore, applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that district; but that it would be delivered up, if we sent and demanded it. They shewed a willingness to conduct some of our people to the spot; but finding that a boat might go and return in one day, one was immediately dispatched with two of our officers, Mr. Roberts, and Mr. Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that, after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr. Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines, and one of the guides, went to the house of Hamoa, at Watea, where, for some time, they were amused by the natives, who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. But as it did not arrive, and night approaching, Mr. Shuttleworth resolved to give over the fruitless search, and return to his boat.

boat. Captain Cook now lamented that he had proceeded so far in the business, seeing he could not retreat with credit, nor without giving encouragement to other islanders to rob us with impunity. Upon consulting with Omiah, and the two old men, they advised us, without hesitation, to advance up the country with a party of men, and shoot every person they should meet with. The captain did not approve of the bloody part of this counsel; nevertheless, early the next morning, being the 9th, he set out with thirty-five of our people, accompanied by Omiah, one of the old men, and three attendants. Lieutenant Williamson was also ordered round the western part of the island, with three armed boats, to meet us. We had no sooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before us. The first person we met with on our march, was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omiah, the instant he beheld him, asked Captain Cook if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded, that the advice given us was immediately to be carried into execution; but the captain gave orders both to him and our guide, to let it be made known, that it was not our intention to destroy a single native. These joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants. Ascending the ridge of hills, on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the same way, and could hardly have passed the hills: we therefore marched up in great silence, expecting to surprize the party who were bearing off the prize; but, when we arrived at the uppermost plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in search of, had, indeed, been kept there the first night, but, the next morning, was conveyed to Watea. We made no farther enquiry, till we came within sight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's house by some people, who also informed us, that the goat was there. We fully expected to obtain it on our arrival;

arrival; but, having reached the house, the people there denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing about it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect. On our first coming to Watea, several men were seen, running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omiah, who had ran towards them, was assaulted with stones; hence it appeared, that they intended to oppose any attempt that we might be induced to make; but, on seeing the strength of our party, had given up the design: we were confirmed in this opinion, by observing, that all their houses were empty. After having collected a few of the natives together, Omiah was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and to let them know, we had received sufficient information that the goat was in their possession; and that, if it was not without delay delivered up, we should burn all their houses and canoes; yet, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it: in consequence of which we set fire to eight of their houses, and three war canoes, all which were presently consumed. We afterwards marched off to join the boats, at that time eight miles from us; and, in our rout, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition, on the contrary, many of the natives assisted us, perhaps, more from fear than any other motive. Omiah, who was at some distance before us, came back with information, that a number of men were assembled to attack us. We prepared to receive them; but, instead of enemies, they were petitioners, with plantain trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the commodore to spare a canoe that lay upon the spot, which he readily complied with. About four o'clock, in the afternoon, we arrived at Wharrarade, where our boats were waiting for us. This district belongs to Fiarataboonou; but this chief,

together

together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack on their property, they being in amity with Otoo. Here we remained about an hour, in order to rest ourselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where we arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but no tidings of the goat had, at that time, been received; and, of course the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

On Friday the 10th, early in the morning, a messenger was sent off to Maheine, charged with this peremptory resolution of the captain, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island; and that hostilities should never cease, while the stolen animal remained in his possession. That the messenger might perceive the captain was in earnest, he ordered the carpenter, in his presence, to break up three canoes that lay at the head of the harbour; and, by his order, the planks were taken on board, to serve as materials to build a house for Omiah, at the place where he intended to fix his residence. From hence, our commander, properly attended, went to the next harbour, where he destroyed eight more canoes, and returned on board about seven in the evening. On his arrival, he was informed, that the goat had been returned half an hour before; and it appeared from good intelligence, that it came from the very place, where the inhabitants, the day before, declared they knew nothing about it; but, from the message delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived, that the captain was not to be trifled with. Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business, equally to be regretted by the natives, and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that, after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite, in the invasion of this island, he should so soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were

were more injurious to them, than Towha's expedition. In a memorandum of occurrences, penned by one of our officers, we find a much less favourable account of this affair than the above; the circumstances are thus related by that gentleman.

“ On the 2nd of October, Maheine, accompanied by other chiefs came on board the Discovery, with large hogs by way of presents; and were presented in return with axes, hatchets, looking-glasses, &c. our purveyors were likewise much gratified, by the success they met with in marketing; purchasing the largest hogs for the merest trifles; as for instance, a hog of 200 weight, for twelve red feathers, and so in proportion. But this friendly intercourse was soon changed to a scene of desolation, that no injury we received from the pilfering disposition of the inhabitants could justify. The people had brought us every thing their island afforded, and had left it to the generosity of the purchasers to give, in return, whatever they pleased: but unfortunately a goat from our live stock was missing. It had been secretly conveyed away in the night, from the pastures in which they were placed to feed, notwithstanding the vigilance of the guard appointed to look after them. With the loss of this animal, no doubt a great prize to the thief, the caree of the island was made acquainted by Captain Cook, and a peremptory requisition made to have it restored, on pain of having his country laid waste, his shipping destroyed, and himself personally punished for the crime of his subject. The king promised his assistance, and required time for enquiry; but, as soon as he was set at liberty, he absconded, and was no more seen. The goat being still missing, and no means used for recovering and restoring it, a party from both ships, with the marines in a body, were ordered out, to carry the threats of our commander into execution. For three days, successively, they continued their devastations, burning  
and

and destroying 200 of the best houses of the inhabitants, and as many of their large war canoes; at the same time, cutting down their fruit trees, and destroying their plantations. The natives who lived at a distance, hearing of the havock that was made near the bay, filled their canoes with stones and sunk them, with a view to their preservation; but that availed them nothing; for the captain ordered boats to be manned and armed; the canoes that were sunk to be weighed up and destroyed; in short, a general desolation to be carried through the whole island, should the goat be still withheld. Add to this, that two young natives of quality being found on board our ship, were made prisoners, and told they were to be put to death, if the goat should not be restored within a certain time. The youths protested their own innocence, and disclaimed all knowledge of the guilty persons; notwithstanding which, every preparation was apparently made for putting them both to death. Large ropes were carried upon the main deck, and made fast fore and aft; axes, chains, &c. were placed upon the quarter deck, in sight of the young men, whose terrors were increased by the information of Omiah, who gave them to understand that, by all these solemn preparations, their doom was finally determined. Under these gloomy apprehensions the poor youths remained till the 9th, when, about three in the afternoon, a body of between 50 and 60 natives were seen from the ship hastening to the harbour, who, when they came near, held up the goat in their arms, in raptures that they had found it, and that it was still alive. The joy of the imprisoned young men is not to be expressed; and when they were released, instead of shewing any signs of resentment, they were ready to fall down and worship their deliverers. It can scarce be credited, when the devastation ceased, how soon the injury they had suffered was forgotten, and provisions

sions again brought to market, as if no violence had ever been committed by us; only the caree of the island never made his appearance. All this while numbers of the inhabitants of Otaheité, were witnesses of the severity with which this theft was punished; but it seemed to make no unfavourable impression upon them; for they continued their good offices as long as we remained in the Society Isles."

On Saturday the 11th, our intercourse with the natives was renewed; several canoes bringing bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ships; whence our commander concluded, they were conscious of having merited the treatment they had received; and that the cause of his displeasure being now removed, they apprehended no farther mischief. Being now about to take our departure from Eimeo, we shall first just remark, that there is very little difference between the produce of this island, and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features. We would observe farther, the appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except some deep valleys, and a flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large valleys, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground generally rises to the foot of the hills: but the flat border on the sides, becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This produces a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. In the low grounds, the soil is a yellowish stiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker, and more loose; and the stone which composes the hills, is of a bluish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where our  
ships

ships were stationed, are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister; that they are eatooas, or divinities; and that they came from Ulitea, by some supernatural means.

Having procured, at this island, a large quantity of fire-wood, an article we could not supply ourselves with at Matavai, there being not a tree but what is useful to the inhabitants, and likewise a number of hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, at nine o'clock, A. M. we weighed, having a fine breeze down the harbour; but it was so faint and variable, that we were not out at sea before noon, at which time we directed our course to Huaheine, Omiah having previously set sail before us. In the night, the weather being hazy, he lost sight of the ship and fired his gun, which was answered by the Resolution. On Sunday the 12th, we came in sight of Huaheine, and, at noon, anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre Harbour, situated on the west-side of the island. Omiah, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before us, but did not land; and though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers also came off to the ships, insomuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our passengers immediately informed them of our transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of canoes and houses that we had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeas'd at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it; so that he had hopes it would induce the natives of this island to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his former visit. The next morning; which was the 13th, all the principal people of the island came to our ships. This was just what our commodore wished, as it was now high time

to settle Omiah, and he supposed that the presence of these chiefs would enable him to effect it in a satisfactory manner. But Omiah now seemed inclined to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with respect to the mode of accomplishing that design, the latter would have consented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolabola, when they subdued Ulietea, of some land in that island; and the captain hoped he should be able to get it restored to the son without difficulty. For this purpose, it was necessary that Omiah should be upon friendly terms with those who had become masters of the island; but he would not listen to any such proposal, and was vain enough to imagine that the captain would make use of force to reinstate him in his forfeited lands. This prepossession preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the captain began to consider Huaheine as the more proper place, and therefore determined to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of that island, and propose the affair to them.

The ships were no less crowded with hogs, than with chiefs, the former being poured in upon us faster than the butchers and salters could dispatch them. Indeed, for several days after our arrival, some hundreds, great and small, were brought on board; and, if any were refused, they were thrown into the boats, and left behind. Bread-fruit, bananas, plantains, cocoa-nuts, and yams, were brought in the same plentiful proportions, and purchased for trifles. At Otaheite we had heard, that our old friend Oree was no longer the chief of Huaheine, and that at this time he resided at Ulietea. Indeed he never had been more than regent during the minority of Tairectareca, the present earee rahie; but he did not give up the regency till he was compelled thereunto. His two sons, Oponoy and Towha, were the first who paid us a visit, coming on board  
before

before the ship was well in the harbour, and bringing with them a present; for which they received, in return, red feathers, &c. Red feathers are here, as at Otaheite, a very remarkable commodity, with which the seamen made purchases of cloth, and other manufactures of the island: those who were followed by their misses from Otaheite, kept separate tables for them, at a small expence; while the misses catered and cooked for their mates, who feasted every day on barbecued pigs, stewed fowls, roasted bread-fruit, and a variety of other delicacies, purchased by the ladies for the merest trifles. Among our foremast-men were many who laid in store of these good things for their support, in case of being reduced to short allowance; and they had reason, afterwards, to console themselves on their provident care.

The captain now, after the hurry of business in the morning was over, prepared to make a visit in form to Tairectareea, the caree rahie, or present reigning king of the island. Omiah, who was to accompany him, dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and provided a handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his Eatooa. Their landing drew most of the visitors from the ships, who, with many others, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people became very great, the major part of whom seemed stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite; and the number of men who appeared to be of consequence was also much greater, in proportion to the extent of the island. The captain waited some time for the king; but when he appeared, we found his presence might have been dispensed with, as his age did not exceed ten years. Omiah, who stood at a little distance from the circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, which consisted of cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering succeeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and after that,

that, several other tufts of red feathers were presented. The different articles were laid before a priest, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was spoken by one of Omiah's friends, though in a great measure dictated by himself. In these oraisons he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had conducted him safe back to his native country. The earce rahie no Pretanne, the Earl of Sandwich, Toote (Captain Cooke), Tatee (Captain Clerke), were mentioned in every one of them. These offerings and prayers being ended, the priest took each of the articles in order, and, after repeating a concluding prayer, sent every one of them to the morai. After the performance of these religious rites, Omiah seated himself by the captain, who bestowed a present on the young prince, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourse between us and the natives: to whom the captain pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their plundering us, as on former occasions. The establishment of Omiah was then proposed to this assembly of chiefs. They were informed, that we had conveyed him into England, where he was well received by the great King of Pretanne, and his Earees; and had been treated, during his whole stay, with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, and enriched with a variety of articles, which, it was hoped, would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to continue with him, many other new and useful animals had been left at Otaheite, which would speedily multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the neighbouring islands. The captain then gave them to understand, it was his earnest request that they would give his friend, Omiah, a piece of land, upon which he might build a house,  
and

raise provisions for himself and family; adding, that if he could not obtain this at Huaheine, either by donation or purchase, he was resolved to carry him to Ulietea, and settle him there. We observed that this conclusion seemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs; and the reason was not less obvious. Omiah had vainly flattered himself, that the captain would use force in restoring him to his father's possessions, in Ulietea; and he had talked at random, on this subject, among some chiefs, at this meeting, who now expected that they should be assisted by us in an invasion of Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that island. It being proper, therefore, that they should be undeceived in this particular, the captain, with this view, signified to them, in the most decisive manner, that he would neither give them any assistance in such an enterprize, nor even suffer it to be put in execution, while he remained in their seas; and that, if Omiah established himself in Ulietea, he should be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolabola as their conqueror. This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council; one of whom expressed himself to this effect: that the whole island of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's, and therefore he might dispose of what portion he pleased to his friend: but, though Omiah seemed much pleased at hearing this, to make an offer of what it would be improper to accept, the captain considered as offering nothing: he for this reason desired them to mark out the particular spot, and likewise the exact quantity of land, which they intended to grant for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had retired from the assembly, were sent for; and, after a short consultation, the commodore's request was unanimously complied with, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the house where the present meeting was held.

held. It extended along the shore of the harbour, about 200 yards; its depth, to the bottom of the hill, was somewhat more; and a proportionable part of the hill was comprehended in the grant.

This affair being settled, on Saturday, the 18th, a tent was pitched on shore, a post established, and the observatories erected. As this was one of the most plentiful of the Society Isles, it was proposed to make some stay here, in order to careen the ships, and to lay in provisions for future use. This was the more necessary, as we were to sail to countries wholly unknown, where it was uncertain what accommodations we might meet with, or to what difficulties we might be subject. The beds and furniture of every kind were therefore unladen, and every crevice of the ships examined, scraped, washed with vinegar, and smoked. While this last operation was performing, the lower port-holes were left open, for the rats to make their escape; in short, a thorough revision was directed to be made of every thing on board, as well to cleanse the furniture from vermin, as to remove the danger of infection from putrid air, generated by a perpetual succession of multitudes of people, between decks, ever since our arrival at Otaheite. The sick were, at the same time, landed for the benefit of the air, and every means used to recover, and to preserve them in health when recovered. Among the sick was Captain Cook himself, for whose recovery the crews of both ships were under much concern, as the success of the voyage was thought in a great measure to depend upon his care and conduct. By the doctor's advice, he was prevailed upon to sleep on shore; where he was assiduously attended, night and day, by the surgeons of both ships, who watched him alternately, till he was out of danger. As soon as he was able, he rode out every day with Omiah on horseback, followed by the natives, who, attracted

attracted by the novelty of the sight, flocked from the remotest parts of the island to be spectators. We also during our stay in this harbour, carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is almost incredible. The damage we sustained by them was very considerable; and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled a honeycomb. They proved particularly destructive to birds which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they eat out the writing on the labels fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages, was the closeness of their binding, which prevented these voracious destroyers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr. Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*. The former had been carried home in the Resolution, in her last voyage, where they withstood the severity of the winter, in 1776, though she was in dock all the time. The latter had only made their appearance since our leaving New Zealand; but had increased so fast, that they now got even into our rigging; so that when a sail was loosened, thousands of them fell upon the decks. Though the *orientales* were in infinite numbers, they seldom came out but in the night, when they made a particular noise in crawling about: and, besides their disagreeable appearance, they did great mischief to our bread, which dainty feeders would have ill-relished, being so bespattered with their excrement.

The carpenters and caulkers had no sooner completed their business on board, than they were ordered on shore to erect a house for Omiah, wherein he might secure the various European commodities that he had in his possession: at the same time, others

of our people were employed in making a garden for his use, planting vines, shaddocks, melons, pine-apples, and the seeds of various kinds of vegetables; all which were in a flourishing state before our departure from the island. Omiah began now to pay a serious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. Here he found a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister having been married: these did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done; it appeared, however, that though they had too much honesty and good-nature to do him any injury, yet, they were of too little consequence in the island, to do him any real services, having neither authority nor influence to protect his property or his person. Thus circumstanced, he ran great risque of being stripped of every thing he had received from his generous benefactors, as soon as he should cease to be within the reach of our powerful protection. He was now on the point of being placed in a very singular situation, that of the only rich man in the kingdom and community of which he was to be a member; and being master of an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure, which his countrymen could not create by any art or industry of their own, it was natural, therefore, to imagine, that while all were desirous of sharing this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to strip its sole proprietor. As the most likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook advised him to distribute some of his moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs; who, on being thus gratified, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and shield him from the injuries of others. Omiah promised to follow this advice, and we heard, before we sailed, this prudent step had been taken. The captain, however, not confiding wholly in the operations of gratitude, had recourse to the more forcible and effectual motive

tive of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another visit to their island, after having been absent the usual time; and that if he did not find his friend in the same state of security in which he should leave him at present, all those who had been his enemies might expect to become the objects of his resentment. This menacing declaration will, probably, have some effect; for our successive visits of late years have induced these islanders to believe, that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to entertain such a notion, which the captain thought a fair stratagem to confirm, Omiah has some prospect of being suffered to thrive upon his new plantation.

On Wednesday, the 22d, the intercourse of trade and friendly offices, between us and the inhabitants of Huaheine, was interrupted; for, in the evening, one of the latter found means to get into Mr. Bayley's observatory, and carry off a sextant, unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft, than he went ashore, and desired Omiah to apply to the chiefs, to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to a heeva, that was then exhibiting, till the captain ordered the performers to desist. Being now convinced he was in earnest, they began to make some enquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omiah assuring him this was the person, he was sent on board the Resolution, and put in irons. This raised an universal ferment among the islanders, and the whole body fled with precipitation. The prisoner being examined by Omiah, was with some difficulty brought to confess where he had concealed the sextant, and it was brought back un-

hurt the next morning. After this, the natives recovered from their consternation, and began to gather about us as usual. As the thief appeared to be a shameless villain, the commodore punished him with greater severity than he had ever done any former culprit; for, besides having his head and beard shaved, he ordered both his ears to be cut off, and his eye-brows to be fleed, than which no punishment could have subjected him to greater disgrace. In this bleeding condition he was sent ashore, and exposed as a spectacle to intimidate the people from meddling with what was not their own. The natives looked with horror upon the man, and it was easy to perceive that this act gave them general disgust: even Omiah was affected, though he endeavoured to justify it, by telling his friends, that if such a crime had been committed in the country where he had been, the thief would have been sentenced to lose his life. But, how well soever he might carry off the matter, he dreaded the consequences to himself, which, in part, appeared in a few days, and were probably more severely felt by him, soon after we were gone.

Saturday, the 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned by a report, that one of our goats had been stolen by the above-mentioned thief; and though, upon examination, we found every thing safe in that quarter, yet it appeared, that he had destroyed and carried off from Omiah's grounds, several vines and cabbage plants; that he had publicly threatened to put him to death, and to set fire to his house, as soon as we should quit this place. To prevent his doing any further mischief, the captain ordered him to be seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and this intention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his designs.

We

We had, indeed, always met with more troublesome people in Huaheine, than in any other of the adjacent islands; and it was only from fear, and the want of proper opportunities, that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confusion seemed to prevail among them. Their careerahie, as we have already observed, was but a child; and we did not observe, that there was one individual, or any set of men, who held the reins of government for him; so that whenever any misunderstanding occurred between us, we never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress. On Thursday, the 30th, early in the morning, our prisoner, the Bolabola-man, found means to escape from his confinement, and out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilboobolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him as soon as he arrived on shore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omiah, who quickly came on board, to inform the captain, that his mortal enemy was again let loose upon him. We found, upon enquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawer into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the commodore, that his people had been very remiss in their night-duty; which rendered it necessary to chastise those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. We were pleased at hearing, afterwards, that the fellow who escaped, had gone over to Ulietea; but it was thought by some, he only intended to conceal himself till our departure, when he would revenge the indignity we had treated him with, by open or secret attacks upon Omiah. The house of this great man being

being now nearly finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore. Among other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleased the gazing multitude; but as to his plates, dishes, drinking mugs, glasses, and the whole train of household apparatus, scarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omiah himself began to think, that they would be of no service to him; that a baked hog was more savory than a boiled one; that a plantain leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore disposed of most of these articles of English furniture among the crew of our ships; and received from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fireworks had not been omitted; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great number of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and fear. Those that remained were put in order, and left with Omiah, pursuant to their original destination.

We now began to make preparations for our departure from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, a horse and a mare, which were left in the possession of Omiah, who was now to be finally separated from us. We gave him also a boar, and two sows, of the English breed; and he had got two sows of his own. The horse had covered the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands, has probably succeeded, by this valuable present. With regard to Omiah's domestic establishment, he had procured at Otaheite, four or five totitous or people of the lower class; the two young New Zealanders remained with him, and his brother, with some others, joined him; so that his family now consisted

consisted of ten or eleven persons: if that can be justly denominated a family, to which not one female belonged. The house which our people erected for him was 24 feet by 18, and ten feet high; it was composed of boards, which were the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo, and in the construction of it, as few nails as possible were used, lest an inducement should arise, from a desire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that immediately after our departure, he should erect a spacious house, after the fashion of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that we had built; so as entirely to enclose it for greater security. In this work, some of the chiefs of the island promised to contribute their assistance; and if the intended building should cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houses in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude. Omiah's European weapons consisted of a fowling piece, two pair of pistols, several swords, cutlasses, a musket, bayonet, and a cartouch box. After he had got on shore whatever belonged to him, he invited several times the two captains, and most of the officers of both ships to dine with him; on which occasions his table was plentifully spread with the best provisions that the island could afford. Omiah, thus powerfully supported, went through the fatigues of the day better than could have been expected from the despondency that appeared in his countenance, when first the company began to assemble. Perhaps his awkward situation, between half English and half Indian preparations, might contribute not a little to embarrass him; for having never before made an entertainment himself, though he had been a partaker at many both in England and in the islands, he was yet at a loss to conduct himself properly to so many guests, all of them superior to himself in point of rank, though he might be said to be superior, in point of fortune, to most of the

chiefs present. Nothing, however, was wanting to impress the inhabitants with an opinion of Omiah's consequence. The drums, trumpets, bagpipes, hautboys, flutes, violins, in short, the whole band of music attended, and took it by turns to play while dinner was getting ready; and when the company were seated, the whole band joined in full concert, to the admiration of crowds of the inhabitants, who were assembled round the house on this occasion. The dinner consisted, as usual, of the various productions of the island, barbecued hogs, fowls dressed, some after the manner of the country, and others after the English fashion, with plenty of wine and other liquors, with which two or three of the chiefs made very free. Dinner over, heevas and fire-works succeeded, and when night approached, the multitudes that attended us spectators dispersed, without the least disorder. Before we set sail, the commodore caused the following inscription to be cut in the front of Omiah's house:

*Georgius tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.*

*Naves* { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*  
           { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

November 2nd, on Sunday, at four o'clock, P. M. we took the advantage of an easterly breeze, and sailed out of Owharre harbour. While here, we had procured more than 400 hogs, many of them large. Though it had been found in former voyages, that most of them which were carried to sea alive refused to eat, and consequently were soon killed, yet we resolved to make one experiment more; and by procuring large quantities of yams, and other roots, on which they were accustomed to feed on shore, we ventured to take a few in each ship; and for this purpose our carpenters had prepared styes for their reception in those parts where they

they might remain cool. Most of our friends, natives of Huaheine, continued on board till our vessels were under sail; when the captain, to gratify their curiosity, ordered five of the great guns to be fired. Then they all left us, except Omiah, who remained till we were out at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore, which in casting the ship, parted, being cut by the rocks, and its outer end was left behind: it therefore became necessary to dispatch a boat to bring it on shore. In this boat Omiah went ashore, and took a very affectionate and final leave of the captain, never to see him more. He had endeavoured to prevail on Captain Cook to let him return to England, which made his parting with him and our officers the more affecting. If tears could have prevailed on our commander to let him return, Omiah's eyes were never dry; and if the tenderest supplications of a dutiful son to an obdurate father could have made any impression, Omiah hung round his neck in all the seeming agony of a child trying to melt the heart of a reluctant parent. He twined his arms round him with the ardour of inviolable friendship, till Captain Cook, unable any longer to contain himself, broke from him, and retired to his cabin, to indulge that natural sympathy which he could not resist, leaving Omiah to dry up his tears, and compose himself on the quarter deck. On his return, he reasoned with his friend, upon the impropriety of his request; reminding him of his anxieties while in England, lest he should never more have been permitted to return home; and now that he had been restored to his friends and country, at a great expence to his royal master, it was childish to entertain a notion of being carried back. Omiah renewed his tears and said, he had indeed wished to see his country and friends; but having seen them he was contented, and would never long for home again. Captain Cook assured him of his best wishes,

but his instructions must be obeyed, which were to leave him with his friends. Such was the parting scene between Omiah and his patron; nor were the two New Zealand boys under less concern to leave us than Omiah. They had already learned to speak English enough to express their hopes and their fears. They hoped to have gone along with the ships, and cried bitterly when they understood they were to be left behind. Thence arose a new scene between Omiah and his servants, that, had not the officers on the quarter deck interposed, might have ended unfortunately for the former; for they refused to quit the ship, till they were compelled to it by force, which would have been no easy matter, the eldest, near sixteen, being of an athletic make; and the youngest, about eleven, a giant of his age. They were both tractable and obliging, till they found they were to be left at Huaheine; but knowing this at our departure from that place, they grew desperate till subdued. They discovered dispositions the very reverse of the islanders, among whom they were destined to abide during the remainder of their lives; and, instead of a mean, timid submission, they shewed a manly determined resolution not to be subdued, though overcome; and ready, if there had been a possibility to succeed, to have made a second or even third attempt to have regained their liberty. We could never learn Captain Cook's reason, for refusing to take on board some of those gallant youths from New Zealand, who, no doubt, would have made useful hands in the high latitudes we were about to explore, and would besides have been living exhibitions of a people, whose portraits have been imperfectly depicted even by our best draughtsmen. There is a dauntless fierceness in the eyes and countenance of a New Zealand warrior, which the pencil of the most eminent artist cannot imitate; and we lament the non-transportation of a native from every climate, where  
nature

nature had marked a visible distinction in the characters of person and mind. Having bid farewell to Omiah, he was accompanied by Mr. King in the boat, who informed us, he had wept all the time he was going ashore.

Though we had now, to our great satisfaction, brought Omiah safe back to the very spot from whence he was taken, it is probable we left him in a situation less desirable than that which he was in before his connection with us: not that, having tasted the comforts of civilized life, he must become more wretched from being obliged to relinquish all thoughts of continuing them, but merely because the advantages he received from us, have placed him in a more hazardous situation, with respect to his personal safety. From being greatly caressed in England, he had lost sight of his primary condition, and did not consider in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge, or of wealth, would be estimated by his countrymen, at his return; which were the only things whereby he could recommend himself to them now, more than before, and on which he could lay the foundation either of his future greatness or happiness. He appeared to have, in some measure, forgotten their customs in this respect, and even to have mistaken their genius; otherwise he must have been convinced of the extreme difficulty he would find in getting himself admitted as a man of rank, where there is scarcely a single instance of a person's being raised from an inferior station even by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the foundation of all power and distinction here, and is so pertinaciously adhered to, that, unless a person has some degree of it, he will be contemned and hated, if he pretends to exercise any authority. This was really the case, in some degree, with Omiah: though his countrymen were rather cautious in expressing their sentiments while we continued among them. Nevertheless, had he

made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from Great Britain, this, with the knowledge he had gained by travelling, might have enabled him to have formed the most advantageous connections: but he exhibited too many proofs of a weak inattention to this obvious means of promoting his interest. He had formed schemes of a higher nature, perhaps, with more truth, it may be said, meaner; for revenge, rather than a desire of greatness, appeared to influence him from the beginning. His father was certainly a man of considerable property in Ulietea, when that island was subdued by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and with many others, fled for refuge to Huaheine, where he died, and left Omi-ah, with several other children, who thus became entirely dependant. In this situation Captain Furneaux took him up, and brought him to England. Whether he expected, from the treatment he there met with, that any assistance would be afforded him against the enemies of his father and his country; or whether he had the vanity to suppose, that his own superiority of knowledge, and personal courage, would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulietea, is uncertain; but, from the very commencement of the voyage, this was his constant topic. He would not pay any attention to our remonstrances on such an inconsiderate determination, but was displeas'd, whenever more reasonable counsels were propos'd for his benefit. Nay, he was so ridiculoussly attached to his favourite scheme, that he affect'd to believe the Bolabolans would certainly quit the conquered island, as soon as they should have intelligence of his arrival in Otaheite. As we proceeded, however, on our voyage, he began to perceive his error; and, by the time of our arrival at the Friendly Islands, had such apprehensions of an unfavourable reception in his own country, that he was inclin'd to have remained at Tongataboo, under the protection of his friend

Feenou. At these islands he squandered away a considerable part of his European treasure; and he was equally imprudent at Otaheite, till Captain Cook put a stop to his profusion. He also formed such improper connections there, that Otoo, though at first disposed to countenance him, afterwards expressed openly his disapprobation of his conduct. He might, however, have recovered the favour of that chief, and have settled, to great advantage, in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived some years there, and was now honoured with the notice of Towha, whose valuable present of a large double canoe has been already mentioned. But he continued undetermined to the last, and probably would not have adopted the plan of settlement in Huaheine, if Captain Cook had not so positively refused to employ force in restoring him to the possession of his father's property. Omiah's greatest danger, in his present situation, will arise from the very imprudent declarations of his antipathy to the Bolabolans; for those people, from motives of jealousy, will undoubtedly endeavour to render him obnoxious to the inhabitants of Huaheine; and as they are now at peace with that island, they may easily accomplish their designs. This circumstance he might, with great ease, have avoided; for they were not only free from any aversion to him, but the old chief, who is reputed by the natives of the Society Islands, to be a priest, or god, even offered to reinstate him in his father's lands: but he peremptorily refused this; and, to the very last, continued fixed in his resolution to embrace the first opportunity of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this he is perhaps not a little stimulated by the coat of mail he brought from England; cloathed in which, and furnished with fire-arms, he idly imagines he shall be invincible. But the defects in Omiah's character were considerably overbalanced by his great good nature, and docile tractable disposition. Captain Cook, during

ring the whole time he was with him, seldom had reason to be seriously displeas'd with his general conduct. His grateful heart ever retained the highest sense of the favours confer'd on him in England; nor will he ever be unmindful of those who honour'd him while in that kingdom, with their friendship and protection. Though he had a tolerable share of understanding, he shew'd little application and perseverance in exerting it, so that he had but a general and imperfect knowledge of things. He was not a man much us'd to observation; otherwise, he might have convey'd to his native country many elegant amusements, and useful arts, to be found among the Friendly Islanders; but we never perceiv'd, that he endeavour'd to make himself master of any one of them. Such indifference is, indeed, the characteristic foible of his countrymen. Though they have been visit'd by Europeans, at times, for these ten years past, we could not discern the slightest vestige of any attempt to profit by this interview, nor have they hitherto imitated us but in very few respects. It must not, therefore, be expected, that Omiah will be able to introduce among them many arts and customs, or much improve those to which they have been familiarized by long habit. We trust, however, that he will exert his endeavours to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables that were plant'd by us, which will be no small acquisition. But the principal advantage these islands are likely to receive from the travels of Omiah, will probably arise from the animals that have been left among them; which, perhaps, they never would have obtained, if he had not come over to England. When these multiply, Otaheite, and the Society Isles, will equal any place in the known world, with respect to provisions. Omiah's return, and the substantial proofs he had display'd of British liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to accompany us to  
 Pretanne;



Pretanne; but our commodore took every opportunity of expressing his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind: and Omiah, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid the commodore might be prevailed upon to place others in the same situation, as rivals, frequently reminded him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to be carried to England. When the captain was about to bid farewell to Omiah, he gave him his last lessons of instruction how to act: directing him at the same time to send his boat over to Ulietea, his native island, to let him know how the chiefs behaved to him in the absence of the ships. If well, he was to send by the messenger three white beads: if they seized upon his stock, or broke in upon his plantation, three red beads: or if things remained just as we left them, he was to send three spotted beads.

As soon as the boat, in which Omiah was conveyed ashore, had returned, with the remainder of the hawser, to the ship, we hoisted her in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, being the 3d, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with light airs and calms alternately, so that at twelve o'clock we were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son-in-law, came off to pay us a visit. All the boats were now hoisted out, and sent a-head to tow, being assisted by a slight southerly breeze. This soon failing, and being succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were obliged to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock, P. M. and to warp in, which employed us till night. We were no sooner within the harbour, than our ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply

a supply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities. The following day, the Resolution was moored close to the northern shore, at the entrance of the harbour, and the Discovery along side the southern shore. In the mean time, Captain Cook returned Oreo's visit, and presented that chief with a red feathered cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo, and some of his friends, then accompanied him on board to dinner.

On Thursday the 6th, we landed the remainder of our live stock, set up the observatories, and carried the necessary instruments on shore. The two succeeding days, Captain Cook, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayley, observed the sun's azimuths, both on shore and aboard, with all the compasses, in order to discover the variation. Nothing remarkable happened, till very early in the morning of Thursday, the 13th, when a sentinel, at the observatory, named John Harrison, deserted, taking with him his musquet and accoutrements. As soon as we had gained intelligence which way he was gone, a party was detached in search of him; but they returned in the evening without success. The next day the captain applied to the chief concerning this affair, who promised to send a party of the islanders after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he should be brought back in the course of that day. This, however, did not happen; and we had reason to imagine, that the chief had taken no steps to find him. At this time a considerable number of the natives were about the ships, and several thefts committed, the consequences of which being apprehended by them, very few came to visit us the next morning. Oreo himself caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook considered this as a good opportunity to insist upon their delivering up the deserter; and having heard he was at a place called Hamoa, situate on the other side of the island,

he

he repaired thither with two armed boats, attended by a native. In our way, we met with the chief, who embarked with us. The captain, with a few of his men, landing about a mile and a half from the spot, marched up to it with great expedition, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to escape to the mountains. This precaution proved unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtained information of the captain's approach, were prepared to deliver the deserter. He was found with his musquet lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the captain entered the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings deserved to be discouraged, the captain with a stern look, bid them be gone; upon which they burst into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking pig, and a plantain-tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering, who rejected it; and having ordered the chief to quit his presence, embarked with Harrison in one of the boats, and returned to the ships. After this, harmony was speedily restored. The delinquent made no other excuse for his conduct, than that the natives had enticed him away; which perhaps was in a great measure true, as Paha, and the two women above-mentioned, had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remained upon his post till within a few minutes of time in which he was to be relieved by another, the punishment he received was not very severe. About a fortnight after we had arrived at Ulietea, Omiah dispatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence, that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request, that Captain Cook

would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity of serving his friend, the captain sent back the messenger to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid. On Wednesday, the 19th, our commander of his Majesty's ship, the Resolution, delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed in case of separation, after quitting these islands, of which the following is, we believe, a true copy.

*Instructions delivered by Captain James Cook, to Captain Charles Clerke, Commander of his Majesty's Ship, the Discovery, Wednesday the 19th of November, 1777.*

“ WHEREAS the passage from the Society Islands, to the northern coast of America, is of considerable length, both in distance and in time, as a part of it must be performed in the very depth of winter, when gales of wind and bad weather must be expected, and may possibly occasion a separation, you are to take all possible care to prevent this. But if, notwithstanding all our care to keep company, you should be separated from me, you are first to look for me where you last saw me. Not seeing me in five days, you are to proceed (as directed by the instructions of their lordships, a copy of which you have already received) for the coast of New Albion; endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. In which, and at a convenient distance from land, you are to cruize for me ten days. Not seeing me in that time, you are to put into the first convenient port, in, or to the north of that latitude, to recruit your wood and water, and to procure refreshments. During your stay in port, you are constantly to keep a good look-out for me. It will be necessary, therefore, to make choice of a station, situated as near the sea coast

coast as possible, the better to enable you to see me, when I may appear in the offing. Should I not join you before the 1st of next April, you are to put to sea, and to proceed northward to the latitude of 56 deg. in which, and at a convenient distance from the coast, never exceeding 15 leagues, you are to cruize for me till the 10th of May. Not seeing me at that time, you are to proceed northward, and endeavour to find a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the above-mentioned instructions.

“ But if you should fail in finding a passage through either of the said bays, or by any other way, as the season of the year may render it unsafe for you to remain in high latitudes, you are to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamptschatka, in order to refresh your people, and to pass the winter. Nevertheless, if you find, that you cannot procure the necessary refreshments, at the said port, you are at liberty to go where you shall think proper; taking care before you depart to leave with the governor an account of your intended destination, to be delivered to me upon my arrival: and in the spring of the ensuing year, 1779, you are to repair back to the above-mentioned port, endeavouring to be there by the 10th of May, or sooner. If on your arrival, you receive no orders from, or account of me, so as to justify your pursuing any other measures than what are pointed out in the before mentioned instructions, your future proceedings are to be governed by them. You are also to comply with such parts of the said instructions, as have not been executed, and are not contrary to these orders. And in case of your inability, by sickness, or otherwise, to carry these, and the instructions of their lordships into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.”

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, Mr. M—, midshipman; and the gunner's mate, two of the Discovery's people, were missing. They had embarked in a canoe, with two of their Otahitean misles, the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one of the Society Islands, it was extremely probable, that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke, therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, set out in quest of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the behaviour of the islanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deserters; and, with this view had deceived him with false information, directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning, intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the isle of Otaha, with a view to continue their course to Otahite, as soon as they had furnished themselves with provisions for the voyage. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook, therefore, determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to amuse him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself. They proceeded, without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before him, with orders to seize the fugitives, and keep them till the captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats: but when arrived at the place where they expected to find them, they were informed, that they had quitted the island, and proceeded

ceeded to Bolabola the day before. The captain, not chusing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse to a measure, which he had reason to believe would compel the natives to restore them. On Wednesday the 26th, soon after day-break, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on board the Resolution, the commodore resolved to detain the three last, till our deserters should be delivered up. With this view Captain Clerke invited them on board his ship; and, as soon as they had entered his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surprized them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He protested he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasy apprehensions, and they bewailed their expected fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, mentioned it immediately to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The captain instantly undeceived him; and then he began to entertain a fear with respect to his own personal safety, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind: but the captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him, that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of our two men, as he should judge best calculated for that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends, on board the Discovery, should be released from their confinement: if not, that they should be carried away with us. The captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men in making their escape, but in endeavouring, at  
this

this very time, to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that should serve to put a stop to such proceedings. All this was done, as we have already hinted, to interest the people of the island in the pursuit after the fugitives, and, to this end, the captain promised a reward of large axes, and other valuable articles, to any of the natives who should be instrumental in apprehending and bringing them back. The confinement of part of the royal family might seem hard usage, yet it had its effect, and without this steady resolute proceeding the deserters would never have been recovered. The boats of the Discovery went day after day to all the adjoining islands, without being able to learn the least trace of them; and this they continued, till having searched every island within the distance of two days sail, they were obliged to give over any farther search, as fruitless. The explanation of the motives upon which Captain Cook acted, seemed to remove, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oreo, and his people present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners in the Discovery. Numbers of them went under the stern of the ship, in canoes, and lamented their captivity, with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (which was that of Oreo's daughter) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a most dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with sharks teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him of what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oreo's son-in-law Pootoe, came to receive the captain's commands

commands before his departure; who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony, from him, that, if they had left the isle of Bolabola, he must send canoes in pursuit of them. But the impatient natives, not thinking proper to trust to the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, were induced to meditate an attempt, which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on shore, abreast of the ship, observed all their canoes, in and about the harbour, began to move off. He enquired, in vain, for the cause of this; till some of our people, calling to us from the Discovery, informed us, that a body of the islanders had seized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and, in a few minutes, a strong party, under the conduct of Mr. King, were sent to the rescue of the two gentlemen. At the same time two armed boats, and a party, under Mr. Williamson, were dispatched, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight, when intelligence arrived, which convinced us we had been misinformed; and they were immediately, in consequence of this, called in. However, it appeared from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the design of seizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of the plan of their operations was to have secured the person of Captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water; on which occasions he frequently went alone, and was unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening, as usual, they

they had resolved upon seizing him, and Captain Clerke likewise, if he had accompanied him. But our commander, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers, not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oreo, in the course of the afternoon, asked our commodore, three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing place; till at length finding that the captain could not be prevailed upon, he retired, with his people, notwithstanding all our intreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion, at this time, of their design, Captain Cook imagined, that a sudden panic had seized them, which would be soon over. Being disappointed with respect to him, they fixed upon those whom they thought more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design, and that no mischief was done on the occasion; no musquets being fired, except two or three to stop the canoes; to which firing, perhaps Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore owed their safety; but Mr. King ascribes this to the captain's walking with a pistol in his hand, which, he says, he once fired; at which time a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them; but dispersed on hearing the report of the musquets. This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl, who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our officers. Happening to overhear some of the Ulieteans say, that they would seize Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, she immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met, with the design. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the plan, threatened to put her to death, as soon as we should quit Ulietea, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends should come a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain

remain concealed, till an opportunity should offer for her escaping to Huaheine.

On Thursday the 27th, the tents were struck, the observatories took down, which, with the live stock, were brought on board the ships. We then unmoored, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. In the afternoon, the natives gathered round, and came on board our ships, as usual. One party acquainted Captain Cook, that the fugitives were found, and that in a few days they would be brought back, requesting at the same time the release of the prisoners. But the captain paid no regard to either their information or petition; on the contrary, he renewed his threatenings, which he declared he would put in execution, if the men were not delivered up. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls, the cable whereby the Resolution was riding at anchor, parted; but as we had another ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again. On the 29th, having received no account from Bolabola, Oreo set out for that island, in search after the deserters, desiring Captain Cook to follow him, the next day, with the ships. This was the captain's intention; but the wind prevented our getting to sea. On the 30th, about five o'clock, P. M. a number of canoes were seen, at a distance, making towards the ships; and as they approached nearer we heard them sing and rejoice, as if they had succeeded in finding what they went in search of. About six, they came so nigh, that we could discern, with our glasses, the deserters fastened together, but without their miffes. They were no sooner brought on board, than the royal prisoners were released, to the unspeakable joy of all but the two fugitives, who were under great apprehensions of suffering death. Their punishment, however, was not so severe as might have been expected.

S— was sentenced to receive 24 lashes, and M— was turned before the mast, where he continued to do duty while there was little or nothing to do; but on asking forgiveness, was restored to his former station on the quarter deck. It appeared that their pursuers had followed them from one island to another from Ulietea to Otaha, from Otaha to Bolabola, from Bolabola to the little island of Toobae, where they were found, but where we never should have looked for them, had not the natives traced them out. They were taken by Pootoe's father, in consequence of the first message sent to Opoony.

On the 1st of December, notice was given to the Otaheitean misses, that they must all prepare to depart, the ships being in readiness to leave the country, and, perhaps, never to return to the Society Islands any more. This news caused great lamentation and much confusion. They were now at a great distance from home, and every one was eager to get what she could for herself before she was parted from her beloved. Most of them had already stripped their mates of almost every thing they possessed, and those who had still something in reserve led a sad life till they shared it with them. It was not till the 7th, to which time we were confined in the harbour by a contrary wind, that we could clear the ships of these troublesome gentry.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*The Resolution and Discovery leave Ulietea, and direct their course to the Island of Bolabola—Remarks on the present and former State of Ulietea—The Ships arrive at Bolabola, with Oreo and others—Captain Cook applies to Opoony for Mons. Bougainville's anchor—Reasons for purchasing it—They quit the Society Islands—Bolabola and its Harbour described—Bravery*

*very of its Inhabitants—Historical Account of the Reduction of Otaba and Ulietea—Animals left at the above Islands—Method of salting Pork for the Use of the Ships—Cursory Remarks respecting Otabeite and the Society Islands—Additional Strictures to the former Accounts of Otabeite, by Mr. Anderson—Of the Country in general—Productions—Natural History—Description of the Natives—Their Language—Diet—Liquors—Different Meals—Connections between the two Sexes—Their Customs—System of Religion—Superstitions—Traditions—An historical Legend—Of the regal Dignity—Distinctions of Rank, and Punishments—Peculiarities belonging to the adjacent Islands—Their Names and those of their Gods—Limits of their Navigation—The Resolution and Discovery prepare for sailing to the North, in quest of the grand and principal Object of this Voyage—A curious geographical and historical Description of the North-west Parts of North America, and of the most remarkable Islands situated north of the Pacific Ocean, and in the Eastern Sea.*

**S**UNDAY, the 7th of December, at eight o'clock A. M. we weighed and made sail with a light breeze at the north-east point. During the preceding week, we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded us a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being furnished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water. The Ulieteans appeared to be in general smaller, and blacker than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subjects to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy to the Bolabolan monarch;

monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less under the immediate eye of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulictea is now reduced to this humiliating state of dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and, probably, the first seat of government, for the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulictea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing, in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance to this during our stay at Ulictea, where one of our occasional visitants was Captain Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

We now had a brisk wind, and directed our course to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others from Ulictea; and, indeed, most of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage with us to England. Our principal reason for visiting the island of Bolabola was, to procure one of the anchors which had been left at Otaheite by Monsieur Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get possession of it; but, having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron implements, in purchasing refreshments, we were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading

trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron we could find on board; and even the greatest part of that had been already expended. Captain Cook, therefore, supposed *Monf. Bougainville's* anchor would in a great measure supply our want of this useful material; and he did not entertain a doubt that *Opoony* might be induced to part with it. At sun-set being off the south point of *Bolabola*, we shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On Monday, the 8th, at day-break, we made sail for the harbour, on the west side of the island. Having a scanty wind we were obliged to ply up; and it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance. When the master returned with the boat, he reported, that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within; and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms. In the channel, he said, there was room enough to turn the ships, it being one third of a mile broad. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ships in; but the wind and tide being against us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in our favour. Whereupon the captain gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour; and, embarking in one of the boats, attended by *Oreo* and his companions, was rowed in for the island. As soon as they landed, our Commodore was introduced to *Opoony*, surrounded by a vast concourse of people. The necessary compliments being exchanged, the captain requested the chief to give him the anchor; and, by way of inducement, produced the present he intended for him. It consisted of a linen night gown, gauze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads, toys, and six axes. *Opoony*, however, refused to accept the present till the commodore had received the anchor; and ordered three persons

persons to go and deliver it to him, with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited, but it was neither so large nor so perfect, as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds, but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason of Opoony's refusing Captain Cook's present was now apparent: he, doubtless, supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to what was offered in exchange, that when the captain saw it, he would be displeased. The commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor as he found it, and sent the whole of the present which he at first intended. This business being done, and the captain returned on board, we hoisted in our boats, and made sail to the north. While we were thus employed, we were visited by some of the natives, who came off in three or four canoes to see the ships. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa-nuts. Had we remained at this island till the next day, we should probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would, doubtless, be disappointed when they found we were gone; but, having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement left to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanooga, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed by those employed for the purpose, that it is a very proper place for the reception of ships. Towards the middle of this island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east side, but on the west side has some trees and bushes. The lower grounds,

grounds, towards the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms and bread-fruit trees. There are many little islots that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions. Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only 24 miles in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former being alone more than double its size. In each of Captain Cook's three voyages, the war that produced this great revolution was frequently mentioned; and as the history thereof may be an agreeable entertainment to our subscribers, we shall here give it as related by themselves.

Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives express it emphatically, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The island of Huaheine was also admitted as a friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulietea; whose people required the assistance of their friends in Huaheine against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess, who predicted their success; and that they might rely on her prophecy, she desired that a man should be sent to a particular part of the sea, where from a great depth would arise a stone. He was accordingly sent off in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive for the stone, when, behold, it started up spontaneously to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight; the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited in the house of the eatooa, where it is still preserved, as a proof that this prophetess was inspired with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter lasted long, they being  
lashed

lashed strongly together with ropes ; and, notwithstanding the pretended miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned ; victory declared in favour of the Bolabolans ; and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after, the conquerors invaded Huaheine, which they subdued, it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their melancholy tale. This so affected those of their own country, and of Ulietea, whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance. They were furnished with only ten fighting canoes ; with which inconsiderable force they effected a landing at Huaheine in the night ; and, taking the Bolabola men by surprise, killed many of them, and dispersed the rest. Thus were they again, by one bold effort, possessed of their own island, which at this day remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the combined fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha, to be allowed an equal share of the conquests. This being refused, the alliance broke ; and, during the war, Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola ; the chiefs by whom they are governed, being only deputies to Opoony, the king of the islands. Such is their account of the war ; and in the reduction of the two islands five battles were fought, at different places, in which great numbers were killed on each side.

We have already observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events. Respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy our enquiries with  
any

any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been atchieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teereetareea, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be more than ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements. Since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, the Bolabola men are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that, even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted, they never fly from an enemy, and that they are victorious against an equal number of the other islanders. These ascribe much to the superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us by contrary winds at Ulietea. The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otaheite, may be gathered from M. de Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island, must be ascribed to the same cause. They also had a third European curiosity, brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally springs up out of evil. When Captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been shewn to them, and that it was a ram. Had our men not deserted, it is probable we should never have known more about it. In consequence of this intelligence, the captain, when he landed to meet Opaony, took an ewe with him in the boat, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, whereby a foundation is laid for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also

left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an English boar and sow: so that the race of hogs will be considerably improved, in a few years, at Otaheite, and all the neighbouring islands; and they will, perhaps, be stocked with many valuable European animals. When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments for the supply of future navigators. Even in their present state, they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

Had we been possessed of a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year: but we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Isles, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes, in particular, were nearly gone, with which, alone, hogs were, in general, to be purchased. The salt that remained aboard was not more than was requisite for curing 15 puncheons of meat. The following process of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening; and, when cleaned, they were cut up; after which the bone was taken out. The meat was salted while hot, and laid in such a manner as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning: it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained, in this situation, four or five days, when it was taken out, and carefully examined; and if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which sometimes happened, it was separated from the rest, which was repacked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time, but there appeared no necessity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured.

cured. Bay and white salt mixed together answers the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood-vessels remained in the meat; and that not too much should be packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates, meat ought not to be salted in rainy sultry weather. Europeans having of late so frequently visited these islanders, they may, on that account, have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing that, whenever we come, they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and in two or three years time, they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that you will not return, for they suppose you cannot avoid it; though none of them know or enquire the reason of your coming. It would, perhaps, have been better for the people to have been ignorant of our superiority in the accommodations and arts that make life comfortable, than, after once knowing it, to be abandoned to their original incapacity of improvement. They cannot be, indeed, restored to their former happy mediocrity, should the intercourse between us be discontinued. It is in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits (once in three or four years) to supply them with those articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt, when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they have now discarded, and despise. When the iron tools with which we furnished them are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chissel made

of bone, or stone, is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles, and they are weak enough to imagine that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they are no longer sought after. Knives happened, at this time, to be in high estimation at Ulictea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as capricious as the most polished European nations; for an article which may be prized to-day will be rejected to-morrow, as fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence, as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

Much has already been related respecting Otaheite; which though not comprehended in the number of what we have denominated the Society Islands, yet, being inhabited by the same race of men, agreeing in the same leading features of character and manners, it was fortunate that we happened to discover this principal island before the others, as the hospitable reception we there met with, led us to make it the principal place of resort, in our successive voyages to this part of the Pacific Ocean. By our repeated visits, we have had better opportunity of knowing something about it and its inhabitants, than about the other similar, but less considerable islands in its vicinity. Of these latter, however, we have seen enough to satisfy us, that all we have observed of Otaheite may, with trifling alterations, be applied to them. During our continuance at these islands, we lost no opportunity of making astronomical and nautical observations. At Otaheite and Ulictea we particularly remarked the tide, with a view of ascertaining its grandest rise at the former place.

TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN, &c. 1629

place. Also by the mean of 145 sets of observations, we determined the latitude and longitude of the three following places.

	deg. min. sec.	deg. min. sec.	
Matavai Point, at Otaheite	17 29 15	S. lat. 210 22 28	E lon.
Owharre harbour, at Huahine	16 42 45	— 203 52 24	
Ohamaneno ditto, at Ulitea	16 45 30	— 208 25 22	

It may be thought by some, the island of Otaheite has been already and so often accurately described, and the manners, customs, and ways of living of the inhabitants, so amply enlarged upon, in our history of former voyages, that little remains to be added: but, there are still, however, many parts of the domestic, political, and religious institutions of the natives, which after all our visits to them, are but imperfectly understood; and we doubt not, but that the following remarks, for which, we are indebted to the ingenious Mr. Anderson, and which may be considered as finishing strokes to a picture, the outlines of which have been already given, will be highly acceptable to our numerous friends and subscribers, who, by their kind encouragement of this work, have given the strongest testimony in its favour.

“ To what has been observed of Otaheite (says Mr. Anderson) in the accounts of the successive voyages of Captain Wallis, M. de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, it would, at first sight, seem superfluous to add any thing; as it might be supposed, that little could now be produced, but a repetition of what has been related before. I am, however, far from being of that opinion; and will venture to affirm, that, though a very accurate description of the country, and of the most obvious customs of its inhabitants, has been already given, especially by Captain Cook, yet much still remains untouched: that in some instances, mistakes have been made, which later and repeated observations have

have been able to rectify; and that, even now, we are strangers to many of the most important institutions that prevail among these people. The truth is, our visits, though frequent, have been but transient: many of us had no inclination to make enquiries; more were unable to direct the enquiries properly; and we all laboured, though not to the same degree, under the disadvantages attending an imperfect knowledge of the language of those, from whom alone we could receive any information. The Spaniards had it more in their power to surmount this bar to instruction; some of them having resided at Otaheite much longer than any other European visitors; by which superior advantage, they could not but have had an opportunity of obtaining the fullest information, on most subjects relating to this island: their account of it would, probably, convey more authentic and accurate intelligence, than, with our best endeavours, any of us could possibly obtain. But, as I look upon it to be very uncertain, if not very unlikely, that we should ever have any communication from that quarter, I have here put together what additional intelligence about Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands, I was able to procure, either from Omai, while on board the Resolution, or by conversing with the other natives, while we had any intercourse, and were conversant with them.

“ The wind, for the greatest part of the year, blows from between the E. S. E. and E. N. E. This is the true trade wind, or what the natives call maarae; and it sometimes blows with considerable force. When this happens, the weather is often cloudy, with showers of rain; but when the wind is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene. Should the wind veer farther to the southward, and become S. E. or S. S. E. it then blows more gently, with a smooth sea, and is called maoai. In these months, when the sun is nearly vertical, that is in  
December

December and January, the winds and weather are both very variable; but it frequently blows from W. N. W. or N. W. This wind, called *toerou*, is generally attended by dark, cloudy weather, and frequently by rain. It sometimes blows strong, though generally moderate; but seldom last longer than six days without interruption; and is the only wind in which the people of the islands to leeward come to this, in their canoes. If it happens to be still more northerly, it blows with less strength, and is called *Era-potaia*; which they say is the wife of *Toerou*, who, according to their mythology, is a male. The wind from the S. W. and W. S. W. is still more frequent than the former, and though, in general, gentle, and interrupted by calms, or breezes from the eastward, yet it sometimes blows in brisk squalls. The weather attending it is commonly dark, cloudy, and rainy, with a close hot air; and accompanied by a great deal of thunder and lightning. It is called *Étoa*, and often succeeds the *Toerou*; as does also the *Farooa*, which is still more southerly; and, from its violence, blows down houses and trees, especially the cocoa-palms, from their loftiness; but it is of short duration. The natives seem not to have a very accurate knowledge of these changes, and yet pretend to have drawn some general conclusions from their effects; for when the sea has a hollow sound, and dashes slowly on the reef, they say it portends good weather; but if it has a sharp sound, and the waves succeed each other fast, that the reverse will happen.

“ There is, perhaps, scarcely a spot in the universe, that affords a more luxuriant prospect than the S. E. part of the island of *Otaheite*. The hills are high and steep, and in many places craggy: but they are covered to the very summits, with trees and shrubs, so that a spectator cannot help thinking, that the very rocks possess the property  
of

of producing and supporting their verdant clothing. The flat land which bounds those hills toward the sea, and the interjacent valleys also, teem with various productions that grow with the most exuberant vigour; and, at once, fill the mind of the beholder with the idea, that no place on the earth can excel this, in the strength and beauty of vegetation. Nature has been no less liberal in distributing rivulets, which are found in every valley; and as they approach the sea, often divide into two or three branches, fertilizing the flat lands through which they run. The habitations of the natives are scattered without order, upon these flats; and many of them appearing toward the shore, presented a delightful scene, viewed from our ships; especially as the sea, within the reef, which bounds the coast, is perfectly still, and affords a safe navigation, at all times, for the inhabitants, who are often seen paddling in their canoes indolently along, in passing from place to place, or in going to fish. On viewing these delightful scenes, I have often regretted my inability to transmit to those who have had no opportunity of seeing them, such a description as might, in some measure, convey an impression similar to what must be felt by every one, who has been fortunate enough to be on the spot.

“ It is, doubtless, the natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildness and serenity of the climate, that renders the natives so careless in their cultivation, that, in many places, though abounding with the richest productions, the smallest traces of it cannot be observed. The cloth-plant which is raised from seeds brought from the mountains, and the ava, or intoxicating pepper, which they defend from the sun when very young, by covering them with the leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, are almost the only things to which they seem to pay any attention; and these they keep very clean. I have enquired very carefully into their  
manner

manner of cultivating the bread-fruit-tree; but was always answered, that they never planted it. This, indeed, must be evident to every one who will examine the places where the young trees come up; It will be always observed, that they spring from the roots of the old ones; which run near the surface of the ground: so that the bread-fruit-trees may be reckoned those that would naturally cover the plains, supposing that the island was not inhabited, in the same manner as the white-barked-trees, found at Van Diemen's Land, constitute the forests there. And from this we may observe, that an inhabitant of Otaheite, instead of being obliged to plant his bread, will rather be under a necessity of preventing its progress; which, I suppose, is sometimes done, to give room for trees of another sort, to afford him a variety in his food. The chief of these are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the first of which can give no trouble, after it has raised itself a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires a little more care; for after it is planted, it shoots up, and, in about three months, begins to bear fruit; during which time it gives young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit; for the old stocks are cut down as the fruit is taken off. The products of the island, however, are not so remarkable for their variety, as great abundance; and curiosities of any kind are not numerous. Among these we may reckon a pond or lake of fresh water, at the top of one of the highest mountains, to go to, and return from which, takes three or four days. It is remarkable for its depth; and has eels of an enormous size in it; which are sometimes caught by the natives, who go upon this water in little floats of two or three wild plantain-trees fastened together. This is esteemed one of the greatest natural curiosities of the country; inasmuch, that travellers, who come from the other islands, are commonly asked among the first questions, by their

friends, at their return, if they have seen it? There is also a sort of water, of which there is only one small pond upon the island, as far distant as the lake, and to appearance very good, with a yellow sediment at the bottom: but it has a bad taste; and proves fatal to those who drink any quantity of it, or makes them break out in blotches, if they bathe in it.

“ Nothing made a stronger impression, at first sight, on our arrival here, than the contrast between the robust make and dark colour of the people of Tongataboo, and a sort of delicacy and whiteness, which distinguish the inhabitants of Otaheite. It was even some time before that difference could preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and then only, perhaps, because we became accustomed to them, the marks which recommended the others began to be forgotten. Their women, however, struck us as superior in every respect; and as possessing all those delicate characteristics, which distinguish them from the other sex in many countries. The beard, which the men here wear long, and the hair which is not cut so short, as is the fashion at Tongataboo, made also a great difference; and we could not help thinking, that, on every occasion, they shewed a greater degree of timidity and fickleness. The muscular appearance, so common among the Friendly Islanders, and which seems in consequence of their being accustomed to much action, is lost here, where the superior fertility of their country enables the inhabitants to lead a more indolent life; and its place is supplied by a plumpness and smoothness of the skin; which, though, perhaps, more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is no real advantage; as it seems to be attended with a kind of languor in all their motions, not observable in the others. This remark is fully verified, in their boxing and wrestling, which may be called little better than the feeble efforts of children,  
if

if compared to the vigour with which they are performed at the Friendly Islands.

“ Among these people personal endowments are in great esteem, and they have recourse to several methods of improving them, according to their notions of beauty. It is a practice, in particular, especially among the errees, or unmarried men of some consequence, to undergo a kind of physical operation to render them fair. This is done by remaining a month or two in the house; during which time they wear a quantity of clothes, eat nothing but bread-fruit, to which they ascribe a remarkable property in whitening them. They also speak, as if their corpulence and colour, at other times, depended on their food, as they are obliged, from the change of seasons, to use different sorts at different times. Their common diet is made up of, at least, nine tenths of vegetable food; and I believe, more particularly, the mahee, or fermented bread-fruit, which is a part of almost every meal, has a remarkable effect on them, preventing a costive habit, and producing a very sensible coolness about them, which could not be perceived in us who fed on animal food; and it is, perhaps, owing to this temperate course of life, that they have so few diseases among them. They reckon only five or six, which might be called chronic, or passionial disorders; among which are the dropsy, and the *sefai*, or indolent swellings, frequent at *Tongataboo*. But this was before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added to this short catalogue a disease which abundantly supplies the place of all others, and is now almost universal. For this they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests, indeed, give them a medley of simples; but they own that it never cures them. And yet, they allow that, in a few cases, nature, without the assistance of a physician, exterminates the poison of

this fatal disorder, and a perfect recovery is produced.

“ Their behaviour, on all occasions, seems to indicate a great openness, and generosity of disposition. Omiah, indeed, who, as their countryman, should be supposed rather willing to conceal any of their defects, has often said, that they are sometimes cruel in the treatment of their enemies. According to his account they torment them very deliberately; at one time tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts; at another taking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly, killing them by ripping up the belly. But this only happens on particular occasions. If cheerfulness argues a conscious innocence, one would suppose that their life is seldom sullied with crimes. This, however, I rather impute to their feelings, which, though lively, seem in no case permanent; for I never saw them in any misfortune, labour under the appearance of anxiety, after the critical moment was past. Neither does care ever seem to wrinkle their brow. On the contrary, even the approach of death does not appear to alter their usual vivacity. I have seen them when brought to the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to go to battle; but, in neither case, ever observed their countenances over clouded with melancholy or serious reflection. Such a disposition leads them to direct all their aims only to what can give them pleasure and ease. Their amusements all tend to excite and continue amorous passions, and their songs, of which they are immoderately fond, answer the same purpose. But as a constant succession of sensual enjoyments must cloy, we found they frequently varied them to more refined subjects, and had much pleasure in chanting their triumphs in war, and their occupations in peace; their travels to other islands, and adventures there; and the peculiar beauties, and superior advantages of their own island over the  
rest,

rest, or of different parts of it over other less favourite districts. This marks their great delight in music; and though they rather expressed a dislike to our complicated compositions, yet were they always delighted with the more melodious sounds produced singly on our instruments, as approaching nearer to the simplicity of their own. Neither are they strangers to the soothing effects produced by particular sorts of motion, which, in some cases, seem to allay any perturbation of mind, with as much success as music. Of this I met with a remarkable instance: for walking, one day, about Matavai point, where our tents were erected, I saw a man paddling, in a small canoe, so quickly, and looking about him with such eagerness on each side, as to command all my attention. At first, I imagined that he had stolen something from one of the ships, and was pursued; but, on waiting patiently, saw him repeat his amusement. He went out from the shore, till he was near the place where the swell begins to take its rise; and, watching its first motion very attentively, paddled before it, with great quickness, till he found that it overtook him, and acquired sufficient force to carry his canoe before it, without passing underneath. He then sat motionless, and was carried along at the same swift rate as the wave, till it landed him on the beach. Then he started out, emptied his canoe, and went in search of another swell. I could not help concluding, that this man felt the most supreme pleasure, while he was driven on, so fast and so smoothly, by the sea; especially as, though the tents and ships were so near, he did not seem in the least to envy, or even to take any notice of the crowds of his countrymen, collected to view them as objects that were rare and curious. During my stay two or three of the natives came up, who seemed to share his felicity, and always called out, when there was an appearance of a favourable swell, as he sometimes missed it,

by his back being turned, and looking about for it. By them I understood, that this exercise, which is called *chorooe*, was frequent among them; and they have probably more amusements of this sort, which afford them, at least, as much pleasure as skating.

“ The language of Otaheite, though doubtless radically the same with that of New Zealand, and the Friendly Isles, is destitute of that guttural pronunciation, and of some consonants, with which those latter dialects abound. The specimens we have already given, are sufficient to mark wherein the variation chiefly consists, and to shew, that, like the manners of the inhabitants, it has become soft and soothing. During the former voyage, I had collected a copious vocabulary, which enabled me the better to compare this dialect with that of the other islands; and, during this voyage, I took every opportunity of improvements by conversing with Oniah before we arrived, and by my daily intercourse with the natives, while we now remained there.” (In our history of Captain Cook’s former voyage, we have given to the public very copious specimens of the language of Otaheite, New Zealand, &c. which we flatter ourselves will be thought sufficient for their information, amusement, and every useful purpose.) “ It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, which were it perfectly known, would, I make no doubt, put it upon a level with many of the languages that are most in esteem for their warm and bold images. For instance; the Otaheiteans express their notions of death very emphatically, by saying, “ That the soul goes into darkness; or rather into night.” And if you seem to entertain any doubt, in asking the question, “ If such a person is their mother?” they immediately reply, with surprize, “ Yes, the mother that bore me.” They have one expression, that corresponds exactly with the phraseology of  
the

the scriptures; where we read of the "yearning of the bowels." They use it on all occasions, when the passions give them uneasiness; as they constantly refer pain from grief, anxious desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as its seat; where they suppose all the operations of the mind are performed. Their language is so copious, that for the bread-fruit alone, in its different states, they have above twenty names; as many for the taro root; and about ten for the cocoa-nut. Add to this, that besides the common dialect, they often expostulate, in a kind of stanza, or recitative, which is answered in the same manner.

" Their arts are few and simple; yet, if we may credit them, they perform cures in surgery, which our extensive knowledge in that branch has not, as yet, enabled us to imitate. In simple fractures, they bind them up with splints; but if part of the substance of the bone be lost, they insert a piece of wood between the fractured ends, made hollow like the deficient part. In five or six days, the rapao, or surgeon, inspects the wound, and finds the wood partly covered with the growing flesh. In as many more days, it is generally entirely covered; after which, when the patient has acquired some strength, he bathes in the water, and recovers. We know that wounds will heal over leaden bullets; and sometimes, though rarely, over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of so extraordinary skill, as in the above-mentioned instance, is, that in other cases that fell under my own observation, they are far from being so dextrous. I have seen the stump of an arm, which was taken off, after being shattered by a fall from a tree, that bore no marks of skilful operation, though some allowance may be made for their defective instruments: and I met with a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after the accident, from their being ignorant of the method

thod to reduce it ; though this be considered as one of the simplest operations of our surgery. They know fractures or luxations of the spine are mortal, but not fractures of the skull ; and they likewise know, from experience, in what part of the body wounds prove fatal. They have sometimes pointed out those inflicted by spears, which, if made in the direction they mentioned, would certainly have been pronounced deadly by us ; and yet these people would have recovered. Their physical knowledge seems more confined, and that, probably, because their diseases are fewer than their accidents. The priests, however, administer the juices of the herbs in some cases ; and women who are troubled with after-pains, or other disorders, the consequences of child-bearing, use a remedy which one would think needless in a hot country. They first heat stones, as when they bake their food ; then they lay a thick cloth over them, upon which is put a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind ; and these are covered with another cloth. Upon this they seat themselves, and sweat plentifully to obtain a cure. They have no emetic medicine.

“ Notwithstanding the extreme fertility of the island, a famine frequently happens, in which, it is said, many perish. Whether this be owing to the failure of some seasons, to over population, which must sometimes almost necessarily happen, or to wars, I have not been able to determine ; though the truth of the fact may fairly be inferred, from the great œconomy that they observe with respect to their food, even when there is plenty. In times of scarcity, after their bread-fruit and yams are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow, without cultivation, upon the mountains. The patarra, which is found in vast quantities, is what they use first. It is not unlike a very large potatoe or yam, and good when in its growing state ; but, when old, is full of hard stringy fibres. They

They then eat two other roots; one not unlike the taro; and lastly, the choee. This is of two sorts; one of them possessing deleterious qualities, which obliges them to slice and macerate it in water, a night before they bake and eat it. In this respect it resembles the cassava root of the West-Indies; but it forms a very insipid, moist paste, in the manner they dress it. However, I have seen them eat it at times when no such scarcity reigned. Both this and the patarra are creeping plants; the last, with ternate leaves. Of animal food, a very small portion falls, at any time, to the share of the lower class of people; and then it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for they seldom or ever eat pork. The eree de hoi, (as Mr. Anderson calls the king, but which word Captain Cook writes eree rahie) is, alone, able to furnish pork every day; and inferior chiefs, according to their riches, once a week, fortnight, or month. Sometimes they are not even allowed that; for, when the island is impoverished by war, or other causes, the chief prohibits his subjects to kill any hogs; and this prohibition, we are told, is in force, sometimes, for several months, or even for a year or two. During that constraint, the hogs multiply so fast, that there are instances of their changing their domestic state, and turning wild. When it is thought proper to take off the prohibition, all the chiefs assemble at the king's place of abode; and each brings with him a present of hogs. The king then orders some of them to be killed, on which they feast; and, after that, every one returns home with liberty to kill what he pleases for his own use. Such a prohibition was actually in force, on our last arrival here; at least, in all those districts of the island that are immediately under the direction of Otoo. And, lest it should have prevented our going to Matavia, after leaving Oheitepeha, he sent a message to assure us, that it should be taken off, as soon

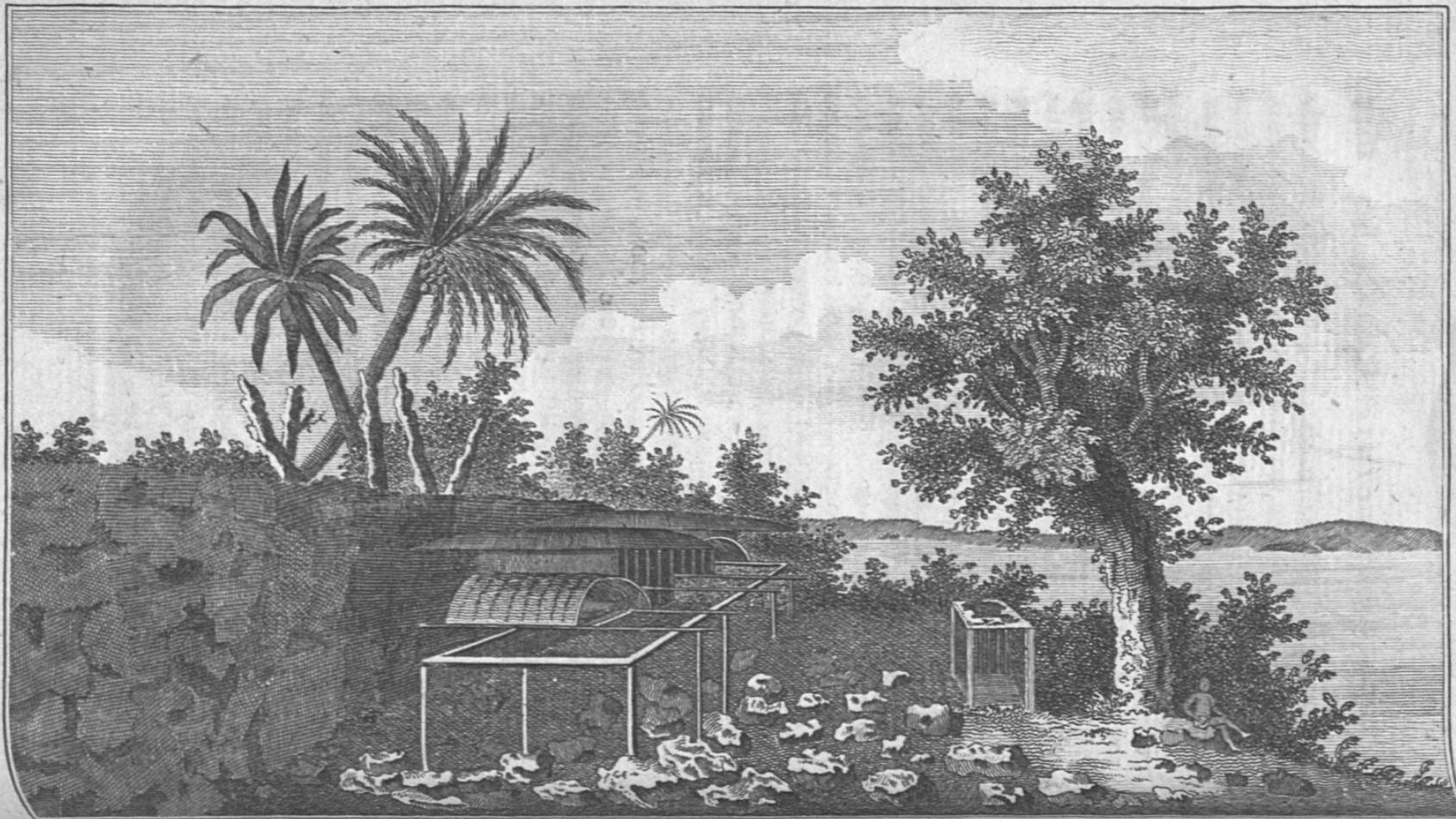
as the ships arrived there. With respect to us, we found it so; but we made such a consumption of them, that, I have no doubt of it, it would be laid on again, as soon as we sailed. A similar prohibition is also, sometimes, extended to fowls. It is also among the better sort, that the ava is chiefly used. But this beverage is prepared somewhat differently from that which we saw so much of at the Friendly Islands: for they pour a very small quantity of water upon the root here; and sometimes roast, and bake, and bruise the stalks, without chewing it previously to its infusion. They also use the leaves of the plant here, which are bruised, and water poured upon them, as upon the root. Large companies do not assemble to drink it, in that sociable way which is practised at Tongataboo. But its pernicious effects are more obvious here; perhaps, owing to the manner of preparing it; as we often saw instances of its intoxicating, or rather stupifying powers. Some of us, who had been at these islands before, were surprized to find many people, who when we saw them last, were remarkable for their size and corpulency, now almost reduced to skeletons, and, upon enquiring into the cause of this alteration, it was universally allowed to be the use of the ava. The skins of these people were rough, dry, and covered with scales, which, they say, every now and then fall off, and their skin is, as it were, renewed. As an excuse for a practice so destructive, they alledge, that it is adopted to prevent their growing too fat; but it evidently enervates them; and, in all probability shortens their days. As its effects had not been so visible, during our former visits, it is not unlikely, that this article of luxury had never been so much abused as at this time. If it continues to be fashionable, it bids fair to destroy great numbers.

“ The times of eating, at Otalieite, are very frequent. Their first meal, (or rather, as it may be called)

called) their last, as they go to sleep after it, is about two o'clock in the morning; and the next is at eight. At eleven they dine: and again, as Omiah expressed it, at two, and at five; and sup at eight. In this article of domestic life, they have adopted some customs that are exceeding whimsical. The women, for instance, have not only the mortification of being obliged to eat by themselves, and in a different part of the house from the men; but, by a strange kind of policy, are excluded from a share of most of the better sorts of food. They are not permitted to taste turtle, nor fish of the tunny kind, which is much esteemed; nor some particular sorts of the best plantains; and it is very seldom that even those of the first rank eat pork. The children of each sex also eat apart; and the women, generally, serve up their own victuals; for they would certainly starve, before any grown man would do them such a service. In this, as well as in some other customs relative to their eating, there is a mysterious conduct, which we could never thoroughly comprehend. When we enquired into the reasons of it, we could get no other answer; but that it is right and necessary it should be so. In other customs, respecting the females, there seems to be no obscurity; especially as to their connections with the men. If a man and woman, from mutual choice, cohabit, the man gives the father of the girl such things as are necessary in common life, as hogs, cloth, and canoes, in proportion to the time they are together; and if he thinks that he has not been sufficiently paid for his slaughter, he makes no scruple of forcing her to leave her friend, and to cohabit with another person who may be more liberal. The man, on his part, is always at liberty to make a new choice; but should his consort become pregnant, he may kill the child; and after that, either continue his connection with the mother, or leave her. But if he

should adopt the child, and suffer it to live, the parties are then considered as in the married state, and they commonly live together ever after. However, it is thought no crime in the man to join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and to live with both. Their custom of changing their connections is, however, much more general than this last; and it is a thing so common, that they speak of it with great indifference. The erroes are only those of the better sort, who, from their fickleness, and possessing the means of purchasing fresh connections, are constantly roaming about; and, from having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the more settled method mentioned above. And so agreeable is this licentious manner of life to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes thus commonly spend their youthful days, habituated to the practice of enormities, which would disgrace the most savage tribes; but are peculiarly shocking among a people whose general character, in other respects, has evident traces of the prevalence of humane and tender feelings. When the erroe woman is delivered of a child, a piece of cloth dipped in water, is applied to the mouth and nose, which suffocates it. As in such a life, their women must contribute a very large share of its happiness, it is rather surprising, besides the humiliating restraints they are laid under with regard to food, to find them often treated with a degree of harshness, or rather brutality, which one would scarcely suppose a man would bestow, on an object for whom he had the least affection. Nothing, however, is more common, than to see the men beat them without mercy; and unless this treatment is the effect of jealousy, which both sexes, at least, pretend to be sometimes infected with, it will be difficult to account for it. It will be less difficult to admit this as the motive, as I have seen several instances where the women have preferred personal beauty to interest; though I must own, that

*London: Publish'd as the Act directs, by Alex.<sup>r</sup> Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup>. 16, Paternoster Row.*



that even in these cases, they seem scarcely susceptible of those delicate sentiments, that are the result of mutual affection; and, I believe, that there is less platonic love in Otaheite, than in any other country.

“ Their religious system is extensive, and, in many instances, singular; but few of the common people have a perfect knowledge of it; that being confined chiefly to their priests, who are pretty numerous. They do not seem to pay respect to one god as possessing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who are all very powerful; and, in this case, as different parts of the island, and the other islands in the neighbourhood, have different ones, the inhabitants of each, no doubt, think that they have chosen the most eminent, or, at least, one who is invested with power sufficient to protect them, and to supply all their wants. If he should not answer their expectations, they think it no impiety to change; as has very lately happened at Tiaraboo, where, in the room of two divinities formerly honoured, Olla, god of Bolabola, has been adopted, I should suppose, because he is the protector of a people who have been victorious in war; and as, since they have made this change, they have been very successful themselves against the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe, they impute it entirely to Olla, who, as they literally say, fights their battles. Their assiduity in serving their gods is remarkably conspicuous. Not only the whattas, or offering places of the morais, are commonly loaded with fruits and animals; but there are few houses where you do not meet with a small place of the same sort near them. Many of them are so rigidly scrupulous, that they will not begin a meal, without first laying aside a morsel for the eatooa; and we had an opportunity during this voyage, of seeing their superstitious zeal carried to a pernicious height, in the instance of human sacrifices, the occasions of offering

offering which, I doubt, are too frequent. Perhaps, they have recourse to them when misfortunes occur; for they asked, if one of our men, who happened to be confined, when we were detained by a contrary wind, was taboo? Their prayers are also very frequent, which they chant, much after the manner of the songs in their festive entertainments. And the women, as in other cases, are also obliged to shew their inferiority in religious observances; for it is required of them, that they should partly, uncover themselves, as they pass the morais; or take a considerable circuit to avoid them. Though they have no notion, that their god must always be conferring benefits, without sometimes forgetting them, or suffering evil to befall them, they seem to regard this less than the attempts of some more inauspicious being to hurt them. They tell us, that etee is an evil spirit, who sometimes does us mischief, and to whom, as well as to their good being, they make offerings. But the mischiefs they apprehend from any superior invisible agents, are confined to things merely temporal. They believe the soul to be both immaterial and immortal. They say, that it keeps fluttering about the lips during the pangs of death; and that then it ascends, and mixes with, or, as they express it, is eaten by the deity. In this state it remains for some time; after which, it departs to a certain place destined for the reception of the souls of men, where it exists in eternal night; or, as they sometimes say in twilight, or dawn. They have no idea of any permanent punishment after death, for crimes they have committed on earth; for the souls of good and bad men are eat indiscriminately by the deity; but they certainly consider this coalition with him as a kind of purification necessary to be undergone, before they enter into a state of bliss; for according to their doctrine, if a man refrain from all connection with women some months before death, he passes immediately

immediately into his eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if already, by this abstinence, he were pure enough to be exempted from the general lot. They are, however, far from entertaining such sublime conceptions of happiness, which our religion, and, indeed, reason, gives us room to expect hereafter. The only great privilege they seem to think they shall acquire by death, is immortality, for they speak of spirits being, in some measure, not totally divested of those passions which actuated them when combined with material vehicles. Thus if souls, who were formerly enemies, should meet, they have many conflicts; though it should seem, to no purpose, as they are accounted invulnerable in this invisible state. There is a similar reasoning with regard to a man and his wife when they meet. If the husband dies first, the soul of his wife is known to him on its arrival in the land of spirits. They resume their former acquaintance in a spacious house, called tourooa, where the souls of the deceased assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. She then retires with him to his separate habitation, where they remain for ever, and have an offspring, which, however, is entirely spiritual, as they are neither married, nor are their embraces supposed to be the same as with corporeal beings. Some of their notions about the deity, are extravagantly absurd. They believe, that he is subject to the power of those very spirits to whom he has given existence; and that, in their turn, they frequently eat or devour him, though he possess the power of recreating himself. They, doubtless, use this mode of expression, as they seem incapable of conversing about immaterial things, without constantly referring to material objects to convey their meaning. And in this manner they continue the account, by saying, that, in the tourooa, the deity enquires, if they intend, or not, to destroy him? And that he is not able to alter their determination.

determination. This is known to the inhabitants on earth, as well as to the spirits; for when the moon is in its wane, it is said, that they are then devouring their eatooa; and that, as it increases, he is renewing himself. And to this accident, not only the inferior, but the most eminent gods are liable. They also believe, that there are other places for the reception of souls after death. Thus, those who are drowned in the sea, remain there; where they think that there is a fine country, houses, and every thing that can make them happy. But what is more singular, they maintain, that not only all other animals; but trees, fruit, and even stones, have souls, which at death, or upon being consumed, or broken, ascend to the divinity, with whom they first mix, and afterwards pass into the mansion allotted to each. They imagine, that their punctual performance of religious offices procures them every temporal blessing. And as they believe, that the animating and powerful influence of the deity is every where diffused, it is no wonder that they join to this many superstitious opinions about its operations. Accordingly, they believe that sudden deaths, and all other accidents, are effected by the immediate action of some divinity. If a man only stumble against a stone, and hurt his toe, they impute it to an eatooa; so that they may be literally said, agreeable to their system, to tread on enchanted ground. They are startled, in the night, on approaching a toopapoo, where the dead are exposed, in the same manner that many of our ignorant and superstitious people are with the apprehensions of ghosts, and at the sight of a churchyard; and they have an equal confidence in dreams, which they suppose to be communications either from their god, or from the spirits of their departed friends, enabling those favoured with them to foretell future events; but this kind of knowledge is confined to particular people. Omiah pretended to  
have

have this gift. He told us, that the soul of his father had intimated to him in a dream, on the 26th of July, 1776, that he should go on shore, at some place, within three days; but he was unfortunate in this first attempt to persuade us that he was a prophet; for it was the 1st of August before we got into Teneriffe. Among them, however, the dreamers possess a reputation little inferior to that of their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions they implicitly believe, and are determined by them in all undertakings of consequence. The priestess who persuaded Opoony to invade Ulietea, is much respected by him; and he never goes to war without consulting her. They also, in some degree, maintain our old doctrine of planetary influence; at least, they are sometimes regulated, in their public counsels, by certain appearances of the moon; particularly when lying horizontally, or much inclined on the convex part, on its first appearance after the change, they are encouraged to engage in war, with confidence of success.

“ They have traditions concerning the creation, which, as might be expected, are complex, and clouded with obscurity. They say, that a goddess having a lump or mass of earth suspended in a cord, gave it a swing, and scattered about pieces of land, thus creating Otaheite and the neighbouring islands. They have also notions of a universal creation, and of lands, of which they have now no other knowledge than what is mentioned in their traditions. Their most remote account reaches to Tatooma and Tapuppa, male and female stones or rocks, who support the mass of land and water, or our globe underneath. These produced Totorro, who was killed, and divided into land; and, after him, Otaia and Oroo were begotten, who afterward were married, and produced first land, and then a race of gods. Otaia is killed, and Oroo marries a god, her son, called Teorraha, whom she orders to create

more land, the animals, and all sorts of food, found upon the earth; as also the sky, which is supported by men called Teeferei. The spots observed in the moon, are supposed to be groves of a sort of trees which once grew in Otaheite, and being destroyed by some accident, their seeds were carried up thither by doves, where they now flourish.

“ They have also many legends, both historical and religious, one of which, relative to the practice of eating human flesh, I shall give the substance of, as a specimen of their method. A long time since, there lived in Otaheite two men, called Tahecai; the only name they yet have for cannibals. None knew from whence they came, or in what manner they arrived at the island. Their habitation was in the mountains, from whence they used to issue, and kill many of the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and, by that means, prevented the progress of population. Two brothers being determined to rid their country of such a formidable enemy, used a stratagem for their destruction, with success. These lived farther upward than the Tahecai, and in such a situation, that they could speak with them, without greatly hazarding their own safety. They invited them to accept of an entertainment, that should be provided for them, to which these readily consented. The brothers then taking some stones, heated them, and thrusting them into pieces of mahee, desired one of the Tahecai to open his mouth. On which, one of these pieces was dropped in, and some water poured down, which made a boiling or hissing noise, in quenching the stone, and killed him. They intreated the other to do the same; but he declined it, representing the consequences of his companion's eating. However they assured him, that the food was excellent, and its effects only temporary; for that the other would soon recover. His credulity was such, that he swallowed the bait, and shared the

the

the fate of the first. The natives then cut them in pieces, which they buried; and conferred the government of the island on the brothers, as a reward for delivering them from such monsters. Their residence was in the district called Whapancegoo; and to this day there remains a bread-fruit-tree, once the property of the Tahecais. They had also a woman, who lived with them, and had two teeth of a prodigious size. After they were killed, she lived at the island Otaha, and, when dead, was ranked among their deities. She did not eat human flesh, as the men; but, from the size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has a fierce appearance, or is represented with large tusks, Tahecai. Every one must allow, that this story is just as natural as that of Hercules destroying the Hydra, or the more modern one of Jack, the giant killer: nor do I find, that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most old fables of the same kind, which have been received as truths only during the prevalence of the same ignorance that marked the character of the ages in which they were invented. It, however, has not been improperly introduced, as serving to express the horror and detestation entertained here, against those who feed on human flesh. And, yet, from some circumstances, I have been led to think, that the natives of these isles were formerly cannibals. Upon asking Omiah, he denied it stoutly; yet mentioned a fact, within his own knowledge, which almost confirms such an opinion. When the people of Bolabola, one time, defeated those of Huaheine, a great number of his kinsmen were slain. But one of his relations had, afterward, an opportunity of revenging himself, when the Bolabola men were worried in their turn, and cutting a piece out of the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and eat it. I have, also, frequently considered the offering of the person's eye, who is sacrificed, and offered

to the chief, as a vestige of a custom which once really existed to a greater extent, and is still commemorated by this emblematical ceremony.

“ The being invested with the maro, and the presiding at human sacrifices, seem to be peculiar characteristics of the sovereign. To these, perhaps, may be added the blowing a conch-shell, which produces a very loud sound. On hearing it, all his subjects are obliged to bring food of every sort to his royal residence, in proportion to their abilities. On some occasions, they carry their veneration for his very name, to an extravagant and very destructive pitch. For if, on his accession to the maro, any words in their language be found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are changed for others; and if any man be bold enough not to comply, and continue to use those words, not only he, but all his relations, are immediately put to death. The same severity is exercised toward those who shall presume to apply this sacred name to any animal. And, agreeably to this custom of his countrymen, Omiah used to express his indignation, that the English should give the names of prince or princess to their favourite dogs or horses. But while death is the punishment for making free with the name of their sovereign, if abuse be only levelled at his government, the offender escapes with the forfeiture of land and houses. The king never enters the house of any of his subjects, but has in every district, where he visits, houses belonging to himself. And if, at any time, he should be obliged, by accident, to deviate from this rule, the house thus honoured with his presence, and every part of its furniture, is burnt. His subjects not only uncover to him, when present, down to the waist; but if he be at any particular place, a pole, having a piece of cloth tied to it, is set up somewhere near, to which they pay the same honours. His brothers are also intitled to the first part of the ceremony; but

but the women only uncover to the females of the royal family : in short, they seem even superstitious in their respect to him, and esteem his person little less than sacred. And it is, perhaps, to these circumstances, that he owes the quiet possession of his dominions. For even the people of Tiaraboo allow him the same honours as his right ; though at the same time, they look upon their own chief as more powerful ; and say, that he would succeed to the government of the whole island, should the present reigning family become extinct. This is the more likely, as Waheia doo not only possesses Tiaraboo, but many districts of Opooreano. His territories, therefore, are almost equal, in extent, to those of Otoo ; and he has, besides, the advantage of a more populous and fertile part of the island. His subjects, also, have given proofs of their superiority ; by frequent victories over those of Otaheite-nooe, whom they affect to speak of as contemptible warriors, easily to be worsted, if, at any time, their chief should wish to put it to the test.

“ The ranks of people, besides the *eree de hoi*, and his family, are the *erees*, or powerful chiefs ; the *manahoone*, or vassals ; and the *teou* or *toutou*, servants, or rather slaves. The men of each of these, according to the regular institution, form their connections with women of their respective ranks ; but if with any inferior one, which frequently happens, and a child be born, it is preserved, and has the rank of the father, unless he happens to be an *eree*, in which case it is killed. If a woman of condition should chuse an inferior person to officiate as an husband, the children he has by her are killed : and should a *toutou* be caught in an intrigue with a woman of the blood-royal, he is put to death. The son of the *eree de hoi* succeeds his father in title and honours, as soon as he is born ; but if he should have no children, the brother assumes the government at his death. In other families, pos-  
sessions

cessions always descend to the eldest son ; but he is obliged to maintain his brothers and sisters, who are allowed houses on his estates.

“ The boundaries of the several districts, into which Otaheite is divided, are generally, either rivulets, or low hills, which in many places, jut out into the sea. But the subdivisions into particular property, are marked by large stones, which have remained from one generation to another. The removal of any of these gives rise to quarrels, which are decided by arms ; each party bringing his friends into the field. But if any one complain to the *ereede hoi*, he terminates the difference amicably. This is an offence, however, not common ; and long custom seems to secure property here as effectually as the most severe laws do in other countries. In conformity also to ancient practice established among them, crimes of a less general nature are left to be punished by the sufferer, without referring them to a superior. In this case, they seem to think, that the injured person will judge as equitably as those who are totally unconcerned ; and as long custom has allotted certain punishments of different sorts, he is allowed to inflict them, without being amenable to any other person. Thus, if any one be caught stealing, which is commonly done in the night, the proprietor of the goods may put the thief instantly to death ; and if any one should enquire of him after the deceased, it is sufficient to acquit him, if he only informs them of the provocation he had to kill him. But so severe a punishment is seldom inflicted, unless the articles that are stolen be reckoned very valuable, such as breast plates, and plaited hair. If only cloth, or even hogs be stolen, and the thief escape, upon his being afterward discovered, if he promise to return the same number of pieces of cloth, or of hogs, no farther punishment is inflicted. Sometimes, after keeping out of the way for a few days, he is forgiven, or at most,

gets a slight beating. If a person kill another in a quarrel, the friends of the deceased assemble, and engage the survivor and his adherents. If they conquer, they take possession of the house, lands, and goods, of the other party; but if conquered, the reverse takes place. If a manahoone kills the toutou, or slave of a chief, the latter sends people to take possession of the lands and houses of the former, who flies either to some other part of the island, or to some of the neighbouring islands. After some months he returns, and finding his stock of hogs much increased, he offers a large present of these, with red feathers, and other articles, to the toutou's master, who generally accepts the compensation, and permits him to repossess his house and lands. This practice is the height of venality and injustice; and the slayer of the slave seems to be under no farther necessity of absconding, than to impose upon the lower class of people, who are the sufferers. For it does not appear, that the chief has the least power to punish this manahoone; but the whole management marks a collusion between him and his superior, to gratify the revenge of the former, and the avarice of the latter. Indeed, we need not wonder, that the killing of a man should be considered as so venial an offence among a people, who do not consider it as any crime to murder their own children. When talking to them about such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking, whether the chiefs or principal were not angry, and did not punish them? I was told, that the chief neither could nor would interfere in such cases; and that every one had a right to do with his own child what he pleased.

“ Though the productions, the people, the customs and manners of all the islands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be reckoned the same as at Otaheite, there are a few differences which should be mentioned, as this may laid to an enquiry about

about more material ones hereafter, if such there be, of which we are now ignorant. With regard to the little island of Mataia, or Osnaburgh Island, which lies twenty leagues east of Otaheite, and belongs to a chief of that place, who gets from thence a kind of tribute: there a different dialect from that of Otaheite is spoken. The men of Mataia also wear their hair very long; and when they fight, cover their arms with a substance which is beset with sharks teeth, and their bodies with a sort of shagreen, being skin of fishes. At the same time, they are ornamented with polished pearl shells, which make a prodigious glittering in the sun; and they have a very large one that covers them before, like a shield or breast-plate. But Otaheite is remarkable for producing great quantities of that delicious fruit we called apples, which are found in none of the other islands, except Eimeo. It has also the advantage of producing an odoriferous wood, called Eahoi, which is highly valued at the other isles, where there is none; nor in the south-east peninsula, or Tiaraboo, though joining it. Huaheine and Eimeo again, are remarkable for producing greater quantities of yams than the other islands. And at Mourooa there is a particular bird, found upon the hills, much esteemed for its white feathers; at which place there is also said to be some of the apples, though it be the most remote of the Society Islands from Otaheite and Eimeo, where they are produced.

“ Though the religion of all the islands be the same, each of them has its particular or tutelar god, whose names, according to the best information I could obtain, are enumerated in the following list.

152° 00'

West Longitude from the Meridian of Greenwich

15

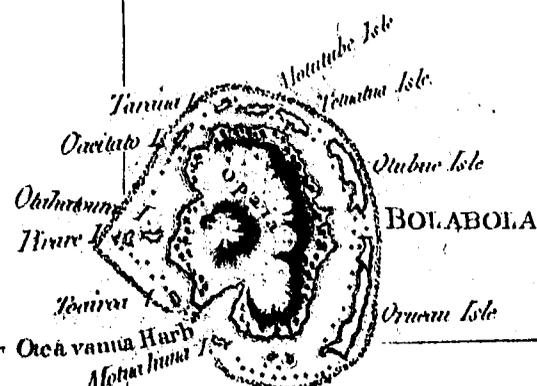
151° 00'



TUBAI



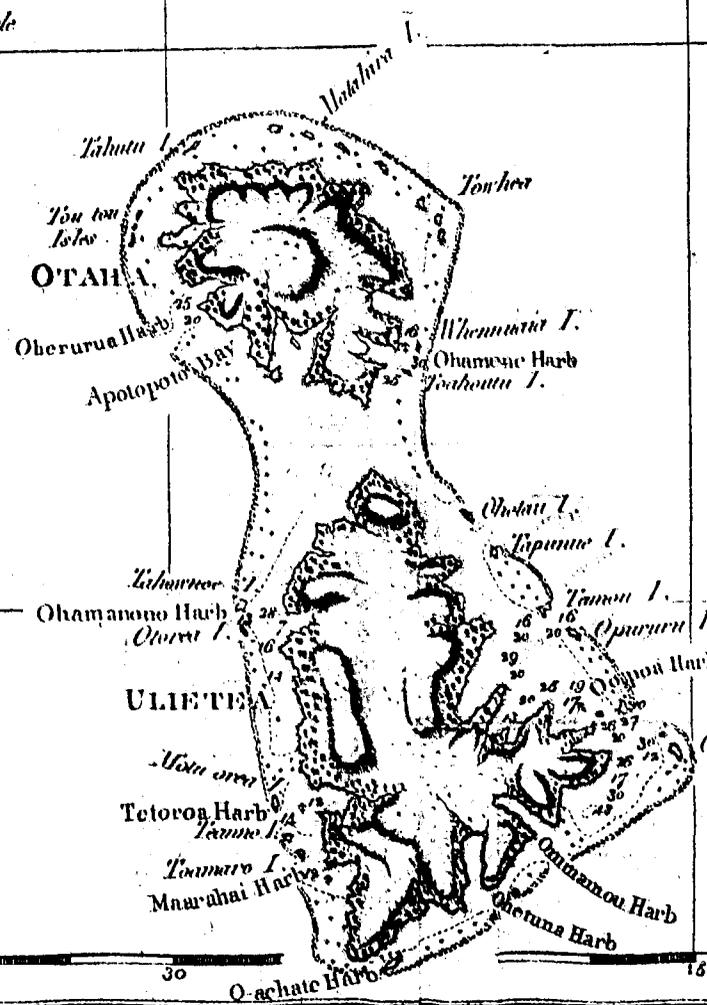
MAURUA



BOLABOLA

Scale of Miles 5

Division of the Toward S. & Z.



OTAHITI

ULIETEA



HUAHEINE

152° 00'

15

15

15

151° 00'

London, Published by W. Woodcut at the Kings Arms, N. 66. Paternoster Row.

TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN, &c. 1657

Gods	of the	ISLES.
Tanne	.	- Huaheine
Ooro	.	- Ulietea
Tanne	-	- Otaha
Olla	-	- Bolabola
Otoo, ee weiahoo	-	- Mourooa
Tamouee	-	- Toobae
Taroa	-	{ Tabooymanoo, or Saunder's Island, subject to Huaheine.
Oroo hadoo	.	- Eimeo
Ooroo	-	{ Otaheite and Otaheite nooe
Opoonooa and Whatooteree	}	Tiaraboo
Tooboo, toobooai and Ry maraiva	}	{ Mataia or Osnaburgh Island
Tammaree	-	- The low islands eastward.

“ Besides the cluster of high islands from Mataia to Mourooa inclusive, the people of Otaheite are acquainted with a low uninhabited island, which they name Mopecha, and seems to be Howe's Island, laid down to the westward of Mourooa in our late charts of this ocean. To this the inhabitants of the most leeward islands sometimes go. There are also several low islands to the north-eastward of Otaheite, which they have sometimes visited, but not constantly; and are said to be only at the distance of two days sail with a fair wind. They are thus named Mataeva, Oanaa or Oannah, Taboohoe, Awehec, Kaora, Orootooa, and Otavaoo, where are large pearls.

“ The inhabitants of these islands come frequently to Otaheite and the other neighbouring high islands, from whose natives they differ in being of a darker colour, with a fiercer aspect, and differently punctured. I was informed, that at Mataeva, and others of them, it is the custom for the men to give

their daughters to strangers who arrive among them; but the pairs must be five nights lying near each other, without presuming to proceed farther. On the sixth evening, the father of the young woman treats his guest with food, and informs his daughter, that she must that night receive him as her husband. The stranger, however, must not offer to express the least dislike, though the bed-fellow allotted him be ever so disagreeable; for this is considered as an unpardonable affront, and is punished with death. Forty men of Bolabola, who, incited by curiosity, had roamed as far as Mataeva in a canoe, were treated in this manner; one of them having incautiously mentioned his dislike of the woman who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy who informed her father. In consequence of this, the Mataevans fell upon them; but these warlike people killed three times their own number, though with the loss of all their party, except five. Those hid themselves in the woods, and took an opportunity, when the others were burying their dead, to enter some houses, where, having provided themselves with victuals and water, they carried them on board a canoe, in which they made their escape; and, after passing Mataia, at which they would not touch, at last arrived safe at Eimeo. The Bolabolans, however, were sensible enough that their travellers had been to blame; for a canoe from Mataeva arriving some time after at Bolabola, so far were they from retaliating upon them for the death of their countrymen, that they acknowledged they had deserved their fate, and treated their visitors with much hospitality. These low isles are, doubtless, the farthest navigation, which those of Otaheite, and the Society Islands, perform at present. It seems to be a groundless supposition, made by Mons. de Bougainville, by whom we are told, that these people sometimes navigate at the distance of more than three hundred leagues. I do not believe

lieve they make voyages of this prodigious extent; for it is reckoned a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, once driven by a storm from Otaheite, should have fallen in with Mopeeha, or Howe's Island, though so near, and directly to leeward. The knowledge that they have of other distant islands is, no doubt, traditional; and has been communicated to them by the natives of those islands, driven accidentally upon their coasts, who, besides giving them the names, could easily inform them of the direction in which the places lie from whence they came, and of the number of days they had been upon the sea. In this manner, it may be supposed, that the natives of Wateeo have increased their catalogue by the addition of Otaheite, and its neighbouring isles, from the people we met with there, and also of the other islands these had heard of. We may thus account for that extensive knowledge attributed, by the gentlemen of the Endeavour, to Tupia, in such matters. And, with all due deference to his veracity, I presume that it was, by the same means of information, that he was able to direct the ship to Oheteroa; without having ever been there himself, as he pretended; which, on many accounts, is very improbable." Here ends Mr. Anderson's strictures on Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands.

One year and five months had now elapsed, since our departure from England; during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed. Captain Cook was sensible, that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, our voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our safety and final success, was now to be exerted, as it were, anew. We had, with this view, examined into the state of our provisions at the islands we had last visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of former discoveries, an

accurate survey was ordered to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, we might know how to use them to the greatest advantage. We had also, before we had quitted the Society Isles, taken every opportunity of enquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situate in the northerly or north-westerly direction from them, but it did not appear that they knew of any.

We should now proceed with the progress of the voyage, after our leaving the Society Islands; but shall defer it for the commencement of the next chapter; in order to lay before our readers an historical and geographical account of the north-west parts of North America, beginning from the isthmus of Darien: also an account of the most remarkable islands situated in the high latitudes, which, with the descriptions already given, in the course of this work, of several islands in the Indian seas, will form a complete, full, and perfect history of all the places, old and new discoveries, mentioned and touched at, by all our most celebrated circumnavigators: for which account, we acknowledge ourselves chiefly indebted to that *much admired and approved work*, MILLAR'S NEW and UNIVERSAL SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY, *now publishing in eighty weekly numbers, price only Sixpence each, embellished with Copper-plates; and may be had of the Publisher, Mr. HOGG, in Paternoster-row, or of any Bookseller, Newscarrrier, or Stationer, in Great-Britain, Ireland, &c.*

Americus Vespucio, a Florentine by birth, being in 1497, sent to improve the discoveries made in 1491 by Columbus, gave to the fourth quarter of the world the name of America. This vast continent, (at least what has hitherto been discovered) reaches from latitude 78 deg. N. to 56 deg. S. That is 134 degrees, which, taken in a strait line, amount  
to

to upwards of 8040 miles in length. Its breadth is very irregular, being in some places 3690 miles, and in others, as at the distance of Darien or Panama, not above 60 or 70. The boundaries ascribed to it, are the land about the pole on the north; Atlantic Ocean, which separates it from Europe and Asia on the east; another vast ocean on the south, and the Pacific Ocean, usually called the South Sea, which divides it from Asia on the west. How or when America was first peopled, cannot be ascertained; but it is most likely to have been from the north of Asia; for the natives of both these parts still bear a great resemblance to one another in many respects. North America, which constitutes a grand division of this vast continent, and of which we propose now to treat, is separated from the southern part by the isthmus of Darien, and extends from that isthmus to within a few degrees of the north pole. In the period of more than two centuries and a half, geographers were not able to ascertain the limits of the northern extremity; this was a task to be performed by Captain Cook in his third and last voyage.

Old Mexico, or New Spain, a rich and extensive country, was once a mighty empire, ruled by its own monarchs, till the Spaniards, by whom it was at first discovered, in 1598, afterwards conquered it, under the command of Fernando Cortez. It lies between seven degrees thirty minutes, and thirty degrees forty minutes north latitude, is 2000 miles long, 600 broad where widest, has the isthmus of Darien on the south, New Mexico on the north, the gulph of Mexico on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west. It is divided into the audiences of Guadalajara, Mexico, and Guatimala, and is governed by a viceroy. Mexico, considering its situation in the torrid zone, enjoys a temperate air. No country under heaven abounds more with grain, delicious fruits, roots, and vegetables. On the western

western coast, near the Pacific Ocean, are some high mountains, most of which are said to be volcanoes. Several rivers rise in these mountains, and fall, some into the gulph of Mexico, and some into the South Sea, on both which there are several capes and bays. In the rocky, barren parts of the country are the gold and silver mines. There are, it is said, several of the former, and no fewer than one thousand of the latter. Gold is also found in grains or dust, in the sands of rivers or torrents. Whoever discovers a mine of gold or silver, is at liberty to work it, paying the king a tenth of the produce, and limiting himself within fifty yards round the place upon which he has fixed. All the silver and gold dug or found in grains, is entered in the royal exchequer; and it is reported, that notwithstanding great quantities are run and concealed, no less than two millions of silver marks, weighing eight ounces each, are entered yearly, out of which they coin seven hundred thousand marks into pieces of eight, quarter pieces, rials, and half-pieces, the latter being about three-pence sterling value. The trade of Spanish America has been carried on for some years past by vessels, called register ships; and the chief commodities of this country are gold, silver, exquisite marble, porphyry, jasper, precious stones, pearls, amber, ginger, tobacco, hides, tallow, salt; dying woods, drugs, balsams, honey, feathers, chocolate, cochineal, silk, sugar, cotton, wool, &c. The inhabitants are, at present, a mixed people, consisting of Indians, Spaniards, and other Europeans; the creoles, mestichoes, or issue of the Spaniards by Americans, the mestiches, or the issue of such issue; the terceroons dez Indies, or the children of the last, married to Spaniards; and the quarteroons dez Indies, whose descendants are allowed the same privileges as true Spaniards. The negroes are likewise pretty numerous, being imported from the coast of Africa for various purposes, and many of them

them admitted to their freedom. The issue of an European and a negro constitutes another distinction, called mulatto; besides all which there is a mixed breed of negroes and Indians, which is generally deemed the lowest rank.

The principal places are (1) Mexico, which stands in the middle of a great lake of its own name, about one hundred and seventy miles west of the gulph of Mexico. The number of inhabitants is computed at three hundred thousand; most of them live beyond their fortunes, and terminate a life of profusion in the most wretched indigence. A prodigious quantity of jewels, gold and silver plate, and toys, together with the most valuable commodities of Europe and Asia, are exposed to sale in the streets.

California, a peninsula, is the most northern of all the Spanish dominions on the continent of America. It extends from the north coasts into the Pacific Ocean, 800 miles from Cape Sebastian, in 43 deg. 30 min. north latitude, towards the south-east as far as Cape St. Lucar, in 22 deg. 32 min. north latitude. The eastern coast lies nearly parallel with that of Mexico opposite to it, and the sea between is called the lake or gulph of California. Its breadth is very unequal; towards the north it is near 200 miles, but at the south extremity it tapers away, and is scarcely 50 miles over. The more southern part was known to the Spaniards soon after the discovery of Mexico; for Cortez discovered it in 1535, but they did not till lately penetrate far into it, contenting themselves with the pearl fishery there. Several kinds of fruit are produced here; there are two species of deer peculiar to this country; also a particular breed of sheep, buffaloes, beavers, or animals much resembling them, a peculiar species of wild hogs, lions, wild cats, and many other wild beasts. The horses, mules, oxen, and other quadrupeds, that have been imported hither from Spain and Mexico, multiply exceedingly. Of the two  
species

species of deer peculiar to California, that called *taye* by the natives is greatly esteemed, and its flesh as well tasted as venison. The coast is plentifully stocked with birds, and there is a great variety of fish in the gulph of California, the Pacific Ocean, and the rivers. Though insects swarm here, as in most hot countries, yet on account of the dryness of the soil and climate, they are neither noxious nor troublesome. There is one of the richest pearl fisheries in the world, on the coast, and there are supposed to be mines in the country. Here are two considerable rivers, namely, Rio Colorado, and Rio du Carmel, with several smaller streams, and five ports, creeks, and roads both on the east and west side, which is the reason of its having been so much frequented by English privateers. There are, in the heart of the country, plains of salt quite firm, and clear as crystal. A great variety of savage tribes inhabit California. Those who live on the east side of the peninsula are great enemies to the Spaniards; but in other parts, they seem to be very hospitable to all strangers. The inland country, especially towards the north, is populous. The Indians resemble those described in other parts of America.

Siberia, a part of Russian Tartary, is bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by China, and the Pacific Ocean, on the east; by Tibet, Usbeck Tartary, the Caspian Sea, and Astracan Tartary, on the south; and by European Russia, on the west; and is situate between sixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of eastern longitude, and between forty and seventy-two degrees of north latitude, being upwards of two thousand miles in length, and one thousand five hundred in breadth.

The Tobel and Irtis are the chief cities of Siberia, which running from north to south, join the Oby, the united stream falling into the Frozen Ocean, and dividing Asia from Europe: the Lena and  
Jeniffa,

Jeniffa, which run from north to south, fall also into the Frozen Ocean: the Yamour and Argun, which divide the Russian from the Chinese dominions, whose united streams fall into the bay of Corea. There are also a great many large lakes in this vast tract of land, of which the largest are those of Baikal and Kifan.

The only part of Siberia, fit for human beings to live in, is the southern, where the soil appears to be capable of cultivation, and that it might be rendered fertile; but, for want of inhabitants, very little corn is produced. But the northern part exhibits nothing but impenetrable woods, snow-topped mountains, fens, lakes, marshes, &c. and, being exposed to the bleak winds, is quite barren and desolate. Not a bird appears to give notice of any change of season; even rooks and magpies quit these deserts, where nature becomes quite torpid. The natives are obliged to make passages through heaps of snow, and the delights of summer are not experienced here but about three months, during which short space of time the inhabitants sow rye, oats, pease, and barley; but these seldom repay the husbandman's toil. The natives are generally shut up in their cottages for nine months in the year, scarcely ever venturing out: fir-trees of considerable height bend under the weight of snow; a melancholy gloom spreads all around, and the stillness is interrupted only by the cries of some wretched travellers in sledges. To these dreary regions the czars of Muscovy banish their courtiers and other great persons, who incur their displeasure. Some are banished for a limited term of years, and others for life, with the allowance only of one penny per day, and sometimes without any allowance at all; so that, as they are sent destitute from court, these miserable exiles pass a most dreadful life. They shoot for their livelihood, and are obliged to send an annual tribute of

fers to the czars, or they are most severely punished by the task-masters.

Kamtschatka. This peninsula is bounded on the east by the ocean, which separates it from America; its western boundary is Penschinfa. The southern part is in 51 deg. north latitude, and in 143 deg. east longitude from London. This peninsula is divided into two parts by a chain of hills running from north to south. Its chief rivers are the Awatscha, Kamtschatka, the Teghil, and what is called the Great River. There are many extensive lakes in it.

Their spring and summer do not continue more than four months; but the latter is far from being agreeable; for as the adjacent hills are covered with snow, the air, even in the middle of summer, is sometimes pretty cold, attended with frequent rains; the winter however is not very inclement.

In many places mines of iron and copper have been discovered: the iron ore hath been found to be compact, of a yellow colour, inclining to red; and, in some parts, black metallic particles have been observed, more compact than the rest of the ore. This ore, when crude, could not be attracted by the load-stone, but, when calcined, became so in a small degree. A solid iron ore has also been discovered here, similar to that found to the southwest of Echaterinenburg: its surface was found to be covered with a yellow oker, of a reddish brown in the breakings of its solid parts. The ore, when crude, was not acted upon by the load-stone, though, after calcination, slightly attracted by it. The copper mines are like some of those produced on the Ryphean mountains, having the malachites, in the form of stalactites and stataguites, in their cavities, very beautiful, and capable of being polished.

There is great choice of timber for a variety of uses in Kamtschatka, as well as abundance of shrubs, of divers kinds: they have also several excellent medicinal

medicinal plants. Barley, oats, peas, turnips, &c. grow likewise here. The grass springs up so fast, that they have three harvests; and the blades are frequently five feet in height.

This country abounds with tame and wild fowls. The wild animals are, black and white bears, wolves, lynxes, boars, elks, and a kind of stag very much like the fallow-deer. The bear never attacks a man, unless they find him asleep, when they tear the scalp off the back part of the head, and sometimes intirely destroy him. Foxes are also very numerous, some are white, some redish-yellow; some grey, with a black streak on the back, and are much valued; the white ones, however, are also valued, as being scarcer. There are also black-chestnuts and blue breasted foxes; and they are in general too crafty for their pursuers, their sagacity exceeding that of the other species. The opulence of the country consists in its fables and ermines; the fables which are sold at a high price, excel those found in any other part of the globe: the natives eat the flesh, and esteem it a very fine food.

Here is also found the gulo, or glutton; likewise other kinds of beaver, as the atis, rein-deer, and fayga. The natives collect themselves in companies to hunt these animals; they go at the close of the winter from the month of March to the end of April, taking provisions with them. The glutton, which hath a very fine fur, is a terrible enemy to the deer: it will dart itself from a tree upon a deer's back, and, fixing between the creature's horns, tears out his eyes: the afflicted animal, with excels of agony, falls to the ground, when the glutton strips his flesh from his bones.

Dogs are very numerous in this country: these resemble the European, and live much upon mice and fish, they scratch up the ground for the former, and seize the others from their streams. These dogs are extremely serviceable to the natives, in drawing

their sledges over the snow: in the most dreadful weather, they scarce ever lose their way.

Several sorts of amphibious animals are also in Kamtschatka. One is the sea-cow, about thirty feet in length, and weighing six or seven thousand pounds, the skin of which is so hard, that scarce an hatchet or axe will penetrate it. The flesh of a young sea-cow, when properly boiled, has a good taste; the lean part is somewhat like veal, and the fat part like pork. The method of catching this animal is, by an iron hook struck into it by some men in a small vessel, then by a rope held by people on shore, the sea-cow is drawn gradually to the land, while those in the vessel cut the creature with instruments in several parts of the body, till it expires. It is not very difficult to take the sea-cow from its elements, for it seldom raises its head above the surface of the water, though its sides and back are often seen.

Sea-horses and sea-cats are also met with here; the latter have long hairs standing out on each side of their mouths like those of a cat, and they weigh from five to eight thousand pounds: their eyes are as large as a bull's, and they will fly at people in boats; even if they are blinded by stones thrown at them, they will not retire, but gnaw the very stones that are thrown; however, when once deprived of sight, there is no great danger to be apprehended from them. The male and female differ both in form and disposition; so much in form, that they might be taken for different animals; and as to disposition, the female is mild, inoffensive, and timid: as a proof of this, when an attempt is made to seize a young sea-cat, and the male, by vigorously defending it, affords the female an opportunity of taking it off in its mouth; if, in this case, the female should happen to drop it, the male abandons its adversary, and, flying directly at the female, seizes her with all imaginable fury; when the latter,  
by

by licking his paws, and shewing every kind of submission, endeavours to mitigate his rage. The seas also abound with seals, which are caught by different methods: sometimes they are taken in the water, and at other times they are killed while sleeping on the rocks. Here are whales from seven to fifteen fathoms long.

Amongst a variety of fish, here is the sterlet, which is so much like the sturgeon, that there is scarce any difference, except that it is smaller and more delicate; it is so fat that it may be fried without oil.

Some of the birds of Kamtschatka are, eagles, hawks, pelicans, swans, geese, wigeons, ducks, cuckoos, magpies, snipes, partridges, &c. A bird called the red-neck diver is very curious; it has a beautiful spot on the lower part of its neck; beneath this spot, there are feathers of a brown colour in the middle, edged all round with white; the breast, belly, and legs, are of a very beautiful white.

Sea-fowl are very numerous on the coast of the eastern ocean, as peacocks, sea-pies, green shanks, puffins, &c. Here too are the cormorant, sea-raven, and urile.

Clouds of dragon-flies, locusts and gnats, are sometimes seen in this country. The latter are so troublesome, that the inhabitants are obliged to veil their faces, to avoid them. The dragon-flies, forming columns, fly with incredible swiftness.

The natives of Kamtschatka inhabit the southern part of the peninsula; the northern part is inhabited by the Koreki, and the southern by the Kuriles; but the Russians call the whole country Kamtschatka, though it has several names given it from particular circumstances. The Kamtschadales are short in stature, and resemble most of the other inhabitants of Siberia, except that their faces are somewhat shorter, their mouths larger, and their cheeks fuller; they have dark hair, hollow eyes, sharp noses, and tawny complexions; the latter is  
said

said to be principally owing to the influence of the sun reflected from the snow in the spring-season, when the snow lies thick on the ground. Some of the natives, who are obliged to be in the woods, cover their faces with a kind of netting, to prevent the effects of the sun-beams darting on the snow; for the eye-sight suffers by this refraction, as well as the complexion. These people dress in deer-skins, with the fur outwards; they use also, for this purpose, the skins of dogs and other animals. They often wear two coats, the sleeves of the outer coat reaching down to the knees; they have a hood to it, which in bad weather serves to cover the head; and they adorn the back part with shreds of skins, and sometimes of silks of different colours. The women wear the same sort of garments as the men, though their coat, or rather waistcoat, sits closer to their bodies, and is decorated with slips of red, blue, and yellow cloth, and sometimes ribband, or wool-len list. To this waistcoat is joined a sort of petticoat coming about half way down the leg. The men wear a leather belt round them, and their legs are covered with different coloured skins; they wear seal-skin caps or hats, and sometimes a cap or hat of birch bark; some have caps of brass plaited. The women let their hair grow much longer than the men; they plait it, and hang brass trinkets to it: they have fur caps, that are black without, and white within. The men plait their hair, as well as the women. They never wash themselves, but live in a most beastly manner: they neither cut their nails, nor comb their hair. They eat raw flesh, carrion, stale-fish, or any thing they can get, how filthy soever it be. They live in huts under-ground, covered with grass or earth, and sometimes with the skins of the animals they have killed in the field, undressed, and yielding a noisome stench. They place benches in their hovels, with a fire-place in one corner, and on these benches they repose themselves.

elves. Some of the huts are covered and lined with mats. These are their winter dwellings; nor are their summer retreats much more elegant, except that they are built on the surface of the earth, and with rather more regularity. These, it is true, are built high on pillows, with beams thrown across them, on which a floor is fixed, with a roof rising from each side to a central point; and, indeed it is necessary that their summer habitations should be thus high, else the inhabitants would be in continual danger from the wild beasts. They eat out of bowls, or troughs, with their dogs, and never wash them afterwards.

We shall now take notice of their marriages. When a man hath met with a young woman that he likes, he engages into the service of her parents, and, after the expiration of a limited time of servitude, obtains either permission to marry her, or is dismissed with a requital for his service. If he has leave to marry, the nuptials commences immediately, and the whole ceremony consists in stripping the bride naked, whose cloaths, however, are so fast bound by straps and girdles, that he finds it no easy task to accomplish his purpose; at this crisis several women shelter and protect her from him; who, however, seeking an opportunity to find her less guarded, makes fresh efforts to undress her: but if she cries out, and her exclamations bring assistance, the women who come fall upon the man, scratching his face, tearing his hair, and otherwise roughly treating him; till the bride, shewing some concern for his situation, and the women becoming less violent in their assault, the man at length succeeds, and then retires from her, who however calls him back, and acknowledges in a soft plaintive tone, that he has conquered her. Thus the ceremony ends, and the next day the happy couple repair to the hut of the husband. In about a week afterwards they make a visit to the wife's parents, where

where they celebrate the marriage feast with the relations of both parties. Some of the men marry three wives, who in general live friendly together, and are never jealous. It is deemed a very capital offence in a woman to procure abortion, yet if twins are born, one of them must be destroyed. The women put their infants in a basket fastened to an elastic pole, which is easily moved with the foot, to rock them. As soon as they can stand on their legs, their mothers leave them to themselves, suffering them to roll on the ground any where; they are most commonly half naked, and begin to walk at a time when a child in Europe would not be able to stand.

These people never bury their dead, but often give them to the dogs; and say, that as the deceased are thus devoured by dogs, they will ensure to themselves a pleasant carriage in sledges drawn by fine dogs in the other world. This abominable custom, however, is not universally practised; some leaving their dead in their hut, and seek a new habitation. The apparel of the deceased person is always thrown away, from a superstitious notion, that whoever should wear it would meet with some dreadful calamity.

They travel on sledges drawn by dogs; their number is generally four, which are driven by a whip. The person in the sledge is seated on the right side of it, with his feet hanging over, and is obliged to balance himself with great care, lest the sledge should overset. Where the roads are in tolerable condition, they can travel to a great distance in a short time, carrying with them provisions, &c. They sometimes travel, in this manner, about thirty wersts, that is, upwards of twenty-three miles in a day. They hunt the bear, among other animals; on which occasion they use rackets to walk upon the snow with, arming themselves with pikes, and taking dogs with them to provoke the animal. They then

then wait till he comes out of his enclosure, for they would attack him to great disadvantage while he remained there; because the snow being very firm in that place, the bear would be able to avail himself of all his strength; but the instant he comes out, he sinks into the snow, and while he is striving to disengage himself, the hunters with their pikes easily destroy him. They dress their seal-skins in the following manner: they first wet and spread out the skin, and with stones fixed in wood scrape off all the fat; then they rub it with caviar, roll it together, and tread on it; they afterwards scrape it again, and repeat the first part of their process till the skin is thoroughly cleaned and soft. They prepare in the same manner skins of beaver, deer, dogs, &c. When the men are not employed in hunting, or fishing, they weave nets, and construct sledges and boats; and in the spring and summer they procure the necessaries of life, and lay up a store for the succeeding winter. The women make shoes, sew cloaths, dye skins, &c. they also make glue of the dried skins of fishes, and particularly of the whale. They use a board of dry wood to light their fires; in this board are several round holes, into one of which putting the end of a small round stick, they roll it backwards and forwards till the wood takes fire by the friction.

The people of this country are arrant cowards, and yet seem to despise life, through an innate kind of stupidity. They never attack their enemies openly, unless compelled to it; but steal privately to their huts, and treat them most barbarously, cutting them to pieces, and even tearing out their entrails; these cruelties are exercised with triumph and shouts of joy. Whenever they hear of a foe advancing towards them, they retire to some mountain, and fortify it as strongly as possible: if there be a probability of the enemy getting the better of them, they immediately cut the throats of their

wives and children, and then meet their assailants with a frantic rage, selling their lives as dear as possible. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and spears.

The religious notions of the Kamtschadales are pretty singular. They erect a sort of pillar on some plain, and cover it with a parcel of rags. Whenever they pass by this pillar, they throw at it some fish or flesh, and avoid killing any bird or beast near it. They think that woods and burning mountains are inhabited by evil spirits, whom they live in great fear of, and make them offerings; some of them have idols in their huts. They have a very imperfect idea of a supreme Being, and think he can neither dispense happiness nor misery: the name which they have for the Deity, is Kutchu. They reverence some particular animals, from which they apprehend danger, and sometimes offer fires at the holes of foxes; they implore wolves not to hurt them, and beseech amphibious animals not to overset their boats. Many of them, however, adopt the Russian manners, and condemn the customs of their country; they have been instructed by Russian missionaries in the Christian religion; and schools have been erected for their children. They strictly observe the law of retaliation: if one man kills another, the relations of the person killed destroy the murderer. They punish theft, by burning the fingers of the thief. Before the Russians conquered them, they had such frequent intestine broils, that a year rarely passed without some village being entirely ruined.

Great havoc is made in this country by the small-pox. The scurvy, with the irregularities of parents, bring a variety of diseases upon their offspring, to cure which, they apply roots, herbs, &c. The manner in which these people live in their huts, and their excess of debauchery, contribute to make the venereal disease very frequent among them. They have

have a disorder called the *fushutoh*, which is a sort of scab, to which they apply the raw skin of a hare to cause a suppuration. They are likewise subject to the palsy, jaundice, boils, cancers, and other disorders.

There are three volcanoes in Kamtschatka, the first is that of Awatcha, to the northward of the bay of that name; it is a chain of mountains, the base of which is covered with trees, and extends to the bay. The middle forms a kind of amphitheatre, and the various summits which are spiral cannot be viewed without exciting the most awful ideas. They always emit smoke, but rarely fire. There was indeed a terrible eruption of smoke and cinders in the summer of the year 1737, but it only continued one day; many of the cinders weighed almost two pounds avoirdupoise. This eruption was the forerunner of a terrible earthquake, which happened on the sixth of the ensuing October, and in a quarter of an hour overturned all the tents and huts of the Kamtschadales, being accompanied by a singular ebbing and flowing of the sea, which at first rose to the height of twenty feet, then sunk, and retired to an unusual distance; it soon after rose higher than at first, and suddenly sinking again, retired so astonishingly far from the common low-water mark, that it was for a considerable time lost to the eye. At length the earthquake was repeated, the sea returned once more, and rose to the height of two hundred feet, overwhelmed the whole coast, and then finally retired, after having destroyed the goods, cattle, and many of the lives of the inhabitants, and left several lakes of salt-water in the lower grounds and adjacent fields. The second volcano issues from some mountains situated between the river of Kamtschatka and that of Tobolski. Nothing was ever known to exhale from this but smoke, till the year 1739, when it vomited a torrent of flames, which destroyed all the neighbouring forests.

The third volcano issues from the highest mountains in Kamtschatka, on the banks of the river of that name. It is environed by a cluster of lesser mountains, and the head is rent into long crevices on every side. Its greatest eruption began September 25, 1737, and continued a week, which, with an earthquake that followed, did very considerable damage. In the southern extremity of Kamtschatka there are hot springs: they form rivulets, and run almost the length of the river Ozernaya which issues from the lake Kurilsky, and then join that stream; the waters, however, have no very considerable degree of heat in them.

There is a mountain near the river Pandia, from whose summit a prodigious cataract of boiling waters run to a considerable distance; and continue boiling up to the height of a foot, till they lose themselves in several lakes, which contain a great number of islands. From this mountain the inhabitants obtain some beautiful stones, on which they set a great value, on account of their admirable variegated colours, which are merely the effects of the different powers of heat, humidity, and friction; for these stones are washed from the mountains, and are polished by the abovementioned hot and impetuous waters.

During the winter, a great quantity of fish harbour in the river of Kamtschatka. In the spring when the ice breaks, they attempt to get to the sea; but the natives watch the heads of the rivers, and take a great number of them in a kind of nets; some they dry in the summer, and lay by for their winter food; and from others they extract the fat, or oil, by means of red hot stones, which they carefully reserve for a great variety of uses.

New Albion. This vast tract of land, and all the N. W. parts of America, are put down by all our geographers, in their maps and charts, as Terra Incognita, or parts entirely unknown. Sir Francis Drake,

Drake, indeed, discovered a port in nearly 40 deg. N. latitude, which he entered, and where he remained five weeks. In 1603 Martin Aguilar entered a strait in latitude 45 deg. N. and another was discovered by Juan de Fuca in 1592. All the other parts of the coast, except Cape Elias in latitude 60 deg. and some land discovered by the Spaniards, have remained objects of investigation, to be explored and accurately marked by our gallant commander, Captain Cook, whose discoveries in these parts, as high as Cape Prince of Wales, near the Arctic Circle; together with an account of his death at an island, called O-why-hee, near Kamtschatka, will be the subjects of some of the following chapters, in the continuation of this history of his third and last voyage, to which we shall now proceed.

---

C H A P. X.

*The Resolution and Discovery, after their Departure from the Society Isles, prosecute their Voyage—Christmas Island discovered, where they are supplied plentifully with fish and turtle—A Solar Eclipse observed—Two Mariners lose their Way on Shore—A singular Method of refreshing himself practiced by one of the Stragglers—An Inscription left in a Bottle—A Description of Christmas Island—Three Islands described—Others discovered—Their Names—The whole Group denominated Sandwich Islands—A complete Account of their Soil, Productions, Inhabitants, &c.—Customs of the Natives agree with those of Tongataboo and Otahete—Extent of this Nation throughout the Pacific Ocean—And Remarks on the useful Situation of Sandwich Island—The Resolution and Discovery proceed to the northward—Nautical Observations made at Sandwich Islands—Progress of the Voyage—Arrival of the two Ships on the Coast of America—Description of*

*of the Country—Difficulties of Cape Foulweather—Stormy, and unfavourable Winds—Strictures on Martin d'Aguiar's River, and Fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended Strait—The Resolution and Discovery anchor in an Inlet in Hope Bay, where they are visited by Numbers of the Natives—An Account of their Behaviour—The two Ships enter the Sound, and moor in a commodious Harbour—Various Incidents and Transactions, during our Intercourse with the Natives—Their Behaviour at their Villages, while we made a Progress round the Sound—A remarkable Visit from Strangers—A second Visit to one of the Villages—Grass purchased—Departure of the Ships after an Exchange of Presents—Directions for sailing into the Sound—Its Name—A copious and entertaining Description, with several curious Observations, on the adjacent Country, and its Inhabitants—Remarks on, and Specimen of the Language in Nootka Sound—Astronomical and nautical Remarks—A Storm after leaving the Sound, in which the Resolution springs a Leak—The Strait of Admiral de Fonte passed unexamined.*

**O**N Monday the 8th of December, having quitted Bolabola, and the Society Isles, we steered to the northward, with the wind between N. E. and E. scarce ever having it in the S. E. point, till after we had crossed the equator; nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of 8 deg. S. to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic birds, and a few other sorts. Our longitude, at this time, we found to be 205 deg. east. In the night, between the 22nd, and 23d, we passed the line; and, on Wednesday the 24th, soon after day-break, we descried land, bearing N. E. by E. We perceived upon a nearer approach, it was one of those low islands, so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land, inclosing a sea or lake within. In two or three places we saw  
some

some cocoa-nut trees ; but the land in general has a very sterile aspect. It extended, at noon, from N. E. by E. to S. by E. half E. and distant about four miles. On the western side we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom. The captain, being of opinion that turtle might be procured at this island, resolved to examine it ; accordingly, we dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water ; and a boat was immediately dispatched to search for a commodious landing place. When she returned, the officer who had been employed in this search, reported, that he found no place where a boat could land ; but that fish greatly abounded in the shoal water, without the breakers. On the 25th, being Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land ; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out, to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight o'clock, A. M. with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred weight. Encouraged by this success, they were dispatched again after breakfast, and the captain himself went in another boat to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats that had been sent on the same search, returned about noon ; and the master belonging to the Resolution, reported to Captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, he had discovered a break in the land, and a channel into a lagoon, consequently there was a proper place for landing ; and that he had found off this entrance the same soundings as we had where we now were stationed. On the strength of this report, we weighed, and, after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the mouth of the lagoon, on each side of which is a channel leading into it, but fit only for boats ; the water in the lagoon

goon itself is likewise very shallow. In the morning of the 26th, Captain Clerke was ordered to send out a boat, with an officer, to the south-east part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle; and Captain Cook went himself, with Mr. King, each in a boat, to the north-east part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity; but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr. King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle. They waded through the water to an island, where they found only a few birds. Captain Cook, leaving Mr. King here to observe the sun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the sea toward the north-west, which he found even more barren than the last mentioned isle; but walking over to the sea-coast, he observed three turtles close to the shore, one of which he caught. He then returned on board, as did Mr. King soon afterwards. Though so few turtles were observed by these two gentlemen, we did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the Discovery, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had more success, and caught many. The next morning, being Saturday, the 26th, the cutter and pinnace were dispatched under the command of Mr. King, to the south-east part of the island, within the lagoon, to catch turtle; and at the same time the small cutter was sent towards the north for the same purpose. Some of Captain Clerke's people having been on shore all night, had been so fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the sand, which were this day brought on board; and, in the course of the afternoon, the party detached to the northward returned with half a dozen, and being sent back again, continued there till we quitted the island, having, upon the whole, pretty good success. Sunday, the 28th, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. Bailey, landed on the island situate between the two channels into

the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing the solar eclipse that was expected to be visible on the 30th. Towards noon, Mr. King returned with one boat, and eight turtles; seven were left behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were employed in catching more; and in the evening the same boat conveyed them provisions and water. The next day the two boats, laden with turtle, were sent back to the ship by Williamson, who, at the same time in a message to Captain Cook, requested, that the boats might be ordered round by sea, as he had discovered a landing place on the south-east side of the island, where the greatest numbers of turtle were caught; so that, by dispatching boats thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land, as we had hitherto done, to the inside of the lagoon, would be saved.

Tuesday the 30th, two gentlemen belonging to the Discovery returned, who, accompanied by Simeon Woodroff, the gunner's mate, and ten seamen, had directed their course, on the 26th, to the north east quarter, in the cutter, having each man a pint of brandy, and a good quantity of water on board. About noon, they arrived at the neck of land, over which they were to travel on foot, to come at the place where the turtle were known to harbour; and where it was dangerous to attempt to approach them by sea, on account of the surf. Here they secured safely their cutter, and erected near the shore a kind of hut, to which they carried their provisions, and sat down to refresh. This done, they agreed to divide, and pursue their sport in different parties. Accordingly they set out, and before the next morning they had sent in several turtles. This they did by placing them across a couple of oars in the manner of a bier, and in keeping a man employed in conveying them from the place where they were turned, to the cutter. When they grew tired of their diversion, they repaired to

the place of rendezvous; but it was some surprize to the rest, when, at nine in the morning, the two gentlemen and the gunner's mate were missing. It was concluded, that they had gone too far within land, and that they had either lost their way, or some accident had befallen them, perhaps from natives lurking secretly in the woods, though none had openly appeared. Under these apprehensions, two of their mariners, Bartholomew Loreman and Thomas Trecher, were sent out in search of them, each carrying a gallon of water, with brandy, and other refreshments, in case they should meet with the gentlemen in their way. In a wild uncultivated country, over-run with bushes and close cover, the reader, who has never been bewildered, can have no idea of men's being lost in the short space of a few miles; but so, however, it happened to our gentlemen; who, invited by the mixed melody of the birds in the woods, left their people as soon as they had properly stationed them, and entered an adjoining thicket, with their guns. The sport they met with led them on till night began to close upon them; when they found themselves at a great distance from the turtlers, and in the midst of a trackless cover, with nothing but tall trees to direct their return; but what was more alarming, the sun was no sooner set than a thick fog succeeded, which involved the woods in darkness, though the open beach remained clear. In vain they attempted to regain the shore; for, instead of being able to discern the trees they had marked to secure their return, they could hardly see one another at three yards distance. In this situation, they soon began to lose all knowledge of their way; and lest, instead of proceeding in the right course, they should pursue a contrary direction, they agreed to sit down to rest, and for that purpose chose the first convenient spot that chance threw in their way. Though their minds were troubled, they had scarce set themselves  
down,

down, when sleep got the better of anxiety, and they lay composed, till attacked by swarms of black ants (creatures more poisonous than bugs) with which they were in a manner covered when they awoke, and so disfigured and tormented with their bites and blisters, that it is hardly possible to describe their distress. Thus circumstanced, their first care was to clear themselves from these vermin by stripping themselves naked, and sweeping them off with brushes made of the wings of the birds they had killed; this done, they clothed themselves again, in order to renew their attempts to recover the shore; but all in vain. The farther they walked, as it appeared afterwards, the farther they went astray. At length, suspecting their error, they resolved to remain stationary, and each man, placing himself against an adjoining tree, endeavoured to console himself as well as he could till morning, when the appearance of the sun enabled them to judge of the course they were to pursue; but, in a trackless wilderness, how were they to make their way! The woods in many places were overgrown with thick grass and brambles reaching to their middles, and in others so thick intersected with boughs and matted with leaves, that it was hardly possible for them to keep company, or to penetrate with their utmost efforts (when these obstructions happened) one hundred yards in as many minutes. They were now glad to abandon their game, happy if they could regain the open country with the loss of every thing about them. The shirts and trousers they had on were soon in rags, their shoes could hardly be kept on their feet, and their linen caps and handkerchiefs were rendered unserviceable, by the frequent repetition of the uses to which they had been applied. In short, no degree of distress either of body or mind, could exceed that to which these unfortunate gentlemen were now exposed. To their minds it was some alleviation, when, about

ten in the morning, they heard the found of guns fired from the ships on purpose to lead them right, supposing them to have lost their way. But this was poor comfort, when they reflected, that the ships were at a great distance, and if they ventured to take them for their guide, they should never live to see an end to their journey. Still labouring, therefore, to advance by the sun, they at length, all at once, observed an opening, that led, as they thought, to the long-wished-for shore. The heart of man, dilated with the most exquisite joy, can only be sensible of the inexpressible pleasure which the gentlemen felt on perceiving this ray of hope. They forgot for the moment, the pains of their lacerated bodies, though all torn with briars and besmeared with blood, and comforted themselves with this dawn of deliverance; but they had still much to suffer; for when they rushed with extasy from the cover, and came to survey the open country, they discovered, to their great mortification, that they were yet at a great distance from the neck of land, over which their people had passed; that this opening had brought them to another creek or inlet of the sea, and that they had yet to travel round a vast circle of the thicket before they could come to the bay that was even now scarce within their knowledge. On this discovery, despair had almost taken place of hope, when they heard, or thought they heard, a found like that of a man's voice far within the thicket. This, in a short time, was answered by a found not unlike the former, but fainter. It was then rightly conjectured that these sounds proceeded from men sent in search of them, and they all endeavoured to raise a halloo in their turn; but their throats were so parched, that with their utmost efforts they could scarce rise above a whisper. They now lamented the waste of powder, which they had fruitlessly expended during the night in making signals of distress, and rummaged their

their cases to muster up a single charge. This, in some measure, had the desired effect. The report was heard by one of the seamen who were in pursuit of them (as will be seen hereafter) both of whom had been struggling with equal difficulties, and toiling under greater incumbrances, without the least prospect of succeeding in their search. These men were now bewildered themselves, and hallooed to each other, as well for the sake of keeping company, as for signals to the gentlemen, should they be within hearing. By this time the day was far advanced; and partly with fatigue and for want of refreshment, the gentlemen were almost spent; they had been ever since the morning's dawn engaged in the most painful exertion of bodily strength, to extricate themselves from the labyrinth in which they had been involved, that ever men experienced, and by consequence to an equal waste of spirits, without any thing to recruit them; and now, though less entangled, they were more exposed to the heat of the sun, which brought on an intolerable thirst that was no longer supportable; they therefore, as the last resource, repaired to the nearest beach, where, to their comfort, they found a turtle, killed it, and drank the blood, in order to allay their thirst. One of them then undressed himself, and lay down for a short time in the shallow water; a singular method of refreshing himself, when fatigued. After this they took shelter in the hollow of a rock till the violent heat abated, during which time a refreshing sleep gave them some relief, and enabled them to perform a journey of three or four leagues, which, otherwise, they must have perished, before they could have accomplished. When they arrived at the hut, to their great concern, they found it deserted, and destitute of every kind of provisions; but casting their eyes towards the ships, they perceived the boats hastening to their relief. The crew, and the officer who attended them, waited at the  
hut,

hut, till all their provisions were expended, and, not knowing how to proceed, had repaired to the ship for a fresh supply, and fresh orders; and he was now returning fully furnished and instructed. On his arrival, he was struck with astonishment at the sight of three such miserable objects as the gentlemen and the gunner's mate appeared to be. Their cry was for grog, which was dealt to them sparingly, and they were conveyed on board to be properly taken care of. The first enquiry they made was, whether any of the ship's company had been sent after them? And being answered in the affirmative, and that they were not yet returned, they could not help expressing their doubts whether they would return; adding their wishes at the same time, that no means might be omitted to effect their recovery. Natural it is for men who have just experienced any signal deliverance, to feel poignantly for the safety of others under the same critical circumstances. It was therefore no small satisfaction, when they were told, that every possible means would be tried for their relief; and to enable them, who were to be sent on that errand, the better to direct their search, the gentlemen described as well as they could, the place where they were heard. The evening, however, was now too far advanced, to undertake with any probability of success, their deliverance. There were now twenty of the crew (seamen and marines) who had been dispatched from on board, for recovering the gentlemen. These had orders from Captain Clerke, to traverse the thicket in a body, till they should find them either living or dead, for, till the gentlemen appeared, nothing could be concluded with certainty concerning them. The majority were of opinion, that, if they had been alive, they would certainly have returned as soon as it was dark, as they could have no motive to pursue their sport in the night; and it was by no means probable, that they should be bewildered; because

because they might surely have found the same way out of the cover, by which they went into it. This was very plausible; but some on board, who had sailed with Commodore Byron, and who remembered the almost impenetrable thickets in the island of Tinian, where men could not see one another in the open day, at the distance of three yards, knew well how the gentlemen might be entangled, and how hard it would fare with them if it should so happen.

Early in the morning the party, and their plan of proceeding were formed, which was to march in lines at such a distance from each other, as to be within hearing, and their rout was proposed to be towards the spot where the sound of the voices was heard by the gentlemen. After a diligent search of six hours, Bartholomew Loreman was discovered in a most miserable condition, almost blinded by the venomous bites of the vermin, added to the scorching heat of the sun, and speechless for want of something to eat. He made signs for water, and some was given him. He was moving about, but totally stupid, having no sense of danger, or of the miserable condition in which he was found. It fortunately happened, that the boats from both ships were previously sent round the point of land, and planted along the coast, as it trended, for the convenience of taking the gentlemen on board, in case they should have been found strayed to any considerable distance. Had this precaution not been observed, the man must have perished before he could have been conveyed by any other means to the place of rendezvous, and it was with the utmost difficulty that he was carried to the nearest boat. As soon as he could be brought to his speech, he said, that he had parted from his companion Trecher, in the morning, not in anger, but by reason of a difference in opinion about the way back. He said, they had travelled the day before as long  
as

as they could in search of the gentlemen without success, and that when overcome with fatigue, they sat down to refresh, and he believed, drank a little too freely of their grog, which occasioned them both to fall asleep. They were frightened when they awoke to find it night; and although they felt their faces and hands covered with vermin, the thoughts of having neglected their duty, and the dread of the consequences, so distracted their minds, that they were not sensible of any other pain. As rest was now no longer their object, they rose and wandered, they neither knew nor cared where, till day began to break upon them, and then they endeavoured to recollect their way, with a view to rejoin their companions; but, after walking and winding about, as they could find a passage through the bushes, they at last began to discover that they were going from the place of rendezvous instead of making towards it. Fatigued to the last degree with walking, and perplexed in their minds, they began to grow careless about living or dying, and in that humour sat down to lighten their burden by making an end of their grog and provisions. This they had no sooner done, than sleep again surprized them, and notwithstanding the vermin, with which they found themselves covered when they awoke, they found themselves again in the dark, and again rose up to wander about, which they continued to do as before, lamenting their melancholy situation, and consulting what course to take. Several wild projects came into their heads. They had heard of Robinson Crusoe's living many years upon an uninhabited island, and why might they not live in this? But hitherto they had seen no four-footed animal, nor any thing on which they could subsist, but turtle and fowls, the latter of which they had no means to attain, and they were totally unprovided with every earthly thing but what they carried about them. That scheme therefore appeared too romantic.

tic. They next thought of climbing the highest tree, to try if they could discover any hill or eminence, from whence they might take a view of the country, in order to be certain whether it was inhabited or not. This was approved by both, and Trecher mounted the loftiest tree within his reach, from whence, he said, he could discern, towards the S. W. a mountain of considerable height, and as that was the point that led to the ships, thither he proposed that they should go; but Loreman rather chose to depend upon Providence, and endeavour to regain the shore, as he judged by a report of a gun, which he thought he heard the day before, that it must lie in the direction from whence the sound proceeded, and thither he was endeavouring to make his way, till his eye-sight failed him, and he lost all sense of action. His companion, he said, who was at some distance farther in the thicket, and who did not hear the report of the gun, did not believe what he said; whereupon they agreed to part. What course Trecher took, he could not tell, but he believed to the S. W. Loreman was judged in too dangerous a way to admit of any delay: he was therefore sent off in a boat, and being put under the care of the surgeon, soon recovered.

After this detail it was debated, whether to resign Trecher to his fate, or to continue the search. The humanity of the officer who had the command of the party prevailed. In consequence of this, the whole party in the morning, about ten o'clock, after taking some refreshment, set out to scour the thickets, and, by halloping, beating of drums, and pursuing different courses, determined he should hear them if he were alive. It was no easy task to penetrate a trackless cover, overgrown with under-wood, and abounding with insects, of which the muskatoes were the least troublesome. But numbers make that easy, which to individuals would be impracticable. They went on cheerfully at first; but

before a few hours were elapsed, even the gentlemen, who were inspirited by their success in killing game, began to be tired, and it was thought advisable to rest and refresh themselves during the intense mid-day heat, and to renew the pursuit after they had dined. As yet they had not been able to discover any trace or track of the man they were pursuing, though it had been agreed between Trecher and his companion, to cut boughs from the trees, as they passed along, by way of mark or guide to each other, in case of separation. This was no small discouragement; and few had any relish to renew a labour attended with so much fatigue, and so little prospect of success. The officers alone were bent on the pursuit. The men, though they were no less willing, were not equally able to endure the fatigue, and some of them were even ready to drop, before their dinner and grog had revived their spirits. The only expedient, that now remained to be tried, was, that which Trecher had hit upon, namely, to climb the highest tree that appeared in view, in order to look for the mountain, to which it was thought probable that he might direct his course. This was no sooner proposed than executed, and the high land seemed at no great distance from the place where the party had dined. It was now agreed to make the best of their way to the eminence, but this proved not so easy a task as it at first appeared to be. When they thought themselves just ready to mount, they met with a lagoon that interrupted their progress; and coasting it along, they discovered the skeleton of a creature that, by its length, appeared to be an alligator. In viewing this narrowly, something like the track of a large animal was observed to have passed it, and the high grass on the margin of the lagoon to have been fresh trodden. This excited the curiosity of the whole party, who imagined that some monster inhabited the lagoon, against which it was prudent for

for them to be on their guard. The waters of the lagoon were salt as brine, and every where skirted with a kind of reed and sedge, that reached as high as a man's head, and could not be penetrated without danger from scorpions or other venomous reptiles, several of which had been seen in the bushes. All attempts therefore of succeeding by this course appeared to be labour lost, and as no other were thought more probable, it was resolved to relinquish the pursuit, and return to the boats; but the day being already too far spent to make their return practicable before the morning, it was agreed to coast it along the lake, to endeavour to find access to the opposite hills; and this was the more easily effected, as between the sedgey border and the thicket, there was an open space of unequal breadth, only sometimes intersected with patches of brambles that joined the lake, but of no great extent. Through these they made their way with little opposition till the lake appeared to deepen, when a most stubborn woody copse seemed to bid defiance to their further progress. This difficulty, however, was with much labour surmounted, and it was not sooner passed, than the lake was found to terminate, and the ground to rise. The country now began to put on a new face. The prospect which had hitherto presented nothing but a wild and almost impenetrable thicket, as they ascended the rising ground, became delightful; and when they had attained the summit of the eminence, was exceedingly picturesque. Here they determined to pass the night within a pleasant grove, which seemed to be designed by nature for a place of rest. The whole party now assembled, and orders were given by the commanding officers to erect temporary tents to shelter them from the evening damps. These tents were only boughs and leaves of trees set up tent fashion. In this service some were employed in cutting down and preparing materials, while

others were busied in disposing and putting them together: some were ordered to collect fuel, and others to carry it to an adjoining hill, in order to be kindled at the close of day, and kept burning during the night, by way of signal, to let the boats know that the party were safe, and that they had not yet relinquished the search. Add to these orders, that a sentinel was to attend the fire in the night, and a watch to be regularly set and relieved to guard the tents. In the mean time, the gentlemen amused themselves by taking a view of the lagoon from the hills, and observing its extent. It is bounded on three sides by a ridge of hills, and open only to the N. W. from which quarter they had approached it. They also observed an open down to trend towards the shore, by which the low grounds were divided, and hence they concluded, that their return would be much shortened. Before night set in, the tents were compleated, and the orders that had been given were carried punctually into execution; the fire was lighted, the sentinel at his station, the watch set, and the party all retired to rest. About midnight the centinel, who attended the fire, was surprized by a four-footed monster, that had stole upon him with a slow and solemn pace, and was just ready to seize him, when he started suddenly from it, and flew down to the tents to apprise the watch. The officer on duty was presently made acquainted with the impending danger, who immediately called to their assistance the serjeant of marines, the second mate, and the armourer, the stoutest men of the party. With this reinforcement they marched up the hill in form, Mr. Hollingsby and Mr. Dixon in front, the serjeant and the sentinel in the next line, and two sailors in the rear. As they approached the fire, the sentinel, peeping from behind the armourer, beheld the monster through the smoke, as tall again as he appeared before, and desired the front line to kneel  
and

and fire; but the armourer fearing neither devil nor monster, determined to face the enemy. He therefore advanced boldly, and looking sharply, took the monster for a man, and called to him to speak, in the usual phrase of a seaman. But what was their astonishment, when they beheld the very identical Thomas Trecher, of whom they had been in search so long, crawling upon all fours, for his feet were so blistered that he could not stand, and his throat so parched that he could not speak. It is hard to say which was predominant, their surprize or joy. No time, however, was lost in administering relief. Some ran to the tents to tell the news, and to bring some refreshment, while the rest strove to ease him, by supporting him in their arms. In a few minutes he was surrounded by the whole party, some eager to hear his story, and all to give him relief. The officers brought him cordials, which they administered sparingly till he was brought to his speech. He was a most affecting spectacle, blistered from head to foot by poisonous insects, whose venomous stings had caused such an intolerable itching, that his very blood was inflamed by constant rubbing. By anointing him with oil, the acrimony in some degree abated, and by frequently giving him small quantities of tea mixed with a little brandy, they brought him to his speech; but it was some days before he recovered the perfect use of his senses. As soon as they had recovered him so far, by proper refreshments, as to entertain hopes of saving his life, they carried him to bed, and ordered one of his messmates to attend him. In the morning his fever was abated; but there arose a difficulty, how he was to be conveyed more than twelve miles, through a country, such as has been described, in his weak condition. To English sailors nothing, that is not impossible, is impracticable. One of them remembered that, when he was a boy, his schoolfellows used to divert themselves with  
 making

making sedan chairs of rushes, and he thought it an easy matter to frame such a one from the materials in the thicket, that would answer the purpose. This was no sooner proposed than executed, and a machine contrived, in which they took it by turns to carry him through almost insurmountable obstructions. The gentlemen had, indeed, discovered a less encumbered passage than that, through which they had made their way the day before; but if reached very little farther than they could see with the naked eye; all the low ground beyond was swampy and reedy, and abounding with insects of various kinds. In the evening, inexpressibly fatigued, they reached the beach, where the Discovery's cutter was grounded, and where likewise the Resolution's boat, that had been waiting all the day before on the opposite side of the peninsula, was arrived. After some slight refreshment, each party repaired to their own ship; and Trecher, being committed to the surgeon's care, recovered gradually, but it was some weeks before he was fit to do duty. Considering what strange people the generality of sailors are, while on shore, we might, instead of being much surprized, that the two seamen should lose their way, rather wonder that no more of them were missing.

This day, (Tuesday, the 30th) Captain Cook, and Messrs. King and Bailey, repaired in the morning to the small island, to observe the eclipse of the sun. The sky was overcast at times; but it was clear when the eclipse ended. Having some yams and cocoa-nuts on board, in a state of vegetation, we planted them on this spot, and some seeds of melons were sown in another place. The captain also left on this little isle a bottle, having this inscription:

*Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.*

Naves } Resolution, Jan. Cook, Pr.  
 } Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

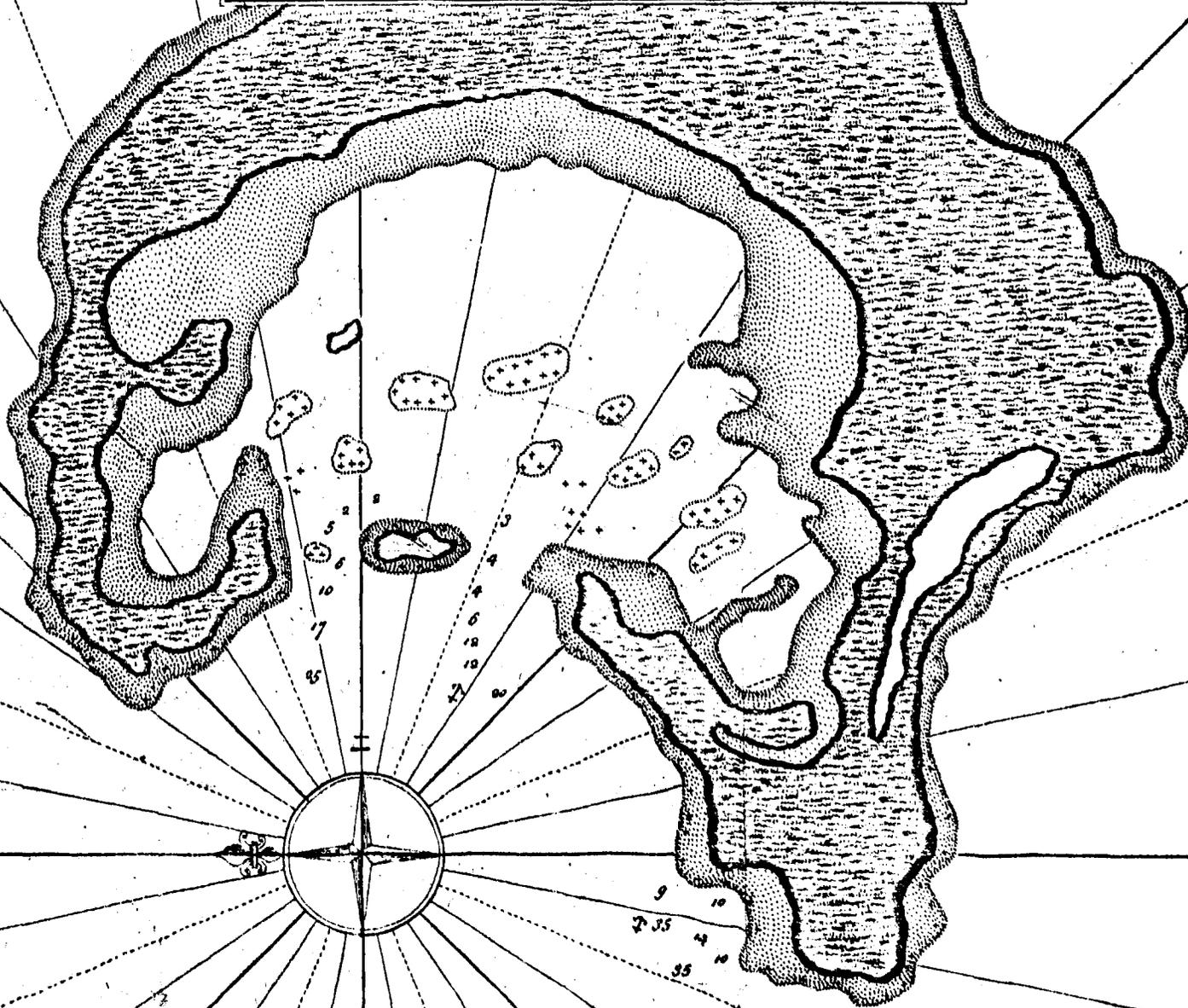
On Thursday the 1st of January, our A. D. 1778. boats were sent out to bring on board our different parties employed on shore, who, in the course of a week, had taken more than 100 turtle, from 150 to 300 pound weight: but we had not been able to discover any fresh water. It being late before this business was completed, the captain thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. The turtle we procured at this island were all of the green sort, and, perhaps, not inferior in goodness to any in the world. We also caught with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavallies, snappers, and a few rock fish of two species, one with whitish streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous blue spots. The soil of this island, (to which the name of Christmas Island was given, because we kept that festival here,) is, in some places, light and blackish, and composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts, it is formed of broken coral stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. These are deposited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea-coast; and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach at present, within a mile of these places. This seems to prove incontestibly, that the island has been produced by different accessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. Though we could not, after repeatedly digging, find a drop of fresh water, we met with several salt ponds, which, as they had no communication with the sea, were probably filled by the water filtrating through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the south-eastern part of the island. We could not discover the smallest traces  
of

of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence: for though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of animal diet. On the few cocoa-nut trees upon the island, we found very little fruit, and that little not good. A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a sort of purslain, a species of sida, or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *mesembrianthemum*; with two sorts of grass. Under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above, and white below, having a white arch on the forehead. These birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy; their eggs are bluish, and speckled with black. There were likewise many common boobies; a sort greatly resembling a gannet; and a chocolate-coloured species, with a white belly. Men-of-war birds, curlews, plovers, and tropic birds, are to be found here. We saw numbers of land-crabs, small lizards, and several rats smaller than ours. This island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between 15 and 20 leagues in circuit. Its form is semi-circular; or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in 202 deg. 30 min. east longitude, and in the latitude of 1 deg. 59 min. north. Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth

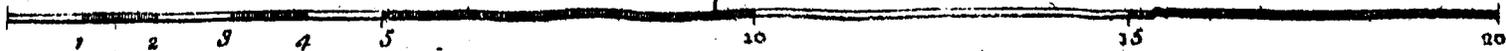
*CHRISTMAS ISLAND*

Latitude 1.58 N. Longitude 162.28 E.  
Discovered in the Ships Resolution and Discovery.

1777  
Variation 6°. E.



Nautic Miles



T. Bowen. sc.

depth between eighteen and thirty fathom. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at E. by S. or E. and we had constantly a great swell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent manner.

Friday, the 2nd, at day-break, we unmoored, set sail, and resumed our northerly course, with the Discovery in company. As we were now clear of land, had a prosperous gale, and plenty of provisions, the men were allowed turtle to boil with their pork, which in a few days was discontinued by the advice of the surgeon, and turtle substituted in the room of every other kind of meat. This was found both healthful and nourishing, and was therefore continued till within a few days of our arrival at another island, where we met with fresh provisions and water equal to any we brought with us from the Society Isles. On the 3d, the wind shifted, and a storm came on, proceeded by a lowering darkness, that presaged some violent convulsion, and soon after it broke forth in thunder, lightning, wind and rain, which in two hours increased to such a raging degree, as no man on board had ever known the like. Fortunately, it was but of short continuance; but, in that little time, the sea broke over our quarter, and cleared the decks of every thing that was loose. After this we had a gentle breeze at E. and E. S. E. which continued till we arrived in the latitude of 7 deg. 45 min. N. and in 205 deg. east longitude, where we had one day of perfect calm. A N. E. by E. wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward. We daily observed tropic birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10 and 11 deg. N. we saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, we discovered none till early in the morning of Sunday, the 18th, when an island appeared bearing W. E. by E. Not long after more land was seen, which bore N.

and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the first was supposed to be 8 or 9 leagues distant. Our longitude at this time, was 200 deg. 41 min. E. and our latitude 21 deg. 12 min. N. The next day, at sun-rise, the island first seen bore E. distant 7 leagues. Not being able to reach this, we shaped our course for the other; and soon after, observed a third island, bearing W. N. W.

We had now a fine breeze at E. by N. and, at noon, the second island, named Atooi, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came along-side the ships. We were agreeably surprized to find, that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language. They could not be prevailed on, by any entreaties, to come on board. We conveyed to those in the nearest canoe some brass medals, tied to a rope; and they, in return, fastened some mackarel to the rope, by way of an equivalent. This was repeated; and some nails or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they returned in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or, at least, of returning one present for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of stuff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, but are stoutly made. Their complexion is brown; and though there appears but little difference in the casts of their colour, there is a considerable variation in their features. Most of them have their hair cropped short; a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head; and others suffered it to flow loose. It seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had stained it with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour. Most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons; nor did

did we observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were tatoed on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth, worn by them round their middle, were curiously coloured with white, black and red. They seemed to be mild and good natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had manifestly brought for their own defence; and these they threw into the sea when they found there was no occasion for them. Perceiving no signs of an anchoring place, at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the S. E. side of the coast, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a six-penny nail each. We passed divers villages; some of which were situated near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, there they rise immediately from the sea: they seemed to be composed of stone, or rocks lying in an horizontal strata. We observed a few trees about the villages; near which we could also discern several plantations of sugar-canes and plantains. We continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of 50 fathoms, till we came abreast of a low point, near the N. W. extremity of the island, where we found from 12 to 14 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, we met with 20 fathoms, then 16, and at last 5, over a bottom of sand. We spent

spent the night in standing off and on, and the next morning, being Tuesday, the 20th, stood in for the land. We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board. None of the inhabitants we were ever before conversant with, in any other country or island, were so astonished as these people, upon entering our ship. Their eyes were incessantly rolling from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they beheld; and strongly marked to us, that they had never, till the present time, been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of hamaite, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly. They also frequently called iron by the name of toe, which signifies a hatchet, or adze. On our shewing them some beads, they first asked what they were; and then, whether they were to be eaten. But on their being informed, that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking-glass that we offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked if they were made of wood. They were in many respects naturally polite; or, at least, cautious of giving offence. Some of them just before they ventured aboard, repeated a long prayer; and others, afterwards, sang, and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering  
the

the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather take it openly, as if they supposed, that we should either not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock, the Captain dispatched Lieut. Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing place, and for fresh water; with orders, that if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain. The reason of the commodore's order, that the crews of the boats should not go ashore, was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of our people now laboured under, and which we, unfortunately, had received from, and communicated to, other islands in this ocean. From the same humane motive, he commanded, that all female visitants should be excluded from both the ships. Many persons of this sex had come off in the canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces or other proportions. The only difference in their dress was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down the knees, instead of the maro worn by the male sex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on board, as some of the men were; but the commodore was extremely desirous

firous of preventing all connection, which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards, through their means, to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person, capable of communicating the infection, should be sent on duty out of the ships. Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded. And there is reason to apprehend, that this will constantly be the case, in such voyages as ours, whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on shore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourse are then too numerous to be effectually guarded against; and however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undeceived too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found some, who endeavour to conceal any venereal symptoms, and there are others so profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this disease. We had an instance of this last observation at Tongataboo, in the gunner of the Discovery, who had been stationed on shore. After knowing that he had contracted this disorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were supposed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonstrated to him on this scandalous behaviour without effect, till Captain Clerke, being informed of it, ordered him to repair on board.

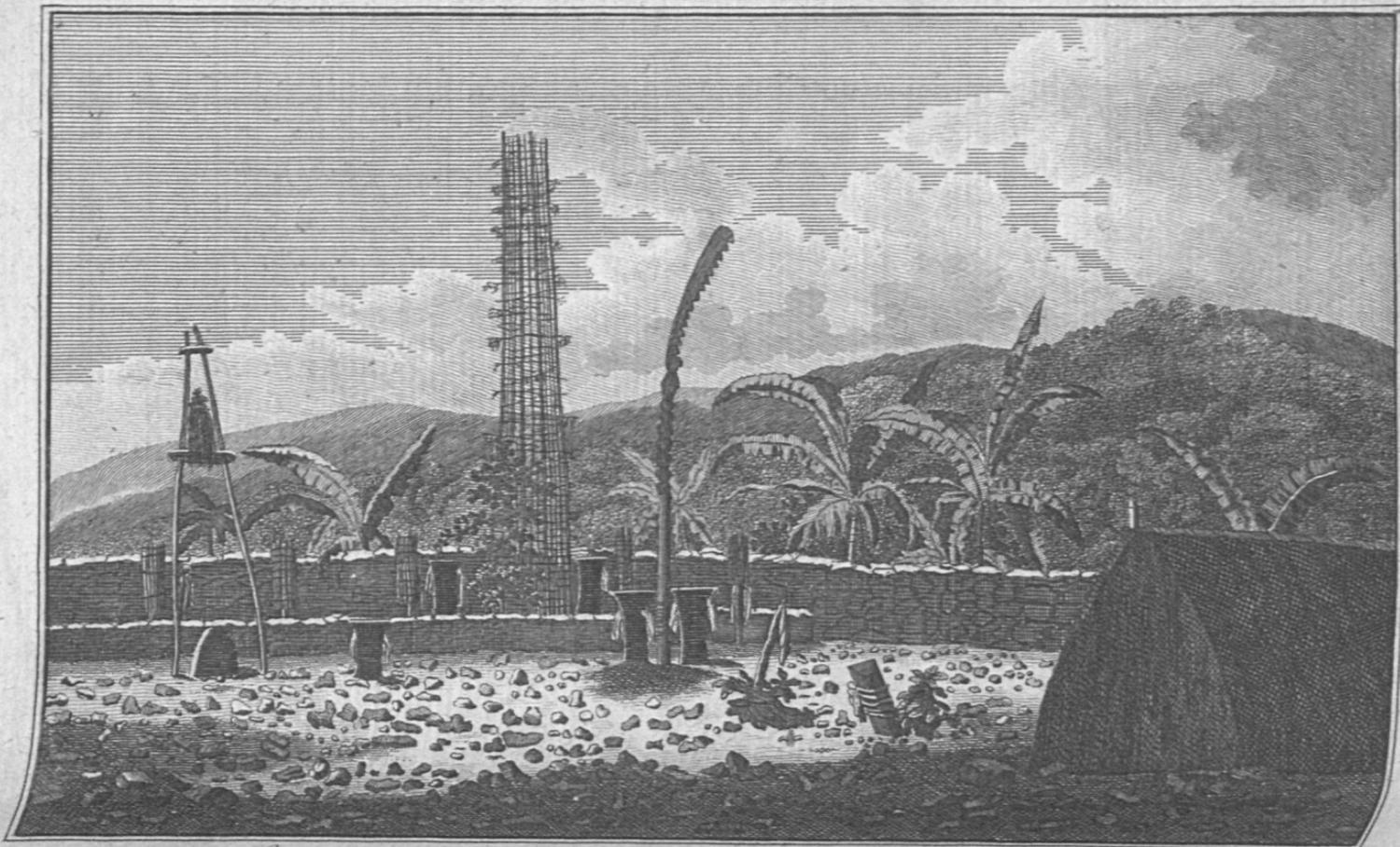
During the time the boats were employed in reconnoitering the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards noon our lieutenant returned, and reported, that he had observed, behind a beach near one of the villages, a large pond, said by the natives to contain fresh water, and that there was tolerable anchoring ground before it. He also had  
made

made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, musquets, and every other article they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to Captain Cook till after we had quitted the island, so that all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr. Williamson informed him, that as soon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats; but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the least intention of killing, or even hurting any of them, but were excited by curiosity alone, to get from them what they had, being prepared to give, in return, any thing that appertained to themselves. Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats to lie in the best anchoring ground; and, when she had gained this station, we bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in 25 fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore south 31. deg. east; the west point north 65 deg. west; and the village near which the fresh water was said to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the captain went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the natives, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture, till, by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him

many small pigs, with plantain trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised, on similar occasions, at the Society, and other isles, and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly joined occasionally. The captain signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which was extremely good, and so considerable a collection, that it might be denominated a lake. After this he returned on board, and gave orders, that preparations should be made for filling our water casks in the morning, at which time we went ashore with some of our people, having a party of marines for our guard. We had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders bartered for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men, who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Leaving the command of this station to Mr. Williamson, who landed with us, we made an excursion up the country, into the valley, accompanied by Messrs. Anderson and Webber, and by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the captain made choice of as our guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that position till we had passed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is the method of shewing respect to their own chiefs. At every village, as the ships ranged along the coast, we had descried one or more elevated white objects, resembling obelisks; one of which,

which, supposed to be at least fifty feet high, was very conspicuous from our anchoring place, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it was the principal motive of our walk; but it happened to be in such a situation that we could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from us. However, as there was another of the same kind about half a mile distant upon our side of the valley, we set out to visit that. We found it to be situated in a burying ground, or morai, which bore a striking resemblance, in several respects, to those we had seen at Otaheite, and other islands. It was an oblong space, of considerable extent, environed by a stone wall, four or five feet high. The enclosed space was loosely paved, and at one end of it was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives *henananoo*, which was an exact model of the larger one we had seen from the ships. It was about twenty feet in height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles, interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within, from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin greyish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed *hereanee*, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, on which some plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about six feet. This the islanders call *herairemy*, and they said the fruit was offered to their deity. Before the *henananoo* were several pieces of wood, carved in some resemblance of human figures. There was also a stone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this, on the outside of the morai, was a small shed, which they call *hareepahoo*; and before it was a grave, where the remains of a woman had been deposited. On the further side of the area of the morai was a

house, or shed, called hemanaa, about forty feet in length, ten in breadth, but narrower at each end: though considerably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house stood two images, near three feet high, cut out of one piece of wood, with pedestals: they were said to be Eatooa no Veheina, or representations of goddesses, and were not very indifferent either in design or execution. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head-dress at Otaheite, called tomou; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the antient warriors, and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable way. At the side of each was also a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedestals lay a quantity of fern, that had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the house, and before the images, was an oblong space, inclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth: this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called heneene. We had already met with so many instances of resemblance, between the morai we were now visiting, and those of the islands we had lately visited, that we entertained little doubt in our own minds of the similarity in their rites, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human sacrifices. Our suspicions were soon confirmed; for on one side of the entrance into the hemanaa we observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and on asking what these were, we were informed by our conductor, that in one of them was interred a man, and in the other a hog, both which had been offered up to the deity. At no great distance from these were three other square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs, and before them was an inclosed space, of an oblong figure,



*A MORAL AND ATOOI.*

figure, called Tangatataboo, by our guide, who declared to us, that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been buried there. Indeed, every appearance induced us to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general. In many spots within this burying-ground, were planted trees of the *Morinda Citrifolia*, and *Cordia Sebastina*, besides several plants of the *Etec*, with the leaves of which the hemanaa was thatched.

Our journey to and from this morai, lay through the plantations. We observed most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening spaces, in general, were planted with taro, which grew with great vigour. There were several spots where the cloth-mulberry was planted, in regular rows; this also grew vigorously. The cocoa-trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain-trees made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous around this village, are the *cordia sebastina*. The greatest part of the village is near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there, and we saw near forty more scattered about towards the morai. After we had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the morai, we returned by a different rout. We found a multitude collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on, with the greatest order and decorum: at noon Captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr. King to take the command of the party on shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country; but before he could execute this design the day was too far spent; he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no opportunity afterwards occurred.

Towards sun-set, the captain and our people returned on board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails, and pieces of iron) seventy pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and taro roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved our best commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either along side our ships, or on shore. Some of them, indeed, as we have already related, betrayed at first a pilfering disposition, or, perhaps, they imagined that they had a right to all they could lay their hands on; but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which, we convinced them, could not be persevered in with impunity. Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly pleased with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries, might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed up it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The methods of varying the mixture are very different; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others a sort of crescent; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colour of the feathers, in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing we offered in exchange, demanding no less price than one of our musquets. They afterwards, however, parted with some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions. The caps are made in the form of a helmet,

met, with the middle part or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They sit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with net-work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes, on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress, with the cloaks; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together. We could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but we soon procured intelligence respecting one sort; for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small red species of birds, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forward; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs, and sufficiently explained that particular. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as more valuable. According to Mr. Anderson, the red bird of this island is a species of merops, about as large as a sparrow; its colour a beautiful scarlet, with the tails and wings black; a bill arched, and twice as long as the head, which, with the feet, is of a reddish hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradise; but we did not find that they practiced any other mode of preserving them, than that of simple drying.

On Thursday the 22d we had almost continual rain for the whole morning. The wind was at S. E.

E. S. S. E. and S. and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. We were not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within the length of little more than two cables from the Resolution's stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to us hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel, fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he had disposed of the hook. Upon being asked what it was, he pointed to his belly; saying, at the same time, it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance, and we found that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had, to all appearance, been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it, who answered, that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders who stood near him was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle; and he immediately replied in the affirmative. In the afternoon we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the E. and N. E. but, towards the evening, it veered back again to S. S. E. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not attended with much wind. On the 23d, at seven o'clock A. M. a north-easterly breeze springing up, our anchors were ordered to be taken up, with a view of removing the Resolution further out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail we could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that before we had good sea-room, we were driven considerably to leeward. We endeavoured to regain the road,  
but

but having a strong current against us, and very little wind, we could not accomplish that design. Our Commodore therefore dispatched Messrs. King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending at the same time, an order to Captain Clerke, to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road. Having hopes of finding perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, we were the less anxious of regaining our former station; but boats having been sent thither, we kept as much as possible to windward, notwithstanding which, at noon, our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end, we found that the coast rounded gradually, to the N. E. without forming a cove, or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf: all hopes; therefore, of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives, in their canoes, followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstances of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, we now made some further enquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood, beset with shark's teeth, had been purchased, which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New Zealand to dissect the bodies of their enemies, was suspected by us to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed us, that the instrument above mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was slain. This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen eat the part thus cut out, strongly denied it; but when the question was repeated,

peated, he shewed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked, whether they eat the flesh, and he answered in the affirmative. The question being put to him a second time, he again affirmed the fact; adding that it was savoury food. In the evening, about seven o'clock, the boats returned with a few hogs, some roots, plantains, and two tons of water. Mr. King reported to our commodore, that the islanders were very numerous at the watering place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them sufficient to purchase them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday, the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the N. W. and N. so that the western extremity of Atooi, bore E. at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprung up soon after, and, expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, we steered for Oneehow, a neighbouring island, which then bore S. W. with a view of anchoring there. We continued to steer for it till past eleven, when we were distant from it about six miles: but not seeing the Discovery, we were apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; we therefore relinquished the design of visiting Oneehow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We stretched to the S. E. till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road; and, not long after, we were joined by the Discovery. We remained several days beating up, but in vain, to regain our former birth;

birth; and by the morning of Thursday, the 29th, the currents had carried us to the westward, within nine miles of Onecheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, we laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed our intention of paying a visit to Onecheow. With this view the master was dispatched in a boat to sound along the coast, and search for a landing place, and afterwards fresh water. In the mean time the ships followed under an easy sail. The master, at his return, reported, that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water: but being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village in sight, we ran down and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being 26 fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance from the shore, in 23 fathoms. The south-eastern point of Onecheow bore south, 65 deg. E. about one league distant; and another island which we had discovered the preceding night, named Tahoorā, bore S. 61 deg. W. distant 7 leagues.

Before we anchored, several canoes had come off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, small pigs, and mats. The people resembled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi, and, like them, were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names of *toe* and *hamaite*, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of that metal. Some more canoes soon reached our ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object, than to make us a formal visit. Many of them came on board, and crouched down on the deck; nor did they quit that humble posture, till they were requested to rise. Several women, whom they had brought with them, remained along-side the canoes,

behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and, at intervals, they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and before their departure, some of them desired permission to lay down locks of hair on the deck. This day we renewed the enquiry whether these islanders were cannibals, and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wished to get in at the gun-room port, was refused, and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question, as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, instantly replied, that, if we were killed on shore, they would not scruple to eat us; not that he meant they would destroy us for that purpose, but that their devouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was sent with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place; being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get ashore. He returned in the evening, and reported, that he had landed at the village, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad.

On Friday, the 30th, Mr. Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The captain's intention was to have followed soon afterwards; and he went from the ship with that design: but the surf had

had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive, if he got ashore, he should not be able to make his way back again. This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr. Gore; for the communication between them and the ships, by our own boats, was quickly stopped. They made a signal, in the evening, for the boats, which were accordingly sent; and in a short time afterwards returned with some good salt, and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risque of coming off, remained all night on shore, by which unfortunate circumstance, the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had guarded effectually against. However, the violence of the surf did not deter the natives from coming off in canoes to our ships. They brought with them some refreshments, for which we gave them in exchange, some nails, and pieces of iron hoops; and we distributed among the women in the canoes, buttons, bracelets, and many pieces of ribbons. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants told us no chief was over this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Tencoonoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances orders were given for the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into 40 fathoms water, came

to again in that more secure station : yet this proved an unnecessary precaution ; for the wind, not long after, veering to the N. N. E. blew a fresh gale, with squalls, and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with our party on shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening, the commodore sent the master in a boat to the S. E. point of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report ; but it was now too late to send for our party, so that they were obliged to stay another night on shore.

On Sunday, the 1st of February, on the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the S. E. points with order, to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam to the shore, and communicated the instructions. On the return of our boat, Captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. We took with us three goats, one male, the others female ; a young boar and sow of the English breed ; and also the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. With great ease, we landed under the west side of the point, where we found our party, in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, the captain gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. He intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, had we not been unexpectedly driven from that island. While our people were employed in filling some water-casks, from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, Captain Cook made a short excursion  
into

into the country, accompanied by the islander above-mentioned, and followed by two others, who carried the pigs. When arrived upon a rising ground, the captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman, on the opposite side of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round him all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oration. This strange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all parts, who upon being called to by the captain's attendants, fell prostrate on their faces till he was out of sight. The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stoney, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained so long on shore, found in those parts of the island they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though in some small wells the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly inhabited, and scattered about; and it was supposed, that there were not more than 500 persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The only nuts of the dooc dooc are burned by these islanders for lights during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting them through the whole length of the carcass.

Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence

istence of the taboo among them; for one woman was employed in feeding another, she being under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf, which was drowned; she then tied up a bundle of wood, and disposed of it in the same manner. At another time, the same female beat a man's shoulders with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It is a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, it is techa; which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of hair. After our water casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish, had been purchased from the natives, we returned on board with all our people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day: but, about seven in the evening, the anchor of our ship started, and she drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourselves, at day-break the next morning, being the 2nd, nine miles to the leeward of our last station; and the captain foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the Discovery to weigh anchor and join us. At noon both ships took their departure, and steered to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. But before we proceed to the northern hemisphere, in order to make new discoveries, we shall present the friends and subscribers to this history of voyages, with the observations, made by several of our gentlemen, on this whole cluster of isles, which Captain Cook distinguished by the name of Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which we saw are situated between the latitude of 21 deg. 30 min. and 22 deg. 15 min. N. and between



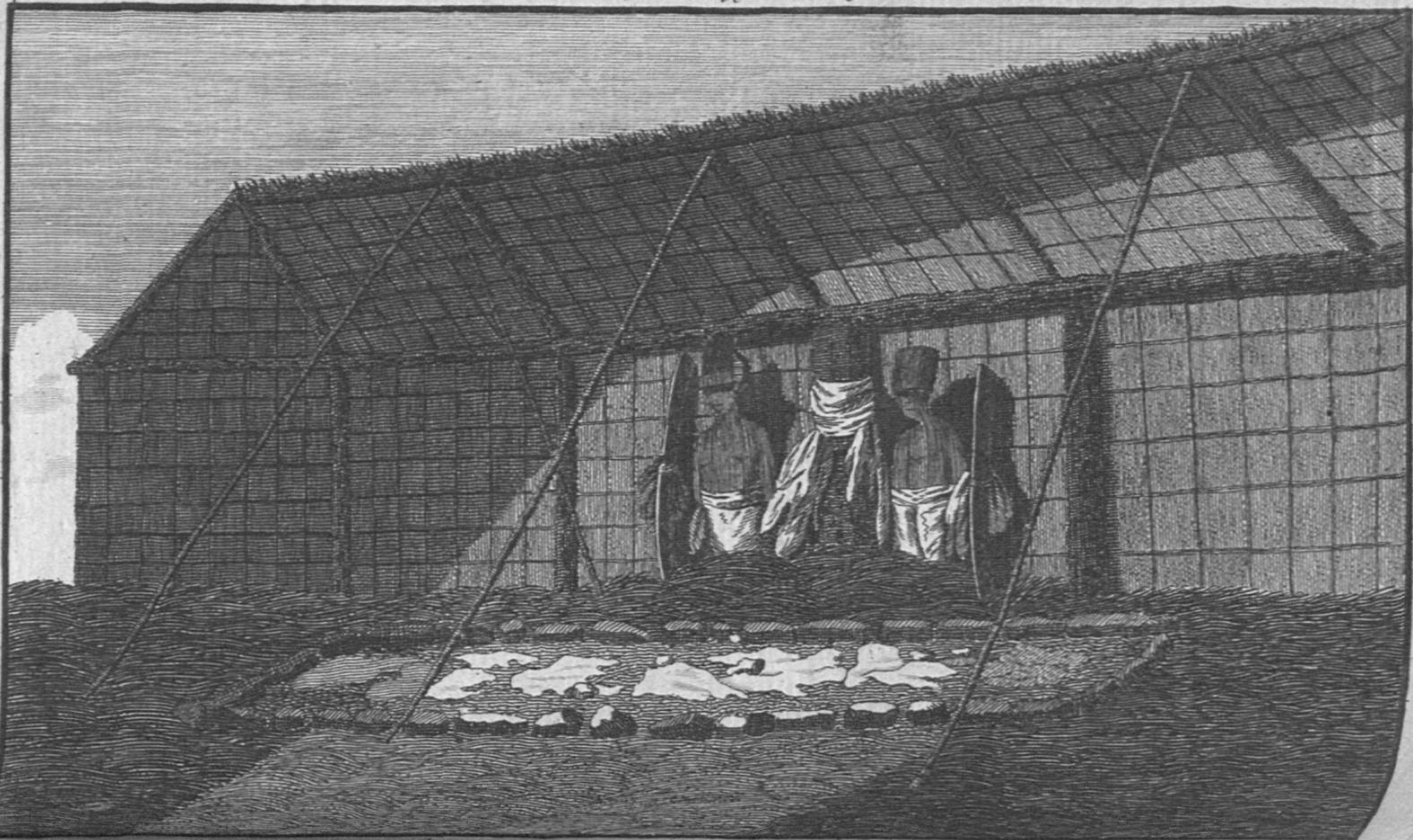
tween the longitude of 199 deg. 20 min. and 201 deg. 30 min. E.

They are not inferior in beauty and fertility to the Friendly Islands in the southern hemisphere, nor are the inhabitants less ingenious or civilized. It is worthy of observation, that the islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situate in groups; the single intermediate isles, hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the rest; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this new-discovered archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Wao-hoo, Atooi, Oneehcow, Oreehoua, and Tahooraa. This last is a small elevated island, at the distance of four or five leagues from the S. E. point of Oneehcow. We were told, that it abounds with birds, its sole inhabitants. We also gained intelligence of the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-Pappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. There seems to be a remarkable conformity (observes one of our gentlemen) between these islands and those of the opposite hemisphere, not only in their situation, but in their number, and in their manners, customs, arts, and manufactures of the inhabitants; yet, it can scarcely be imagined, that they could ever have any communication, as the globe is now constituted, being more than 2000 miles distant one from the other: but from this general conformity among the tropical islanders, some have been led to believe, that the whole middle region of the earth, was once one entire continent, and that what is now the Great South Pacific Ocean was, in the beginning, the Paradise of the World.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information, than that it is high land, and inhabited. But as to Onecheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, this lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring-place at Atooi, and does not exceed 15 leagues, or 45 miles, in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives patai, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork; and some salt fish, which we purchased from them, were kept very well, and extremely good. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height; as does also its S. E. point, which terminates in a round hill. We know no other particulars concerning Onecheow: and of Oreehoua we can only say, that it is a small elevated island, lying close to the north side of Onecheow.

Atooi was the principal scene of our operations, and the largest island we saw. From our observations, we think it to be at least 30 miles in length from E. to W. from whence its circumference may nearly be determined, though it appears to be much broader at the E. than at the W. point. The road, or anchoring place, which our vessels occupied, is on the S. W. side of the island, about two leagues from the west end, before a village, named Wymoa. As far as we sounded, we found the banks free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat exposed to the trade wind; notwithstanding which, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not more variable, but more boisterous; as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult

*London; Publish'd as the Act directs, by Alex<sup>r</sup> Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup> 16, Paternoster Row.*



*W. H. Hogg del.*

as at most of those places; and, unless in foul weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the etooa trees, (for that is the name they give to the cordia sebastina) that grow about their villages, or species called dooe dooe, which grows farther up the country. The land does not the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently rising land, renders it, in some degree, superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the clouds which we saw, during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had an opportunity of seeing, particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the villages are, in general, situated. The ground, from the woody part to the sea, is covered with an excellent kind of grass, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally. In the narrow valley leading to the morai, the soil is of a dark brown colour, rather loose; but on the high ground, it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is

probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which, doubtless, came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions, than from its appearance: for the vale, or moist ground, produces taro, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniences to which many of the countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat, or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees. The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark grey ponderous stone; but honey-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into strata, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than in the southern islands. For during the short time we remained here, besides the lapis lydius, we found a species of cream-coloured whetstone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins like marble; and common writing-slate, as well as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us  
some

some pieces of a coarse whitish pumice stone. We also procured a brown sort of hæmatites, which from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whetstones.

Of vegetables, birds, fish, and tame animals, we saw various kinds. Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were, at least, five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread-fruit, and the sugar-cane: the former seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of that species; but the latter appears to be indigenous to these islands, and rare in those on the other side of the line. There are also here a few cocoa-palms; some yams; the kappe of the Friendly Isles, or Virginian arum; the etooa tree, and odoriferous gardenia, or Cape Jasmine. We saw several trees of the dooe dooe, that bear the oily nuts, which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made use of as candles. They are used in the same manner at Oneehew. We were not ashore at Atooi except in the daytime, and then we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung on strings, round their necks. There is a species of sida, or Indian mallow; also the morinda citrifolia, which is here called none; a species of convulvulus; the ava, or intoxicating pepper, besides great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a very large size, and are remarkable for their variety of shapes, the effect, perhaps, of art. Upon the dry sand, about the village, grows a plant, that had never been seen by us in this ocean, of the size of a common thistle, and prickly; but bearing a fine flower, greatly resembling a white poppy. The scarlet birds, brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw a small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks, or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the na-

tives the names of some other birds; among which were the otoo, or blueish heron, and the torata, a sort of whimbrel. It is probable that the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small velvet-like blackish feathers, used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments worn by these people. Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appearance, not various; as, besides the small mackarel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell-fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were destitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty. The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the islands of the South Pacific. There are also small lizards; and some rats, resembling those of every island we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and not much tattowed. In general they are stoutly made, with a lively open countenance; but they are remarkable for having neither a beautiful shape, nor striking features. Their visage, particularly that of the women, is sometimes round; but in others long; nor can it justly be said, that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any peculiar cast of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut brown; but some individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in most other parts of the world. There is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure, of the natives of both sexes: upon the whole, however, they are far from  
being

London: Publish'd as the Act directs, by Alex.<sup>r</sup> Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup>. 16, Paternoster Row.



*A MAN of the SANDWICH-  
ISLANDS.*



*A Young WOMAN of the  
SANDWICH ISLANDS.*

being ugly, and have, to all appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their skin is not very soft, nor shining; but their eyes and teeth are, for the most part, pretty good. Their hair, in general, is straight; and though its natural colour is usually black, they stain it, as at the Friendly and other islands. We perceived but few instances of corpulence; and these more frequently among the women than the men; but it was principally among the latter that personal defects were observed; though if any of them can lay claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be most conspicuous among the young men. They are active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most frivolous occasion; diving under them; and swimming to others, though at a considerable distance. We have frequently seen women with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high as to prevent their landing with canoes, leap overboard, and swim to the shore, without endangering their little ones. They appear to be of a frank, chearful disposition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast, observable among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse with each other; and, except the propensity to thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility, without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the different articles of our European manufactures, they could not refrain from expressing their astonishment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the case as a lesson of humility to themselves; and on every occasion, they appeared to have a proper consciousness of their own inferiority; a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous pride of the  
more

more polished Japanese, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves from those savages who consider a wife and child as things rather necessary than desirable, or worthy of their regard or esteem. From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village, as we coasted along, it may be conjectured, that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there may perhaps be, in the whole island, sixty such villages, as that near which our ships anchored; and, if we allow five persons to each house, there will be, in every village 500, or 30,000 upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated, for there were sometimes 3000 people, at least, collected upon the beach; when it could not be supposed that above a tenth part of the whole were present.

The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already described. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just below the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of their body; but the children, when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair, both of men and women, is cut in various forms; and the general fashion, particularly among the latter, is to have it short behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each side in such a manner, that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crest of their caps, or that which, in horses manes, is called hogging. Both sexes, however, seemed to be very careless about their hair, and had no combs, nor any thing of the kind, to dress it with. The men sometimes twist it into a  
number

number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though most of those which are so long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head, over their own hair. Contrary to the general practice of most of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, the inhabitants of the Sandwich Isles have not their ears perforated, nor do they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces composed of bunches of small black cord, like our hat strings, often above a hundred fold; entirely resembling those we saw worn at Wateoo, except that, instead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They have also necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they sometimes hang round their necks a small human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and neatly polished, fastened together by a string drawn closely through them; or others of hogs teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed only of large boars' tusks, are very elegant. The men sometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic bird; or those of cocks; fastened round neat polished sticks, two feet in length; and, for the same purpose, they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also, not unfrequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickness of a finger, or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and, on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort of broad shell work, grounded upon net-work. The men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands

hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no marks at all; though a few individuals had more of this species of ornament than we had usually seen at other places, and curiously executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore-part of the body.

Near any of their villages, there is no appearance of defence, or fortifications; and the houses are scattered about, without the least order. Some of these habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth; while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resembles that of hay-stacks, or perhaps a better idea may be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a high acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at each end, corresponding to the sides, makes these abodes close all round, and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; often shut up by a board of planks, fastened together, which serves as a door; but as it has no hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the house except by this opening; and though such close habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkable clean, and the floors are strewn with dried grass, over which mats are spread to sit and sleep on. At one end stands a bench, about three feet high, on which the domestic utensils are placed. These consist of gourd shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain various articles; also a few wooden bowls, and trenchers of various sizes. From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt, that sweet potatoes, taro, and plantains, constitute the principal

pal part of their vegetable diet ; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food, they appear to be in no want, having great numbers of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses ; and, if they eat dogs, which is not improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing hooks found among them, indicate that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd-shells. The salt used for this purpose is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our stragglers found at Christmas island. Its colour is doubtless derived from a mixture of mud, at the bottom of the place where it is found ; for some of it, which had adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteness. They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones ; and, from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined that all the inhabitants of a village, or at least a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island. The only artificial dish we saw them dress was a taro pudding, which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers ; and, as far as we were enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding on the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otaheite, are at least allowed to eat in the same place near them.

The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps ; but, from the motions they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we judged that they were similar to those we met with at the southern islands, though not so skillfully performed. They had not among them

either flutes or reeds, and the only two musical instruments, seen by us, were of an exceeding rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant; the upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers; and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, accompanied with two sticks, whereon one of our gentlemen saw a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure; beating with his foot, at the same time, upon the hollow vessel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune, that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect: They have great numbers of small polished rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musquet, with a tuft of long dogs hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a smart stroke, till it was brought into an horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot, on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whet-stone, shaped somewhat like a cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls  
made

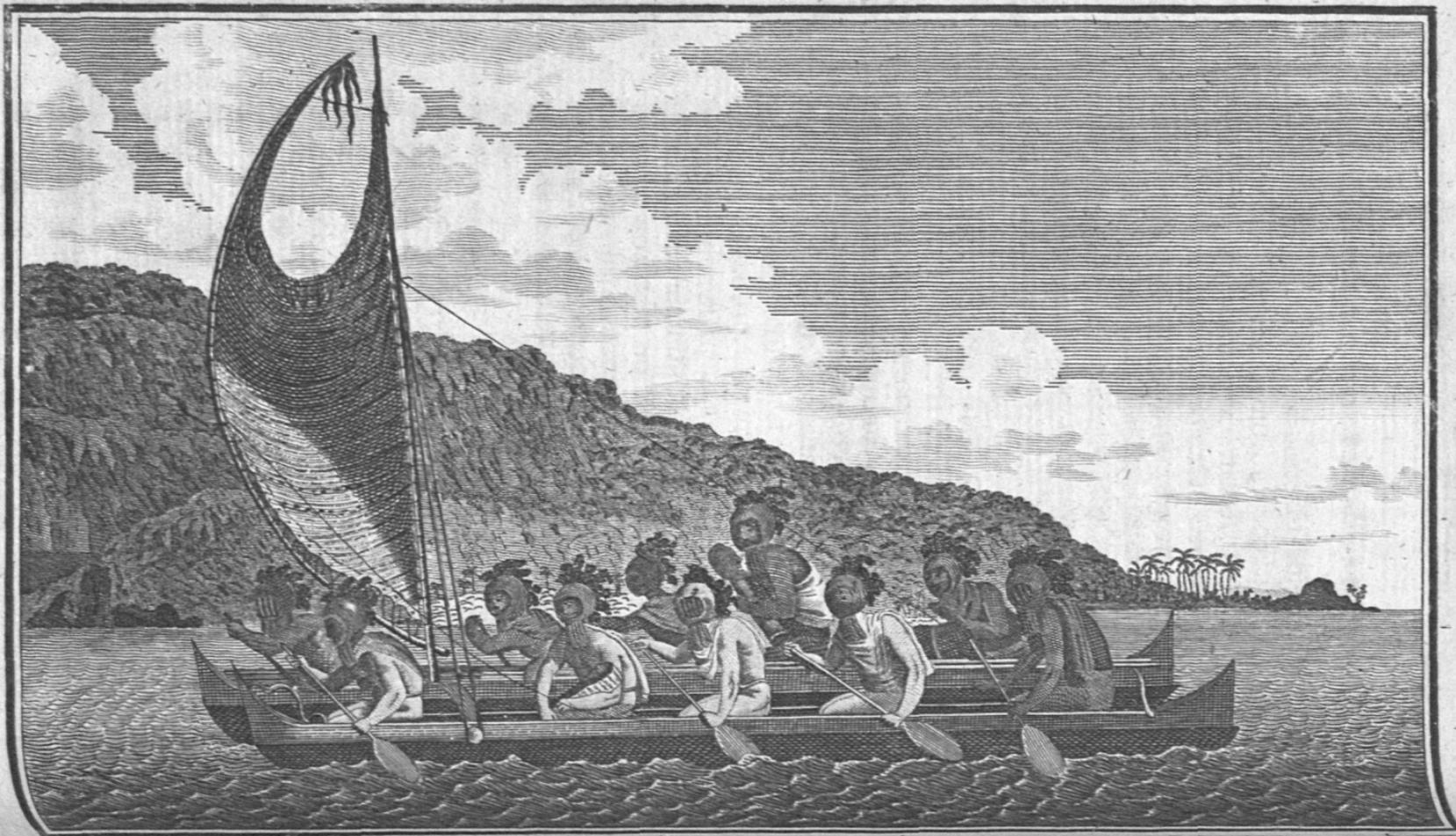
made of a reddish-brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a dark-grey coarse slate. They also use as quoits, small, flat, roundish pieces of writing slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

As to the manufactures of these people, they discover an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and, doubtless, in the same manner, as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but, in colouring or staining it, the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours, indeed, are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing, for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints, to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, besides the variety of variegated sorts, they have some pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light blue, and dark brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for the common dress, or *maro*; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin, and greatly resembles oil-cloth, and which is either oiled, or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, make, occasionally, a part of their dress, for when they offered them to sale they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain

plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon. They stain their gourd-shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing, for some of their stained gourd-shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and, on other occasions, they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their ava, are of the etooa tree, extremely neat and well polished. They likewise make small square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair and cocoa-nut fibres, intermixed. Their fishing hooks are ingeniously made, some of bone, many of pearl-shell, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces, and the various sorts have a baibe, either on the inside, like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone, the elegant form and polish of which could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones by constant friction, with pumice-stone in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the southern islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the same pattern, formed either of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore-part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle of a similar shape; and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. These serve occasionally as knives, and are probably used in carving. The only iron tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of

of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edge-tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine, that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprize which they testified on seeing our ships, and their perfect ignorance of the use of fire arms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There are several means by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. We doubt not, that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean, till Magellan led the way into it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their possession; though, in the course of our late voyages, it has been remarked, that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessels had ever, to our knowledge, visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would, doubtless, extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands, with which the people, whom he visited, had an immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried farther, and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descriptions might, in some degree, serve to make it known afterwards, when seen. The next voyage to the southward of the Equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the island of handsome people, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo, at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded, in this navigation, Le  
Maire,

Maire, and Schouten, whose connections with the natives began much farther to the eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn islands. It is certain, that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society isles, had a knowledge of iron, and purchased it with the greatest avidity, when Captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbouring islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation, before the arrival of Captain Willis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had gained possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them to his neighbours, for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society Isles, whom we found at Wateoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their knowledge of this useful metal. From the people of Wateoo, again, those of Harvey's island might derive that inclination for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them. The consideration of these facts will shew how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands that have never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may easily be imagined, that, wherever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these particulars, to the object of our present consideration, is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Oneeheow, without having ever been visited by Europeans before us, might have received  
 this



this metal from intermediate islands, situated between them and the Ladrones, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the period of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the distant western position of the Ladrones, should detract from the probability of this solution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half, during which long space of time shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed surprizing, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should, by the easterly trade winds, be occasionally cast upon some of those islands that are scattered about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America is no argument against this supposition; and even if it were, it would destroy it. This ocean is annually traversed by Spanish vessels, and it is highly probable that, besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall, or be thrown, overboard, during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures, for one of Captain Cook's people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir: it was worm eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own express authority, that they had obtained, from some place to the eastward, the specimens of iron found among them. From this digression (if it can justly be called one) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi.

The canoes of these people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch, or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, neatly fitted and lashed

to the bottom. The extremities both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly; so that the two side boards join each other, side by side, for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had seen before. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had observed at other islands, and some of them have a light triangular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing tackle, are strong and neatly made. They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is one continued plantation of taro, and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and spots of sugar-cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity; but neither these, nor the others, are enclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such, which, it is more than probable, are designed to convey water to the taro. The abundance and excellence of these articles may, perhaps, be as much owing to skilful culture, as the natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapted to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees; the few of these latter we saw, not being in a thriving state: and yet, notwithstanding this skill in agriculture, the island, from its general appearance seemed to be capable of more extensive improvement, and of maintaining twice as many inhabitants as are now upon it; for those parts that now lay waste are, apparently, as good a soil, as those that are cultivated. Hence we cannot but conclude, that these people do not increase in that proportion, which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island,

towards

towards raising a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

During our stay in these parts, we did not see one chief of any note; but we were informed by the islanders, that several at Atooi have their residence, to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration appeared similar to the *moe moea*, paid to the chiefs at the Friendly Islands, and is here denominated *hamoea*, or *moe*. After we had left the island, one of these great men visited Captain Clerke, going off to the Discovery, in his double canoe, and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them: nor was it possible for the poor people to avoid him, it being a necessary mark of their submission, that they should lie down till he had passed. He was assisted in getting on board the Discovery by his attendants, who placed him in the gang-way, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands, nor would they suffer any one but Captain Clerke to approach him. He was a young man, apparelled from head to foot. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received, in return, a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving whereof displayed a degree of skill, both with respect to the design and execution. This bowl used to be filled with kava, or, in the language of Otaheite, *ava*, which is prepared and drank here, as at the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him. After remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The next day several messages were sent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on shore, and giving

ing him to understand, that the chief had prepared a considerable present on the occasion; but the captain being anxious to get out to sea; and join the *Resolution*, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

Our imperfect intercourse with the natives did not enable us to form an accurate judgment of the form of government established among them; but from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred, from the number of weapons we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of *Onecheow* and *Oreehoua*.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have another kind of weapon, which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length, sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, both from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned,

tioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners: its edges are surrounded with shark's teeth, strongly fixed to it, and pointed outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, and this they wrap several times round the wrist. We are of opinion that, on some occasions, they use slings, for we procured some pieces of the hæmatites, or blood-stone, made artificially of an oval form, divided longitudinally, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this the person who had one of them applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weighed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whetstone neatly polished, of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end, nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by Captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made use of there in slings.

Some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people, and of the natives of the Friendly and the Society Islands. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities. The Otahiteans do not inter their dead, but expose them to waste and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and this being their custom, it is remarkable, that they should inter the bodies of their human sacrifices. They are far from being attentive to the condition of the places, where they celebrate their solemn rites; most of their mo-

rais being in a ruinous state, and shewing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi resemble also those of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods. The taboo likewise prevails in Atooi in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness, than even at Tongataboo: for the natives always asked here, with great eagerness, and with indications of fear of offending, whether any particular thing, which they desired to see, was taboo, or, as they pronounced the word, tafoo? The *niaia raä*, or prohibited articles, at the Society Islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead, respecting whom we thought they were more superstitious than any others we had been conversant with. But whatever resemblance we might discover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi, and those of Otaheite, these were less striking than the similarity of language.

The languages of both places may indeed be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New-Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it, which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and they have not only adopted the whole idiom of their language, but the same measure and cadence in their songs. It is true, at first hearing, a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by using the most common, and even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those  
among

among us, who had made the greatest progress in the knowledge of their tongue.

Had the Sandwich Islands been discovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between the Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almost midway between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrones, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and to touch at them would not be a week's sail out of their ordinary rout. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our buccaners, who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrones, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ships are obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!

At these islands, the tides are so inconsiderable, that with a great surf breaking against the shore, it was difficult, at all times, to determine whether we had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the south side of Atooi, a current generally set to the westward, or north-westward: but when we were at anchor off Oneecheow, we found a current setting nearly N. W. and S. E. six hours each way. This was doubtless a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the N. W.

The longitude of Sandwich Islands, was determined by 72 sets of lunar observations; some of which were made while we were at anchor, in the  
road

road of Wymoa; others, before we arrived and after we had left it, and reduced to it, by the watch or time-keeper. By the mean result of the observations, the longitude of the road is 200 deg. 13 min. E. and the latitude, by the mean of two meridian observations of the sun 21 deg. 56 min. 15 sec. N. We now return to the progress of our voyage.

On Monday, the 2nd of February, the Discovery having joined us, we stood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the E. On the 7th we were in the latitude of 29 deg. N. longitude 200 deg. E. the wind having veered to the S. E. which enabled us to steer N. E. and E. This course we continued to the 12th, when the wind having changed, we tacked, and stood to the northward, in latitude 30 deg. N. longitude 206 deg. 15 min. E. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, we had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun, at all times, to 30 deg. on each side the line. After that, the disproportion is known to be very great. This must be attributed principally to the direction of the sun's rays, independent of the bare distance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thursday the 19th, being in latitude 37 deg. N. longitude 206 deg. E. the wind veered to the S. E. and we were again enabled to steer to the E. inclining to the N. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of 42 deg. 30 min. longitude 219 deg. when we began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage, by the name of the sea-leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships. Since we left Sandwich Islands, we had scarcely beheld a bird, or any other oceanic animal.

On Sunday, the 1st of March, in latitude 44 deg. 49 min. N. and in longitude 228 deg. E. we had moderate and mild weather, which appeared to us very extraordinary, when we were so far N. and so  
near

near an extensive continent, at this time of the year. Another singular circumstance is, that we should meet with so few birds, compared to those we saw in the same latitudes, to the S. of the line. Hence we may conclude, that, in the southern hemisphere, beyond 40 deg. the species are much more numerous, and the islands more plentifully scattered, than any where near that latitude, between the coast of California and Japan. On the morning of the 2nd, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and small sea animals. When they swam about, which they did with ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position, respecting the light. Some of them were taken up and put into a glass of salt water, when, at one time, they appeared pellucid, at another displaying the various tints of blue, from a pale saphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with sufficient strength to illuminate the glass of water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light, the tints appeared most vivid; but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, and they had then a brownish appearance. By candle-light, the colour was, principally, a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burnished gloss: and, in the dark, it faintly exhibited a glowing fire. They are a new species of *Oniscus*, called by Mr. Anderson, *Oniscus fulgens*, and supposed to be an animal which contributes to that lucid appearance often observed at sea in the night.

On Friday the 6th, at noon, in latitude 44 deg. N. longitude 234 deg. 30 min. E. we saw two seals, and several whales; and on the 7th, early in the morning, the long expected coast of New Albion, so named by Sir Francis Drake, was descried, at the distance of ten leagues, extending from N. E. to S. E. At noon we were in latitude 44 deg. 33 min. N. longitude 235 deg. 20 min. E. and the land about eight leagues distant. This formed a point at  
the

the northern extreme, which our commodore named Cape Foulweather, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with. After several attempts attended with many difficulties, on Monday the 9th, we tacked, and stood in again for the land; but the wind continually shifting, and blowing in squalls, with hail and sleet, obliged us to stand off and on, without seeing the least sign of a harbour. The land which we approached on our different tacks, is moderately high, but, in many places, it rises still higher within. It is diversified with hills and rising grounds, many of which are covered with tall straight trees; and others, not so high, grew in spots, like clumps, but the spaces between, and the sides of the rising grounds were clear. Such a prospect in summer might be very agreeable; but at this season, it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coast being covered with snow, which seemed to lie in abundance between the hills and rising grounds, and in many places, towards the sea, had, at a distance, the appearance of white cliffs. On the rising grounds, the snow was thinner spread; and farther in land, there seemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the snow which we had seen towards the sea, had fallen the preceding night; which was, indeed, the coldest we had experienced since our arrival on that coast; a kind of sleet fell sometimes; and the weather became very unsettled. The coast appeared almost straight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of sandy beach; though it was imagined by some on board, that such appearance was owing to the snow. Each extreme of the land shot out into a point; the northern one was that which we had seen on the 7th, and therefore the captain called it Cape Perpetua. Its latitude is 44 deg. 6 min. N. and its longitude 235 deg. 52 min. E. The southern extreme was named Cape Gregory.

Gregory. It lies in the latitude of 43 deg. 30 min. N. and in the longitude of 235 deg. 57 min. E. At five o'clock the wind veered to the W. and S. W. which induced us once more to stand out to sea. At this time Cape Perpetua bore N. E. by N. and the farthest land to the S. of Cape Gregory S. by E. distant about ten or twelve leagues: consequently, its latitude is 43 deg. 10 min. and its longitude 235 deg. 55 min. E. This is nearly the situation of Cape Blanco, discovered the 19th of January. 1603, by Martin d'Aguilar. It is remarkable that in this very latitude, geographers have placed a large entrance or strait, ascribing the discovery of it to the same navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage, than his having discovered a large river in this situation, which he would have entered, but was hindered by the currents.

The wind being now very unsettled, blowing in squalls, attended with snow showers, we were obliged to stretch to the southward to get clear of the coast. On Friday, the 13th, the gale abated, and we stood in again for land. On Saturday, the 21st in the morning, a breeze sprung up at S. W. This being attended with fair weather, we steered north-easterly; and on the 22nd, about eight o'clock A. M. we came in sight of land, distant about nine leagues, being now in latitude 47 deg. 5 min. N. and our longitude 235 deg. 10 min. E. At length we perceived a small opening between what we supposed to be an island, and the northern extreme of the land: here we expected to find a harbour; but our hopes vanished as we drew nearer; and, we were soon convinced, that the opening was closed by low land. Our disappointment occasioned the point of land, to the north, to be named Cape Flattery. Its latitude is 48 deg. 15 min. N. and its longitude 235 deg. 3 min. E. In this latitude geographers have placed the pretended strait of

Juan de Fuca. But nothing of that kind presented itself to our view, nor is it probable that any such thing ever existed.

On Sunday, the 29th, we were in latitude 49 deg. 29 min. N. and in the longitude of 232 deg. 29 min. E. when we again saw land, the nearest part six leagues distant. A low point is formed, at the S. E. extreme, off which are several breakers, on account of which it was called Point Breakers. Its latitude is 49 deg. 15 min. N. and its longitude 233 deg. 20 min. E. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50 deg. and the longitude 232 deg. This last was named Woody Point. Between these two points, a large bay is formed, which the captain called Hope Bay; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As we approached the coast, we saw the appearance of two inlets; one of which was in the N. W. and the other in the N. E. corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from the shore. As we advanced, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. At five o'clock we reached the west point of it; and soon after a breeze sprung up at N. W. with which we stretched into an arm of the inlet, running in to the N. E. Here we were becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms water, and so near the shore as to be able to reach it with a hawser. The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in 75 fathoms.

At the place where we were first becalmed, three canoes came off to the ship, in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of them, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed, by his gestures to go ashore; and, at the same time, continued throwing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions  
also

also threw a red powder in the same manner. One, in particular, sung a most agreeable air, accompanied with a melodious softness. The word *haela* was repeated frequently as the burden of the song. Soon after a breeze springing up brought us closer to the shore, when the canoes came to visit us in great numbers; having, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. One attracted particularly our notice, by its having a peculiar head, with a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak, painted upon it. The chief who was in it, appeared equally remarkable for his singular appearance; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before mentioned; and was equally vociferous in his harangue, which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Not any of these visitors could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but they were very solicitous after iron, and appeared to be no strangers to that valuable metal.

Having found such excellent shelter for our ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, we lost no time, after coming to anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where we might be stationed during our continuance in the sound. Upon this service three armed boats were sent; and on the N. W. of the arm, at a small distance from the ships, we found a convenient cove: but apprehending we could not transport our ships to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken us, we thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morn-

ing. The whole day we were furrounded with plenty of canoes; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals, such as bears, sea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced a kind of cloathing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp: besides which articles, they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors, representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen stuff; carved work; beads; and red ochre; also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron resembling an horse-shoe, which they wear pendant at their noses. However, among all the articles which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them; which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been on the fire. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange knives, chiffels, nails, looking glasses, buttons, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination for beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

On Tuesday, the 31st, we were employed in hauling the ships into the cove, where they were moored. The Resolution was now become very leaky in her upper works; on which account the carpenters were ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover. In the course of this day, the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing less than three; many having seven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which we discovered

discovered by their orations and ceremonies. If they, at first, had apprehended that we meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. We discovered, however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage; and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope. They stripped our boats of every piece of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, so dextrous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while his confederate was forcing off the iron work at the other. If an article that had been stolen, was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other: but the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be used in order to regain it.

Wednesday, April the 1st, having safely moored our ships, we proceeded to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed on a rock, on one side of the cove. A party of men was stationed to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce-beer. The forge was also erected to make the necessary iron-work for repairing the foremast. We were daily visited by a considerable number of new comers, who had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance, by paddling, with their utmost strength and activity, round both the ships, while a chief, standing up with a spear in his hand, bawled

most vociferously all the time. The face of this orator was sometimes covered with a mask, representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal; and, instead of a spear, he had a kind of rattle in his hand. Frequently, before they came along side, or on board our ship, they would entertain us with a song, in which their whole company joined. During these visits our principal care was to guard against their thievery.

But on Saturday, the 4th of April, we had a very serious alarm, for our party on shore perceived the natives in all quarters arming, and those who had not proper weapons were collecting sticks and stones. The captain, hearing this, ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock, whereon our observatories had been placed; thus leaving the supposed enemy in possession of the ground where they assembled, which was within about one hundred yards of our stern. We soon found, however, that these hostile preparations were directed against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them; and our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehensions, exerted their best endeavours to convince us, that this was really the case. The adverse party, on board about twelve large canoes, at length drew up in line of battle, off the south point of the cove. A negociation for the restoration of peace was now commenced; in the course of which several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted; but the strangers were not permitted to approach our ships. It is most likely we were the principal occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insisting on having a right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our first friends resolving to engross us entirely to themselves. We were convinced of this on many other occasions; nay, even among those who lived in the  
found,

found, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any resistance.

Sunday, the 5th, the carpenter discovered the cheeks of the foremast to be rotten, and began to supply it with new ones. It was fortunate that these defects should be discovered, when we were so commodiously situated, as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. On the 7th, while the fore-mast was repairing, the captain ordered a new set of main-rigging to be fitted. From our putting into the sound to this day, the weather had been remarkably fine; but in the morning of the 8th we had rain with a fresh gale, and in the evening it blew extremely hard: but though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration: yet we had the misfortune to have our mizen-mast give way at the head. About eight o'clock, the gale abated, but the rain continued, almost without intermission. During these squalls the natives frequently brought us small cod, small bream, or sardine, and a supply of other fish. Sunday the 12th, in the evening, we received a visit from a tribe of natives, whom we had not seen before, and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. When conducted into the cabin, there was not an object that fixed their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who shewed a certain degree of curiosity. On Thursday the 16th, when our carpenters had made a considerable progress on the mizen-mast, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work, was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which work all hands were employed about half a day. During this operation, many of the natives were gazing on  
with

with an inexpressible surprize; which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. On Saturday, the 18th, a party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove, and after looking at us for some time, retired. We concluded, that our old friends would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes, in those articles they had received from us; for they frequently disappeared four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins. Such of them as visited us daily, after having disposed of their trifles, employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught: we also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with oil; and once or twice they so far imposed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. In exchange for their articles of traffic, metal was generally demanded by our visitors; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after, with such eagerness, that before we left the sound, scarcely a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what constituted a part of our necessary instruments: suits of cloaths were stripped of their buttons; bureaux of their furniture; kettles, cannisters, and candlesticks, all went to rack; so that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things, than any other nation we had visited.

On Sunday, the 19th, most of our work being now finished, Captain Cook set out the next morning to survey the sound. Proceeding first to the west point, we discovered a large village, and, before it a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water. The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, and to many of whom the  
 commodore

commodore was no stranger, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He accepted politely the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom we visited, testified every mark of civility and respect. In many of these habitations women were employed, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the natives of New Zealand; others were busy in opening sardines; large shoals of which we have seen brought on shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them: this is done by smoke-drying. They are hung upon small rods; at first, about a foot over the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till wanted, and are not unpleasant food. They also cure cod, and other large fish in the same manner; but these are sometimes dried in the open air. Leaving this village, we proceeded up the west side of the sound. For near three miles we saw several small islands, so situated as to form some convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seven fathoms. About two leagues within the sound, on the same side, an arm runs in the direction of N. N. W. and another in the same direction about two miles farther. About a mile above the second arm we found the ruins of a village, The framings of the houses remained standing, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees we had ever seen. This was singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side the sound appeared rather naked. Passing from hence to the east side, we observed, what we had before imagined, that it was an island, under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scat-

tered about on the west side of it. Upon the main land, opposite the north end of our island, we saw a village, and landed there, but our commodore was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer him to enter their houses, making expressive signs, that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook endeavoured in vain to soothe him with presents; these he did not refuse, though he continued the same kind of behaviour. But, notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women expeditiously appared themselves in their best habiliments, assembled in a body, and, joining in an agreeable song, gave us a hearty welcome. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook proposed returning, and we proceeded for the ships round the north end of the island. When returned aboard, we were informed, that in our absence some strangers from the S. E. had visited our people in the ships, who purchased of them two silver table spoons, that appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of those visitors by way of ornament.

Wednesday, the 22<sup>d</sup>, about eight o'clock, A. M. we were visited by a number of strangers from the southward. After their departure the two captains, Cook, and Clerke, went in their own boats to the village at the west point, where our commodore had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply of this, for the few remaining goats and sheep that were still on board. We received the same welcome reception as before, and our commodore ordered some of the people to begin cutting: not imagining the natives would object to our furnishing ourselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially necessary for us.

In

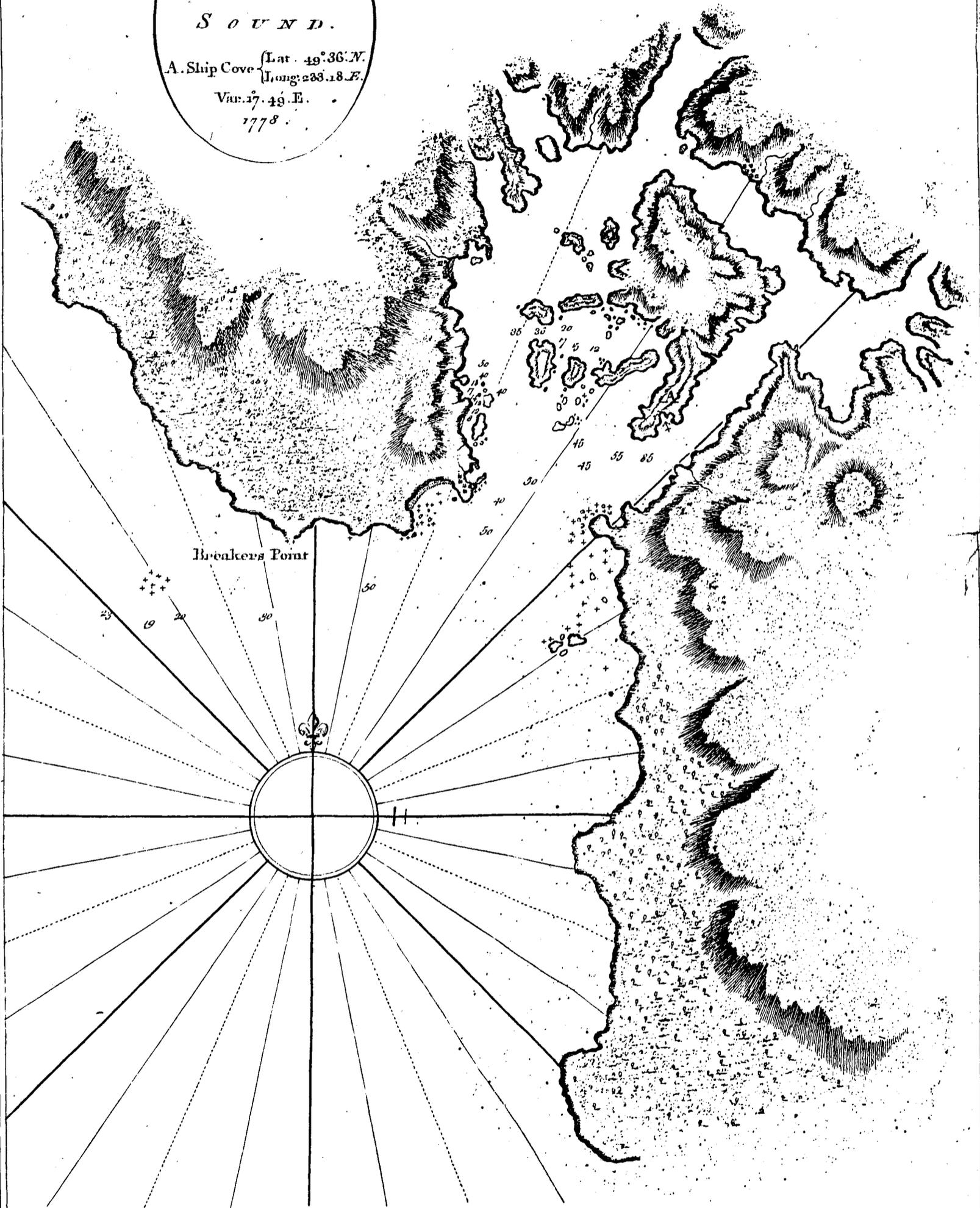
In this, however, we were mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grass, some of the inhabitants would not permit them to proceed, saying, "Makook," signifying, that we must buy them first. During this event, Captain Cook was in one of the houses, but, hearing of it, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about us, a dozen claimants of different parts of the grass, that grew on the premises. The commodore treated with them for it, and having complied with the terms of his purchase, thought we had now full liberty to cut whatever we pleased. Here he was again mistaken; for he had so liberally paid the first pretended proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others, so that every single blade of grass might have had a separate owner; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets presently became empty. When they were convinced of this last striking circumstance, they ceased to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we thought proper, and as much as we pleased. Here it is worthy of observation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this found. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried aboard. Had Captain Cook been present when these demands were made, he would doubtless have complied with them; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to such claims. The natives thinking we were determined to pay not the least consideration, at length ceased to apply for the same: but they frequently took occasion to remind us, that their esteem for us had induced them to make us a present of wood and water. Having completed all their operations at this village, the natives and the two captains took

a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ships in the afternoon.

The 23d, 24th, and 25th, were employed in preparing for sea; the sails were bent; the observatories and other articles were removed from the shore; and both ships put into proper condition for sailing. On Sunday the 26th, the commodore intended to have set sail, but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon, when the tide turning in our favour, the ships were towed out of the cove. At four o'clock, P. M. the mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward: but the captain's anxiety to prosecute the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea. We were attended by the natives till we were almost out of the sound; some in their canoes, and others on board the ships. One of the chiefs who had particularly attached himself to Captain Cook, was among the last who parted from us. The captain, a little time before we got under way, made him a small present; for which he received, in return, a beaver skin of much superior value. For this reason the captain made an addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the commodore the beaver-skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond. Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a sufferer by his gratitude, Captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new broad-sword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit; who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins. Before we continue the progress of  
our

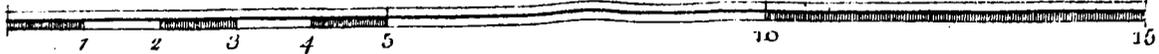
S K E T C H  
o f  
N . O O T K A  
S O U N D .

A. Ship Cove { Lat. 49° 36' N.  
                  { Long. 233. 18' E.  
                  { Var. 17. 49' E.  
                  { 1778 .



Breakers Point

Nautic Miles.



T. Bowen sculp.

our voyage, we think it may be no small entertainment to our readers, to comprise in the remainder of this chapter further particulars relative to the country and its inhabitants.

The inlet in which our ships were moored is called by the natives Nootka, but Captain Cook gave it the name of King George's Sound. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay, in latitude 49 deg. 33 min. N. longitude 233 deg. 12 min. E. The east coast is covered by a chain of sunken rocks, and, near the sound, are some islands and rocks above water. We enter the sound between two rocky points, lying E. S. E. and W. N. W. from each other, distant four miles. The sound widens within these points, and extends to the northward at least four leagues. In the middle of it are a number of islands of various sizes. The depth of water, not only in the middle of the sound, but also close to some parts of the shore, is from 47 to 90 fathoms or more. Within its circuit, the harbours and anchoring places are numerous. The cove, where our ships anchored, is on the east side of the sound, and also on the east of the largest island. Its principal recommendation is that of being covered from the sea; for it is exposed to the S. E. winds, which sometimes blow with great violence. Upon the sea coast, the land is tolerably high; but, within the sound, it rises into steep hills, which have a uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on their sides. Many of these hills are high; all, of them are covered to their summits with the thickest woods. The soil upon them is produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are nothing more than stupendous rocks; of a grey or whitish cast when exposed to the weather; but, when broken, are of a bluish grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the sound are composed of fragments of it.

The

The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. We perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but, on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for, at this time, we saw grass upwards of a foot long. The trees of which the woods are composed are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance. At a distance they resemble each other; but they are easily distinguished on a nearer view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. About the rocks and borders of the woods, we saw some strawberry plants, raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state. We found also a few black alder-trees; a species of sow-thistle; some crows-foot with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of anthericum. We met with some wild rose-bushes, just budding; some young leeks; a small sort of grass, and some water-creffles; besides a great abundance of andromeda. The season of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and being in a cove, on an island, all the animals that we saw alive were two or three racoons, martins; squirrels; and some of our people who landed on the continent, on the south-east side of the sound, observed the prints of a bear's feet, not far from the shore; but we could only judge of the quadrupeds from the skins purchased of the inhabitants, and these were sometimes so mutilated, that we could not even guess to what species of animals they belonged, though others were so perfect as not to admit a doubt about them. The most common of these last sorts were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-skins are in abundance, but not very large; their colour is generally a shining black. The deer-skins are not so plentiful, and appear to belong

belong to what the inhabitants of North-Carolina in America, call the fallow-deer; but Mr. Millar, in his New System of Natural History distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different species from ours. Our very numerous friends and subscribers will not be displeas'd if we here give a decisive opinion in favour of that Entire New, Cheap, and Capital Work, MILLAR'S REAL NEW BODY OF NATURAL HISTORY, to be compleated in sixty weekly numbers, price only sixpence each, and now publishing with universal approbation, may be said, without the least particle of flattery, to be far superior to every other publication of the kind. May merit alone ever have the preference and encouragement, with the unprejudic'd and disinterested public, is our sincere and hearty wish! But to proceed. The foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others of a reddish yellow, intermixed with black. We met with an entire wolf's skin, which was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine in this country is small, and not very common: nor is its hair remarkably fine. The animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are of the common species, but not so large as in other parts of the world. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place.

The sea animals seen off the coast were whales, porpoises, and seals; the last of these seem only of the common sort. Though sea-otters are amphibious, yet we may consider them as belonging to this class, as living principally in the water. The fur of these animals, as mentioned in the Russian accounts, is certainly softer and finer than that of any other animals known by the Europeans; consequently the discovery of this part of the continent.

ment of North-America, where so valuable an article of commerce may be met with, cannot be a matter of indifference. Mr. Coxe, in his Russian Discoveries, on the authority of Mr. Pallas, says, that the old and middle-aged sea-otters skins are sold at Kiatchta, by the Russians, to the Chinese, from 80 to 100 rubles a skin, that is from 16l. to 20l. each.

The birds that frequent the waters and the shores are far from being numerous; they are very shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harrassed by the natives, either to eat, or for their feathers to be worn as ornaments. We met with humming birds, different in some respects from the various sorts already known of this delicate little animal. Shags and gulls are also frequent in the sound. Some swans too were seen flying to the northward, but we know not their haunts. Here are two sorts of wild ducks; one black, with a white head; the other white, with a red bill, but of a larger size: also the greater lumme, or diver, found in the northern parts of Europe. On the shores we found a sand-piper, not unlike the burre, a plover, resembling our common lark, and two kinds of wook-peckers, one smaller than a thrush, the other larger and more elegant.

Fish are more plentiful than birds. The principal sorts we found were the common herring, not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, of the same kind with the anchovy, though rather larger: a silver coloured bream, and another of a brown colour, with narrow blue stripes. Sharks sometimes frequent the sound, for the natives have some of their teeth in their possession. About the rocks there is an abundance of large muscles, many of a span long; in some of which are large pearls; but they are not pleasing either in colour or shape. Red coral is to be found either on the coast or in the sound, large branches of it having been seen in  
the

the canoes of the natives. The only reptiles observed here were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides; and brownish water lizards. The former are quite harmless. The insect tribe seem to be much more numerous.

We found here both iron and copper, but we do not think either of them belong to this place. We did not see the ores of any metals, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining their faces and bodies; they had also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose. Exclusive of the rock, which forms the shores and mountains, we found among the natives some things made of a hard black granite, not very compact, nor fine grained; also a greyish whetstone, the common oil stone, and a black sort, little inferior to the hone stone. They had likewise pieces of rock chrystal. We could not obtain this from them without a very valuable return.

As to the natives, their persons, in general, are under the common stature; usually pretty plump, but not muscular; the forehead low, the eyes small, black, and rather languishing than sparkling; the mouth round, with large, thick lips; the teeth tolerably equal and well set. Their eye-brows are also scanty, and always narrow: but the hair of the head is in great abundance, very coarse and strong; and, without a single exception, black, straight, and lank. Some have no beards; others only a thin one on the point of the chin; for they pluck it out elsewhere by the roots; and those who do not thus eradicate it, have not only considerable beards, on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachios, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely downward; whence we may conclude, that it is a mistaken notion, though espoused by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beards. The limbs, in all of them, are

are small in proportion to the other parts; besides they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ankles, and large feet, awkwardly shaped. Their colour could never be determined positively, as their bodies were intrusted with paint and dirt. The women are nearly of the same size with the men, from whom it is not easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural delicacies sufficient to render their persons agreeable. A certain sameness characterizes both sexes; dulness, and want of expression, being visibly portrayed in every visage. In common, their dress is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower one. Passing under the left arm, it is tied by tassels over the right shoulder. Sometimes they fasten the mantle round the waist with a girdle of coarse matting; over which is worn a small cloak of the same substance, fringed at the bottom, and reaching to the waist. They wear a cap, in shape of a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a bunch of leathern tassels, and having a string passing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off. Besides the above dress, which is common to both sexes, the men throw frequently over their other garments the skin of a bear, wolf, or sea-otter, with the hair outward, and tie it as a cloak, near the upper part, wearing it sometimes before, and sometimes behind. Was this dress kept clean, it would by no means be inelegant; but as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure. Their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours; a black, a  
brighter

*London: Published as the Act directs, by Alex.<sup>r</sup> Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N.<sup>o</sup> 16, Paternoster Row.*



MAN / NOOTKA SOUND. / WOMAN / NOOTKA SOUND

brighter red, or a white colour: the last of these gives them a ghastly appearance. Over the paint they strew the brown martial mica, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the septum of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the septum, so that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a black, broad, horny, shining substance. Round their ancles they wear frequently leathern thongs, or the sinews of animals curiously twisted. Besides these, their ordinary dresses, they have some that are used only when going forth to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Among these are the skins of bears or wolves, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ornamented ingeniously with various figures. They are worn separately, or over their common cloathing. The most usual head-dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles stuck in it, or entirely covered with small white feathers. At the same time the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of large gashes; or it is besmeared with a kind of fat or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work. The hair, sometimes, is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals,

with thread: others tie it behind, after the English fashion. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of the visors resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eye-brows; others represent the heads of birds, and various animals, such as deer, porpoises, wolves, &c. Such kind of representations exceed generally the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the mica, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. In these imaginary decorations, they sometimes run into greater excess, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion, or whether they are intended to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain. One of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war: It is a thick tanned leathern mantie, double, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the throat; part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is curiously painted, and is strong enough, as we understood from them, to resist even spears; so that it may be considered as their completest defensive armour. Though we cannot view these people without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely apparelled, yet when divested of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they seem to be of a quiet, phlegmatic disposition; though deficient in vivacity, to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious; but their gravity

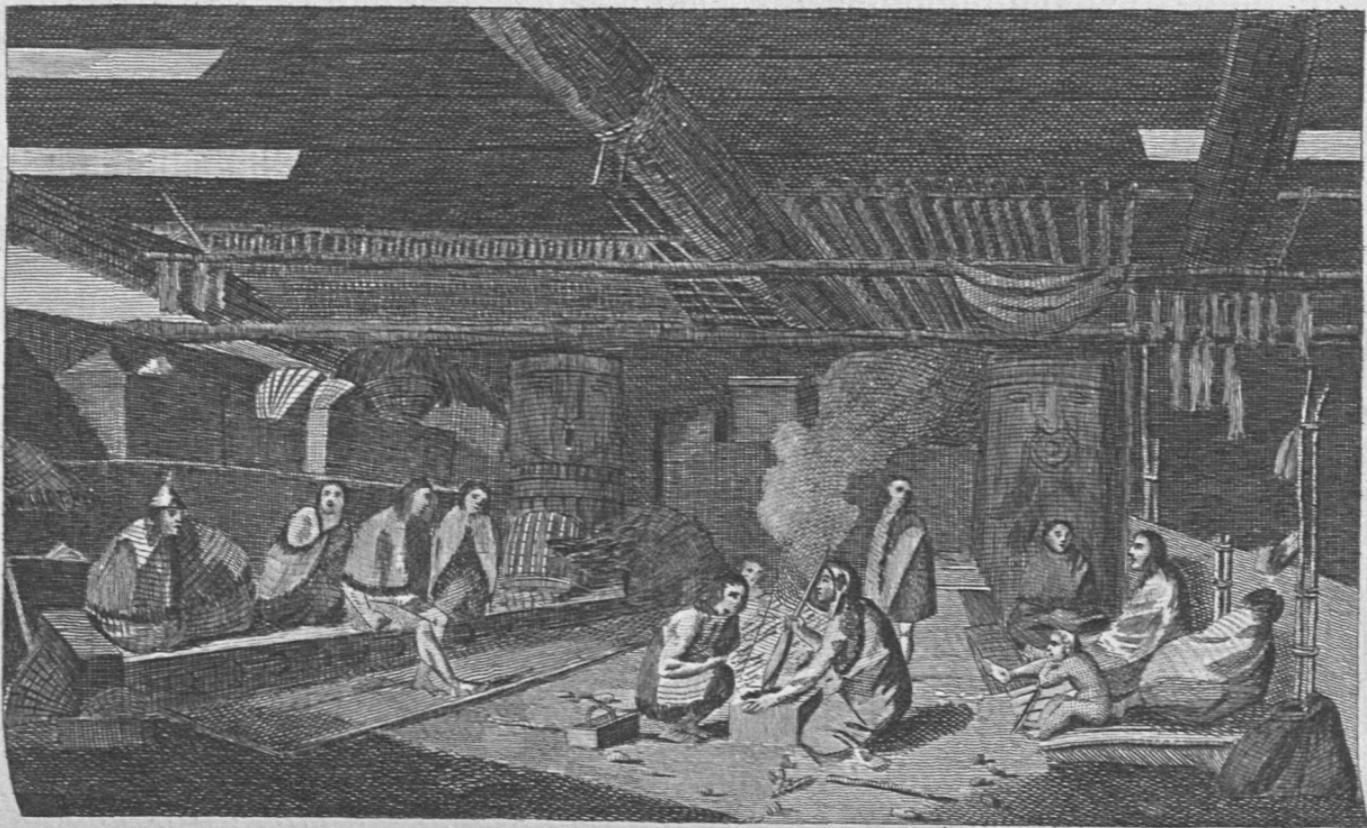
gravity seems constitutional, and not the result of any particular mode of education: for the orations made by them on public occasions, are little more than short sentences, or only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence. From their offering human skulls and bones to sale, there is not the least reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a savage cruelty; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. We had not any reason to judge unfavourably of their disposition in this respect: they appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but, notwithstanding their phlegmatic temper, they are quick in resenting injuries; yet, like all passionate people, they forget them quickly. It must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from their being fond of music, and that too of the pathetic kind.

Their songs are generally slow and solemn. Sonnets were sung by single performers, keeping time by striking the hand against the thigh. A rattle, and a small whistle, are the only instruments of music which we saw among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is employed, we know not, unless it be when they assume the figures of particular animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl or cry. We once saw one of these people dressed in the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The rattles are generally in the shape of a bird, with small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle. We observed another sort, which resembles a child's rattle.

In trafficking with us, some of them displayed a disposition to knavery; taking away our goods without making any return. But the instances of this were rare, and we had abundant reason to approve the integrity of their conduct. However, their eagerness to possess iron, brass, or any kind of metal, was so great, that when an opportunity presented itself, few of them could resist the temptation to steal it. The inhabitants of the South-sea islands in their petty larcenies were actuated by a childish disposition, rather than a thievish one. The novelty of the object excited their curiosity, and was a sufficient inducement for them to get possession of it by any means: but the natives of Nootka, who made free with our property, are entitled to no such apology. The appellation of thieves is certainly applicable to them; for they well knew that what they pilfered from us would be subservient to the private purposes of utility; and it was fortunate for us, that metals were the only articles upon which they set any value; but thefts are very common among themselves, producing continually quarrels, of which we saw several instances.

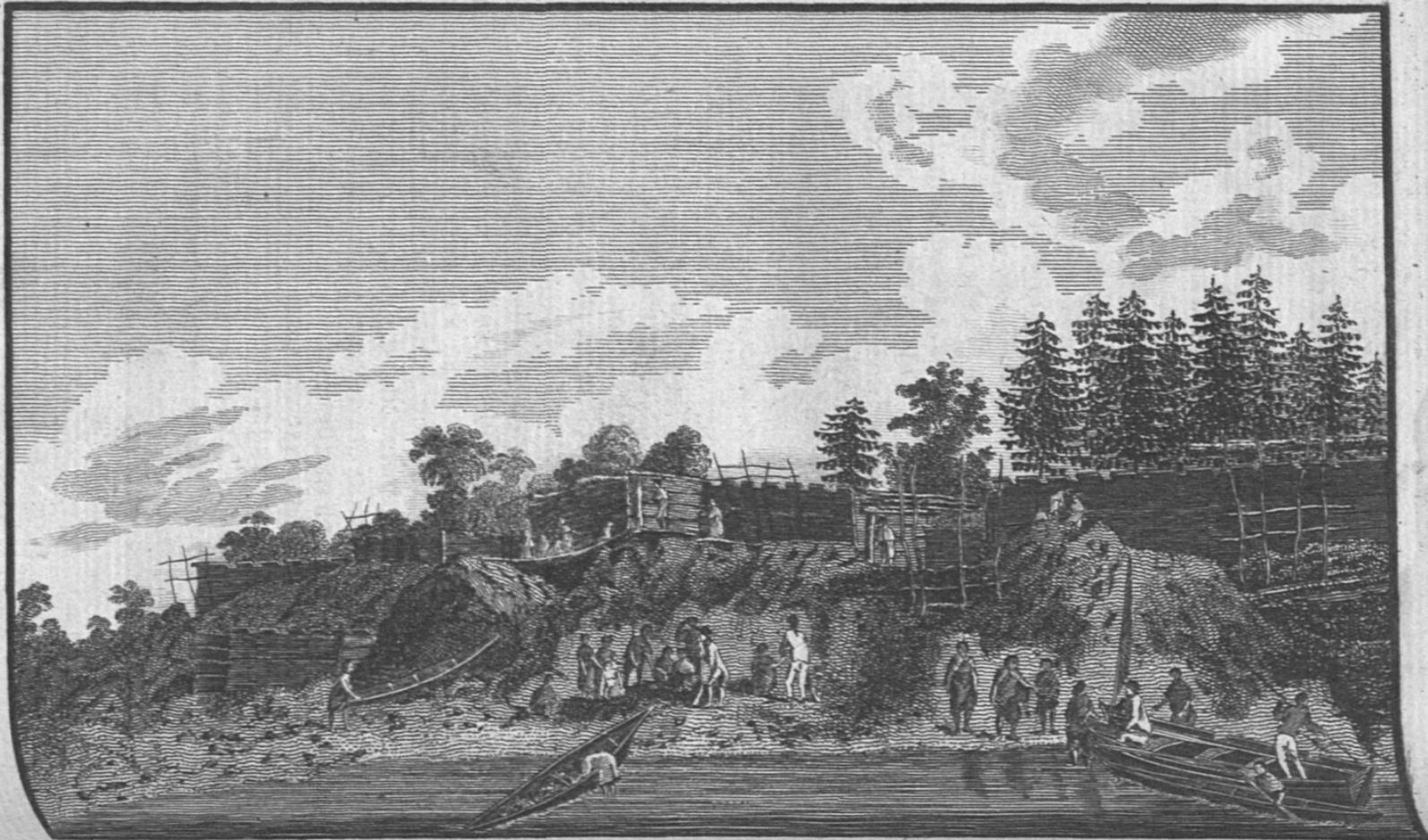
The two villages we visited are probably the only inhabited parts of the sound. The number of inhabitants may be computed from the canoes that visited our ships the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which upon an average, contained, at least, five persons each; but as there were very few women, children, or young men among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of souls in the two villages, could not be less than four times the number of our visitors, being in the whole two thousand. The village, situated at the entrance of the sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. There are holes, or windows, in the sides of the houses to look out at, having bits of mats hung before them, to prevent the rain getting

*London Published by Alac. Hogg at the Kings Arms, N.º 16 Paternoster Row.*



*The INSIDE of A HOUSE, in NOOTKA SOUND.*

*London Published by Alex. Hogg at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup> 6 Paternoster Row.*



*A View of the HABITATION*

getting in. Their houses, in the inside, may, with propriety, be compared to a long English stable with a double range of stalls, and a broad passage in the middle; for the different families are separated only by a piece of plank. Close to the sides, in each of these parts, is a bench of boards, raised five or six feet higher than the rest of the floor, and covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. These benches are commonly seven or eight feet long, and four or five broad. In the middle of the floor, between them, is the fire-place, which has neither hearth no chimney. This part appeared common to them all. The nastiness and stench of their houses are at least equal to the confusion within; for, as they dry their fish within doors, they also gut them there, which, with their bones and fragments, thrown down at meals, and the addition of other sorts of filth, lie every where in heaps, and are, it should seem, never carried away, till they become troublesome, from their size, to walk over them. In a word, their houses are as filthy as hogsties; every thing in, and about them, stinking of fish, train oil and smoke. Their furniture consists chiefly of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other, at the sides or ends of each house, wherein they deposit all their valuables, such as skins, garments, masks, &c. Many of these boxes are painted black, and studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely decorated with figures of birds carved. To complete the scene of confusion, in different parts of their habitations are hung up implements of fishing, and other articles. Among these we may reckon their images, which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of about four feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a ridiculous appearance. They are called

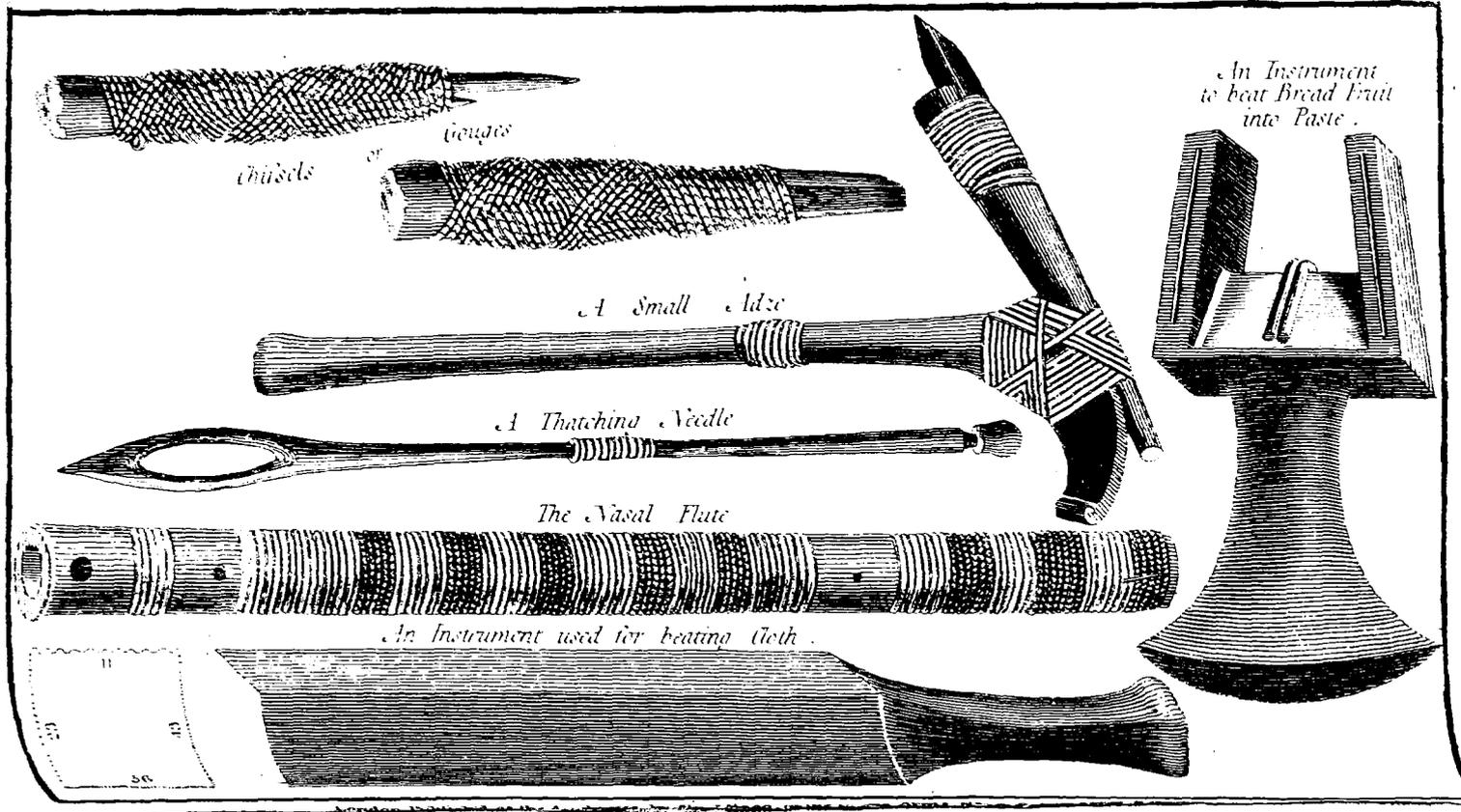
called generally Klumma. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before the images, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to remove; and when they did consent to unveil them, they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner; and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of estimation, seeing, with a small quantity of brass or iron, all the idols in the place might have been purchased. Mr. Webber, when drawing a view of the inside of the house, wherein those figures were placed, was interrupted in his work by one of the inhabitants. Mr. Webber, thinking a bribe would have a proper effect, presented to him a metal-button from his coat, which immediately operated as was intended: soon after he was again interrupted by the same man, who held a mat before the figures: our gentleman therefore gave him another button, and was again suffered to proceed. The man then renewed his former tricks, till Mr. Webber had parted with every single button; after which he received not any farther molestation.

As to the domestic life of these people, the men seem to be chiefly employed in fishing and killing animals, for the sustenance of their families, few of them being engaged in any household business; but the women were employed in manufacturing their garments; and in curing sardines, which they also carry from the canoes, to their houses. They also go in small canoes, to gather muscles, and other shell-fish. In the labour of the paddle they are as dextrous as the men, who shew them very little respect or attention on this, or any other occasion. But the young men are remarkably indolent, sitting generally about in scattered companies, basking in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach, like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the males; for the females were always clothed,

cloathed, and behaved with great propriety, meriting justly commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming that sex. In the women of this place, it is the more meritorious, as the men have not the least sense of shame. Both sexes pass much of their time in their canoes, especially in the summer; in which they eat, sleep, and frequently lie to bask themselves in the sun; for these purposes they are sufficiently spacious, and are, in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houses.

Though their food, strictly speaking, may be said to consist of every thing animal or vegetable that they can procure, yet the quantity of the latter bears an exceeding small proportion to that of the former. Their greatest reliance for food is upon the sea, as affording fish, muscles, smaller shell-fish, and sea-animals. Among the first are herrings, sardines, two species of bream, and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be dried and smoked as stores. The roes of these also, strewed upon the branches of the Canadian pine, or prepared upon a long sea-grass, afford them another grand resource for food. They also eat the roe of some other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste. The large muscles are found in great abundance in the sound. After having roasted them in their shells, they are stuck upon long wooden skewers, and taken off as they are wanted to be eaten. They require no other preparation, though they are sometimes dipped in oil, as sauce. The porpoise is a food more common among them, than that of any other animal in their sea; the flesh and rind of which they cut into large pieces, dry them as they do herrings, and eat them without farther preparation. They also make a sort of broth from the porpoise, when fresh, in a very singular manner. They put some pieces of it into a wooden vessel, containing a sufficient quantity of water, into which they

they throw heated stones. This operation is repeated till the contents are supposed to be stewed enough. This is a common dish among them, and seems to be a strong nourishing food. They likewise feed probably upon whales, seals, and sea-otters, the skins of the two latter being common among them, and they are furnished with implements of all sorts for their destruction, though perhaps they may not be able, at all seasons, to catch them in great plenty. However, from these, and other sea animals, they procure oil in great abundance, which they use, mixed with other food, as sauce; and often sip it alone with a kind of horn-scoop. Their fresh skins, at this time, were very scarce; as were the land animals; for we saw no flesh belonging to the latter; and, though their skins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured from other tribes. From these, and other circumstances, it plainly appeared to us, that these people are furnished with the principal part of their animal food by the sea; if we except a few gulls, and some other birds, which they shoot with their arrows. Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Canadian pine-branches, and sea-grass; but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come in season. The most common of these were two sorts of roots, of a mild sweetish taste, which are eaten raw; as is also a small, sweetish root, about the thickness of sarsaparilla. As the season advances, they have doubtless many others which we did not see: for, though there is not the least appearance of cultivation among them, there are plenty of elder, gooseberry, and currant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which they seem to require in all their food, is, that it should be of the less acrid kind; for they would not touch the leek or garlic, though they sold us great quantities of it, when they understood it was what we liked. They seem not to relish any of our food, and re-  
jected



Chisels or gouges

A Small Adze

A Thatching Needle

The Nasal Flute

An Instrument used for beating cloth

An Instrument to beat Bread Fruit into Paste

11  
10  
50

jected our spirituous liquors as disgusting and unnatural. It is their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their victuals, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal, being only swept away by a succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough, they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for though their knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the same means, though more cleanly and convenient. But they do not possess even an idea of cleanliness, and eat constantly the roots which are dug out of the ground, without attempting to shake off the soil that adheres to them. Whether they have any set time for their meals we never could find out, having seen them eat at all hours in their canoes. But having observed several messes of porpoise broth preparing about noon, when we went to the village, they may probably make a principal meal about that time.

These people have bows, and arrows, spears, slings, short truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe, somewhat resembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone: the spear has usually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of the length of seven or eight inches, one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed in a wooden handle. This is intended to resemble the head and neck of a human figure; the stone being fixed in the mouth so as to represent a tongue of a great magnitude. To heighten the resemblance,

human hair is fixed to it. This weapon is called *taaweesli*; and they have another made of stone, which they call *seeaik*, about ten or twelve inches long, having a square point. From the number of their weapons it may be reasonably concluded, that they engage frequently in close combat; and we had very disagreeable proofs of their wars being both frequent and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that were offered to us for sale.

With respect to the design and execution of their manufactures, and mechanic arts, they are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly be expected from the natural disposition of the people, and the little progress they have made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a mass resembling hemp. After having been prepared in a proper manner, it is spread upon a stick, fastened to two others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small plaited threads. Though it cannot, by this method, be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable. Their woollen garments have much the appearance of woven cloth; but the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them; it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work, except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities; some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets; and others not much inferior to our finest sort, and certainly both softer and warmer. The wool of which they are manufactured, seems to be procured from different

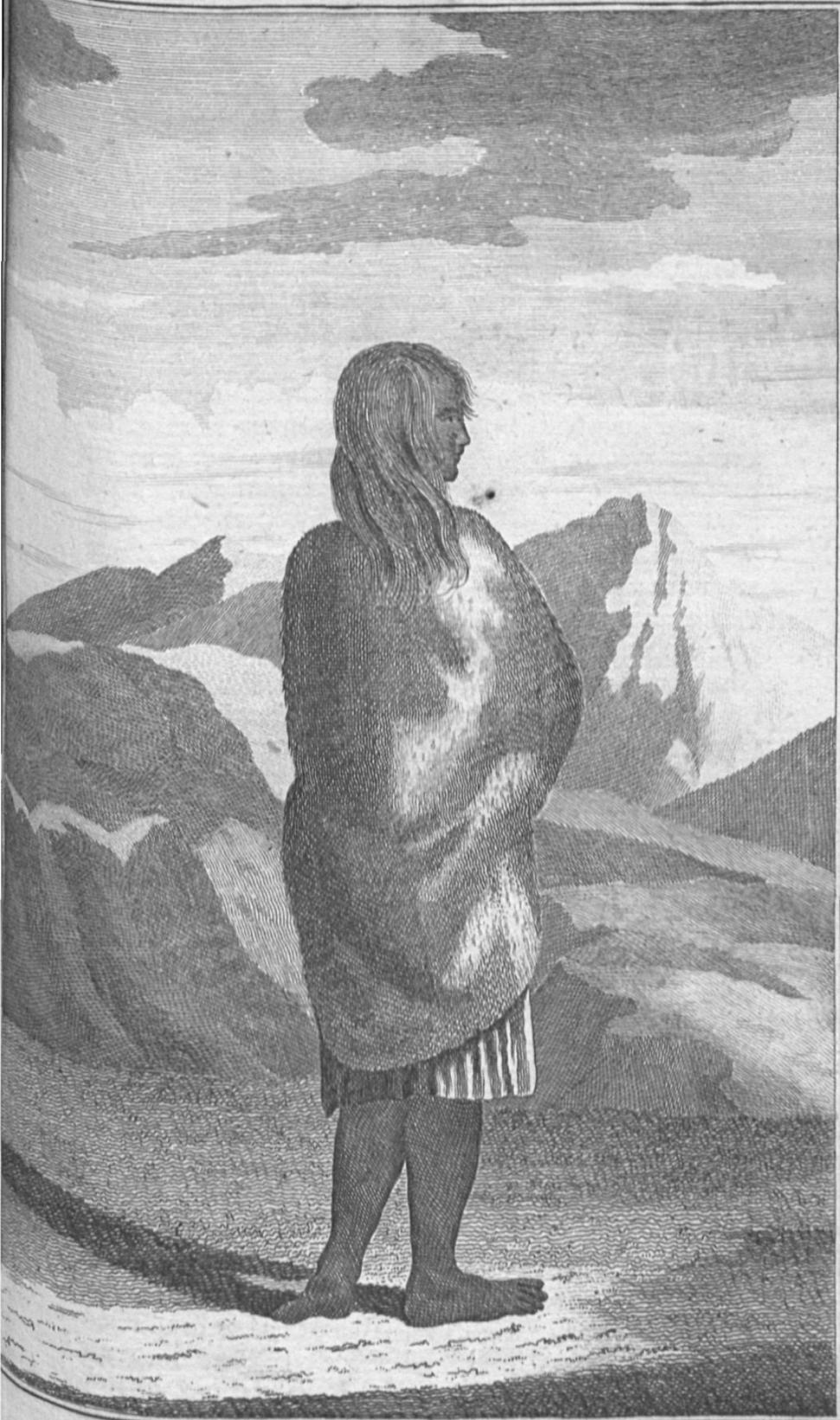
ferent animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx. That from the lynx is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarser wools in colour; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, causes the appearance to be somewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown, or a yellow; the latter of which, when new, equals in brightness, the most vivid in our best carpets.

Their taste for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with that of working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most common one is that of the human face. The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent; and in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they prove themselves to be ingenious sculptors. They preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a fondness for works of this sort is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures, birds, beasts, fish, and models of household utensils, were found among them in a very great abundance. To their skill in the imitative arts, we may add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale-fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. The execution was indeed rude, but hereby we were convinced, that, though they have not the knowledge of letters among them, they have a notion of representing actions in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions.

The structure of their canoes is simple, yet they  
are

are well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest fort, which in each one will contain upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is 40 feet, the breadth 7, and the depth 3. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards the end, the stern ending, perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore-part stretches forwards, and upwards, and ends in a point, or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; but some have a little carving, and are studded with seal-teeth on the surface. They have neither seats, nor any other supporters, on the inside, except some small round sticks, about the size of a walking cane, placed across, about half the depth of a canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an outrigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a small leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrow in the shaft; the whole length being above five feet. By constant practice, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles; but they never make use of any sails.

In their employment of fishing and hunting, their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks, lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The last is about 20 feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch. The edges for about two thirds of its length, are set with sharp bone-teeth; the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they strike herrings, sardines, and other fish as come in shoals, which are taken either upon or in the teeth. Their hooks, made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, used in striking whales,  
and



A CALIFORNIAN WOMAN,  
*habited in the Skin of a Deer.*



An Indian of the Southern parts of CALIFORNIA returning from Fishing—and another on his Barklog.

and other sea animals, manifests evident contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muscle shell, and the point of the instrument are fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope is fastened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed so as to leave the shaft floating, as a buoy upon the water, when the animal is struck.

As to their manner of catching land animals, or killing them, we are strangers; but, it is probable that they shoot the smaller sorts with their arrows, and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their spears. Sometimes they decoy them, by covering themselves with their skins, and running upon all fours, at which sport they are remarkable nimble. For the same purposes the masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used.

Every particular of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance, of which they manufacture their mantles. The sinews were sometimes so remarkably long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The assistance they receive from iron tools contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron. One chissel indeed we saw made of bone. This consists of a flat long piece, fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher. Some of these chissels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth; but they were, in general, considerably smaller. The chissel and the knife are the principal forms that iron assumes among them. Some of their knives are very large, having crooked blades; the edge being on the back, or convex part. They are sharpened upon a coarse slate whetstone, and kept

kept continually bright. What we saw among them, were about the breadth and thickness of an iron hoop; and their singular form plainly proves, that they are not of European make. Iron is called by the natives *seckemaile*, a name which they also give to tin, and other white metals. It being so common among these people, we were anxious to discover how it could be conveyed to them. On our arrival in the sound, we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it; and we were afterwards convinced, that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with strangers; but with whom they carried on this traffic we could not learn; for though we saw several articles of European manufacture, such as brass and iron, yet it does not follow, that they were received from European nations. We could not obtain the least information of their having seen ships, like ours, before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such civilized people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond doubt. On our arrival, they were earnest in their enquiries, whether we meant to settle among them, and whether we were friendly visitors, informing us, at the same time, that they gave us wood and water from motives of friendship. This proves sufficiently, that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority: for it would have been an unnatural enquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed; for they might then reasonably expect that we should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprize at beholding our ships; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. They were never startled at the report of a musquet, till they, one day, shewed us that their hide dresses were impenetrable

penetrable to their spears and arrows, when one of our people shot a musquet ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire-arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we used to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. Our explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of shot and ball, struck them so forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter. Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we sailed, the circumstances just mentioned, prove, that these ships had never been at Nootka. It is also evident, that iron could not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it. From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long supplied with it; for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon that continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brass and copper. Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to have found their way hither. The brass ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be supposed capable of fabricating them. We are certain, that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making brass; but copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might be easily fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles

ticles are not used by our traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two silver table spoons were originally derived.

With respect to the religious and political institutions established among these people, we cannot be supposed to have acquired much knowledge. However, we discovered, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of Acweek, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men, seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. Nothing that we saw could give us an insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called klumma. These, perhaps, were idols; but as the word acweek was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, we suppose they may be the images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they venerate. This however is all conjecture; for we could receive no information concerning them, as we knew little more of their language than to enable us to ask the names of things, and being incapable of holding any conversation with the natives relative to their traditions, or their religious institutions. The word wakash was frequently in their mouths. It seemed to express approbation, applause and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied, they would call out wakash! wakash! It is worthy of remark, that as these people differ from the natives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendents.

Their language is, by no means, harsh or disagreeable, farther than their pronouncing the k and h with

h with a stronger aspiration, or more force than we do. They have one sound, which is very frequent, and not used by us. It is formed in a particular manner by clashing the tongue partly against the roof of the mouth. It is difficult to represent this sound by any composition of our letters, unless from lzthl; which is generally used as a termination. The next is composed of tl; and many words end with z and fs. A specimen or two of each of these is here put down.

- Opulzthl - - *The Sun*
- Onulzthl - - - *The Moon*
- Kahsheetl - - - *Dead*
- Teehcheetl - - *To throw a stone*
- Koomitz - - - *A human skull*
- Quahmifs - - - - *Fish roe*

NUMERALS.

- Tfawack - - - *One*
- Akkla . - - - *Two*
- Katfitsa - - - - *Three*
- Mo, or Moo - - - *Four*
- Sochah - - - - *Five*
- Nofpo - - - - *Six*
- Atlepool - - - - *Seven*
- Atlaquolthl - - - *Eight*
- Tfawaquulthl - - - *Nine*
- Haceoo - - - - *Ten*

With respect to the composition of their language, we can say very little, having been scarcely able to distinguish the several parts of speech. We can only infer from their manner of speaking, which is very slow and distinct, that it has very few prepositions or conjunctions; and, as far as we could discover, is destitute of even a single interjection, to express admiration or surprize. From having few conjunctions,

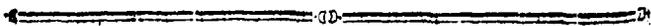
conjunctions, it may be conceived, that each single word, with them, will comprehend a great number of single ideas; which seems to be the case; but, for the same reason, the language will be defective in other respects, not having words to distinguish or express differences which really exist; and hence not sufficiently copious. This was observed to be the case, in many instances, particularly with respect to the names of animals. The relation or affinity it may bear to other languages, either on this, or the Asiatic continent, we have not been able sufficiently to trace, for want of proper specimens to compare it with, except those of the Esquimaux, and Indians about Hudson's Bay; to neither of which it has the least resemblance. On the other hand, from the few Mexican words we have been able to procure; there is the most obvious agreement in the terminations of words.

In Nootka Sound it is high water, in the days of the new and full moon, at twenty minutes after twelve: the perpendicular rise and fall being eight feet, nine inches; which is to be understood of the day tides, and those which happen two or three days after the full and new moon. The night tides, at this time, rise near two feet higher. Some circumstances that occurred daily, relating to this, deserve particular notice. In the cove where we got wood and water, was a great deal of drift-wood cast ashore, a part of which we had to remove, to come at the water. Now it frequently happened, that large pieces of trees, that we had removed in the day, out of the reach of the then high-water, were found by us floated again in our way the next morning; and all our spouts for conveying water, thrown out of their places, which were immoveable during the day-tides. We found likewise wood, which we had split up for fuel, and had placed beyond the reach of the day-tide, floated away during the night. Some of these circumstances occurred every night and morning,

morning, for three or four days in the height of the spring tides. To render our account of the transactions in Nootka Sound complete we must add, that by a variety of astronomical and nautical observations, we found its latitude to be 49 deg. 36 min. 6 sec. north, and its longitude 233 deg. 17 min. 14 sec. East.

It has been already related, that we put to sea on the 26th of April, in the evening, with manifest indications of an approaching storm; and by these signs we were not deceived, for we had scarce failed out of the Sound, when the wind shifted from N. E. to S. E. by E. and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being, at the same time, uncommonly black. Apprehensive of the wind's veering more to the South, which would expose us to the danger of a lee-shore, we got the tacks on board, and made all the sail we could to the S. W. It fortunately happened, that the wind veered no farther towards the S. and S. E. so that early the next morning we were entirely clear of the coast. The Discovery being at some distance astern, we brought to till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. Between one and two o'clock, P. M. there was a perfect hurricane, inso-much that our commodore thought it exceeding dangerous to run any longer before it; we therefore, agreeable to his order, brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation our ship, the Resolution, sprung a leak in her starboard quarter, which at first alarmed us greatly; but after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, we kept it under by means of the pump. In the evening, the wind having shifted to the southward, its fury in some measure abated; upon which we stretched to the west: but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm seemed to have spent its force, and became moderate. The  
 weather

weather now clearing up, we were able to see several leagues around us, and steered more to the north. At noon we steered N. W. by N. with a fresh gale and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather we continued the same course till the 30th, when we steered N. by W. intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that we could not do it sooner, as we were now passing the spot where the pretended strait of Admiral de Fontë has been placed by geographers. Though the captain gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute: but, at the same time, he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind, by waiting for less stormy weather. This day, at noon, by observation, we found our latitude to be 53 deg. 22 min. north, and our longitude 225 deg. 14 min. east.



## C H A P. XI.

*Progress of the Resolution and Discovery along the north-west Coast of America—They anchor near Cape Hinchinbrook—Behaviour of the Natives—Progress up the Sound, and Departure from thence—Montague Island—Inhabitants of Prince William's Sound described—The two Ships proceed along the Coast—Several Capes named—Cook's River discovered—Lieutenant King takes Possession of the Country—His Reception by the Natives—Departure of the Ships from Cook's River—Pass St. Hermogenes, and several Capes and Islands—Conjectures concerning a Russian Letter brought on Board the Discovery—A providential Escape*

*Escape—The Ships arrive at Oonalasbka—Description of the Harbour of Samganoodha—Prosecution of the Voyage to the North—Mr. Williamson lands at Cape Newenham—His Report—Bristol Bay—Extent of it—The Ships obliged to return by Reason of the Shoals—Point Upright—Death and Character of Mr. Anderson.*

ON Friday the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the N. E. having a fresh breeze at S. S. E. attended with squalls, showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock, P. M. we descried land, distant twelve leagues. At four o'clock the next morning the coast was seen from S. E. to N. by W. the nearest part distant five leagues. At the same time, the northern point of an inlet, or at least what appeared to be one, bore E by S. from whence to the northward, along the coast, there seemed to be many bays and harbours. At six, approaching nearer to the land, we pursued the direction of it, steering N. W. by N. and between eleven and twelve we passed a cluster of small isles, situated near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to reach towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain, that stands between it and the sea. To this eminence Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgcombe; and the point of land projecting from it, was called Cape Edgcombe. The Cape lies in latitude 57 deg. 3 min. N. and in long. 224 deg. E. The land, except what is contiguous to the sea, is of considerable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgcombe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the spots rising near the sea, were covered with wood. Pursuing our course to the northward, we found the coast to trend to the N. and N. E. for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. Some island

island being in the entrance of it, we gave it the name of the Bay of Islands.

On Sunday the third, at half an hour past four, P. M. Mount Edgcumbe bore south 54 deg. E. a large inlet, N. 50 deg. E. and the most advanced point of land towards the N. W. lying under a very lofty mountain, which was called Mount Fair-Weather, bore N. 32 deg. west. The inlet was named Cross Sound, it being first observed on the day so marked in our calendar. An eastern promontory forms the south-eastern point of this sound; this we distinguished by the name of Cross-Cape. Under the above-mentioned peaked mountain is a point, which was named Cape Fair-Weather. At noon, this cape was distant thirteen leagues. Having for several days light breezes, we steered S. W. and W. S. W. till the morning of the fourth, when we tacked, and stood towards the shore. At noon Mount Fair-Weather bore north, 63 deg. E. This mount is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains, that rise at the north-western entrance of Cross-Sound, and extend towards the N. W. parallel with the coast. They are covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea-coast, except in a few places, where we could discern trees that seemed to rise, as it were, from the sea. About five o'clock, P. M. the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing N. 26 deg. W. forty leagues distant. This we supposed to be the Mount Elias of Commodore Beering. In the course of the day we observed a brownish duck, with a dark indigo head and neck; likewise several whales, porpoises, seals, &c. Having light winds, with occasional calms, we made but little way. On Wednesday the 6th, the nearest land being distant eight leagues, we perceived, in a north-easterly direction, the appearance of a bay; and an island, by its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored: Cap-  
tain

tain Cook, therefore, in honour of the first discoverer, named it Beering's Bay; southward of which the ridge of mountains is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which the sight was unbounded. On the seventh at noon, we were five leagues from the shore; from which station we observed a bay under the high land, with low woodland on each side of it. We now perceived, that the coast trended considerably to the west. On the ninth, at noon, Mount Elias bore N. 30 deg. E. distant 19 leagues. This stands twelve leagues inland, lat. 60 deg. 27 min. N. long. 219 deg. E.

Sunday, the 10th, we observed in lat. 59 deg. 51 min. and in long. 215 deg. 56 min. being only three leagues distant from the coast of the continent, which extended from E. half N. to N. W. half W. as far as the eye could reach. To the westward of the latter direction we saw an island, distant six leagues. A point, which the commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of the island: within this cape stands a hill of considerable height, divided from the second range of mountains by low land; so that the cape, at a distance, has the appearance of an island. A bay is seated on the north side of Cape Suckling, seemingly extensive, and sheltered from most winds. Before night, we had approached near enough the cape to see some low land projecting from it to the N. W. we also observed some small islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the cape and the north-eastern extremity of the island. Early the next morning the wind shifted from N. E. to N. which being against us, the commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the west end of the island. Having a calm about ten o'clock, we embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding the hills to be at a greater distance than was expected, we laid aside

that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, the captain left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery were described: he inclosed also two silver twopenny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr. Kaye, now dean of Lincoln; and in testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, Captain Cook called the island Kaye's Island. It does not exceed 36 miles in length, and its breadth is not above four miles in any part. The S. W. point is a naked rock, elevated considerably. Its lat. is 59 deg. 49 min. north, long. 216 deg. 58 min. east. Towards the sea, the island terminates in bare sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small valleys and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; lasting perhaps no longer than the whole of the snow is dissolved. The valleys are filled with pine-trees; and these, indeed, abound in other parts of the island, which is covered as it were with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth: on which account, they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top-gallant-masts, and other small things. Neither Canadian, nor Cypress pines, are to be seen among them, but we saw some currant, and hawberry bushes, a yellow flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower. A crow was seen flying about the wood: two or three white-headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species, equally large, which has a white breast. In our passage from the ship to the shore, we saw a number of fowls sitting on the water, or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, burres, shags, ducks, or large petrels, divers, and

and quebrantahueffes. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper sides of its wings. We saw one fox near a wood; also two or three small seals were seen on the shore; but not any traces of inhabitants could be found.

In the afternoon Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on board; after which we set sail, and, with a light breeze from the east, we steered for the south-west side of the island, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening; we stood for the westernmost land, now in sight. At the north-east end of Kaye's Island stands another, extending N. W. and S. E. about nine miles, to within the same distance of the north-western boundary, to which the name of Comptroller's Bay was given. The next morning, being Tuesday the 12th, Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing E. by S. At noon, when in lat. 61 deg. 11 min. the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west-north-west, three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the commander named Cape Hinchinbrook, the direction of the coast is nearly E. and W. Beyond this it appeared to incline towards the south; a direction very different from that marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians; insomuch, that we had some reason to expect, that we should find, through the inlet before us, a passage to the N. and that the land to the W. and S. W. was a group of islands. We had no sooner reached the inlet, than the weather became exceeding foggy; it was therefore thought necessary that the ships should be secured during the continuance of the fog. With this view we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbrook, and cast anchor in eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore. Soon after the boats were

hoisted out, some to fish, and others to sound. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave us a prospect of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet five leagues; and the land on that side extended to W. by N. Between this point and N. W. by W. we could discern no land. The most westerly point we had in view on the north shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Betwixt this point, and the shore under which our ships now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the south-eastern side of which are several coves; and in the middle are placed some rocky islands. To these Mr. Gore was dispatched in a boat, in order to shoot some birds. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ship, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and clasp- ing and extending their arms alternately. They then began a song, much after the manner of King George's, or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of Nootka. The frame consisted of different laths, and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though some of our people repeated the most common words of the language of Nootka, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe, hoping, perhaps, they

might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered. The wind, during the night, blew hard in squalls, with rain, and thick hazy weather.

On Wednesday the 13th, at ten o'clock, A. M. the wind becoming more moderate, we got up our anchors, and made sail, in order to search for some convenient place where we might stop the leak, as our present situation was too much exposed for that purpose. We at first intended to have gone up the bay before which our ships had anchored; but, by the clearness of the weather, we were afterwards induced to steer towards the north, further up the great inlet. Having passed the N. W. point of the above-mentioned bay, we found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward: we did not follow it, but proceeded on our course to the northward, for a point of land which we observed in that direction. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the foul weather returned, with so thick a fog, that we could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little island, situate at the distance of about two miles from the neighbouring coast, being a point of land, on the eastern side of which we discovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour: to this we plied up, while the wind blew in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. In passing the island, we found a muddy bottom, at the depth of twenty six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged, by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded so far into the bay as the commodore intended; but we thought ourselves fortunate enough in having the ships already secured, for the night was exceeding tempestuous. But, notwithstanding the weather was so turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a visit. Three of them came off in two canoes:

noes: two of them in one, and one in the other; being the number that each canoe could carry; for they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. The men had each a stick, about three feet long, with the large feathers, or wings of birds, fastened to it, which they probably held up to us as tokens of peace. The treatment these three received, induced many others to visit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them ventured on board the Resolution, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among those who came on board, was a middle-aged man, who, as we afterwards found, was a chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea-otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embellished with sky-blue glass beads. Any kind of beads seemed to be in high estimation among these people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine sea-otter skins. They coveted particularly iron, but absolutely rejected small bits, and required pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and three or four fingers broad. But they obtained little of this commodity from us, as by this time it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal; others were of copper, and a few were bone; of which last the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed. The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long aboard. While they staid with us, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours alongside the Resolution, they all quitted her, and repaired to the Discovery, which ship none of them had

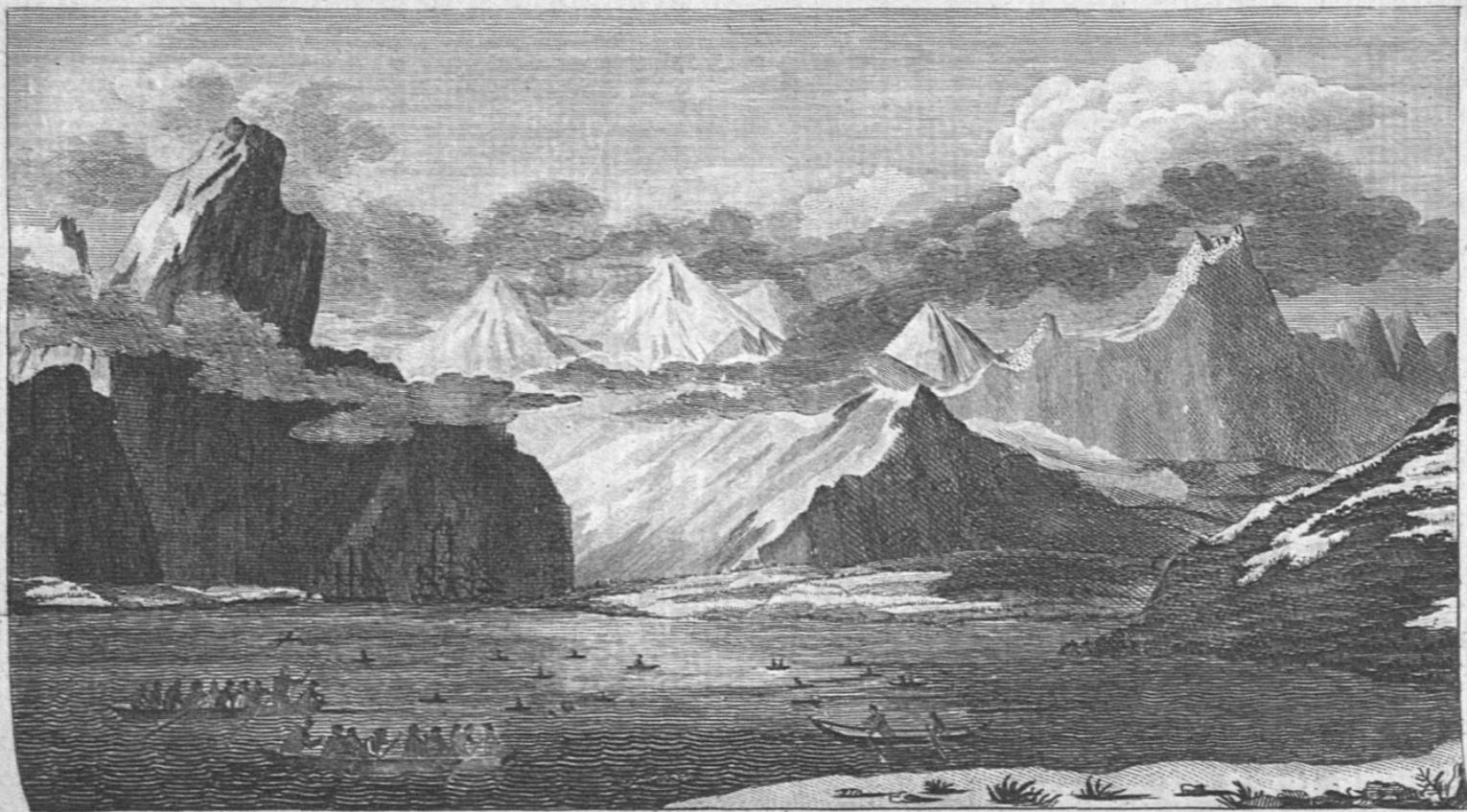
had before been aboard of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from our ship, Captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, it was intended to lay the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the process of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the Discovery, and made their way towards our boat that was employed in sounding. The officer who was in her, observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no sooner repaired on board, leaving in her by way of guard two of their numbers, than several of the natives stepped into her, some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest were so daring as to attempt to tow her away; but the moment they saw we were preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped into their own boats, and made signs, in order to persuade us to lay down our arms, being to all appearance perfectly unconcerned. This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Clerke's ship. The man, whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Resolution to the Discovery, had first been aboard of the latter; where, looking down all the hatchways, and observing no one, except the officer of the watch, and two or three more, he doubtless imagined that she might be plundered with ease, particularly as she was stationed at some distance from the Resolution. It was unquestionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them repaired aboard without the least ceremony, and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid their hands on

was

was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to those of their party, who continued in the canoes. But before they could find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many of them, armed with cutlasses, came upon deck. The plunderers no sooner saw this, than they all sneaked off into their canoes, with evident marks of indifference. It was at this time that our boat was employed in founding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her, after the disappointment they had met with at the Discovery. Their visiting us so early in the morning was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposition that they should find all our people asleep. We were now on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed further up the bay, when the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain, inasmuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving the gale of wind did not abate, and thinking it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the commodore was determined to heel the ship in our present station; and, with that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried over-board by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this hazardous situation he had presence of mind sufficient to disengage himself, and came up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs.

On Friday the 15th, at day-break, we gave our ship a good heel to port, in order to stop the leak, which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled  
the

*London, Published as the Act directs, by Alex: Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup> 16, Paternoster Row.*



*A View of SNUG CORNER COVE, IN PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND.*

the water-casks at a stream not far from our station. On the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug-corner Bay. The captain, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it, and they found it to be sheltered from all winds, having a muddy bottom at the depth of seven to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low, partly wooded, and partly clear; the clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills, in the neighbourhood, were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland had the appearance of naked rocks, covered with snow. Our leak being at length stopped, on the 17th, at four o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and steered a N. W. course, with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. Soon after we had made sail, the Americans visited us again. When we had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood tide came into the inlet, by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. Having past the point just mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks: the wind failed us, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger with which we were threatened; however, about two o'clock, P. M. we cast anchor under the eastern shore, in 13 fathoms, and four leagues distant from our last station. The weather soon after cleared up, and we had a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way; but, in

order to form a right judgment, Lieutenant Gore was sent out with two armed boats to examine the northern arm; and, at the same time, the master was dispatched with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both returned at night. By the master we were informed, that the arm, to which he had been sent, communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr. Gore reported, "that he had seen the entrance of an arm, which, he was of opinion, extended a long way to the N. E. and that probably by it a passage might be found." On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the mates, who had been sent with Mr. Gore to sketch out the parts they had examined, was of opinion that they saw the head of this arm. "The disagreement of these two opinions (observes Captain Cook) and the circumstances of the flood-tide entering the sound from the south, rendered the existence of a passage this way very doubtful. And, as the wind in the morning had become favourable for getting out to sea, the captain tells us, he resolved to spend no more time in searching for a passage in a place that promised so little success. Besides, if the land on the west should prove to be islands, agreeable to the late Russian Discoveries, we could not fail of getting far enough to the north, and that in good time; provided we did not lose the season in searching places, where a passage was not only doubtful, but improbable. We were now upward of 520 leagues westward of any part of Baffin's, or of Hudson's Bay, and whatever passage there may be, it must be, or at least part of it must lie to the north of latitude 72 deg. Who could expect to find a passage or strait of such extent?"—Notwithstanding the plausibility in the face of this reasoning, our readers will see, it is little more than mere conjecture; and might we hazard our opinion against the judgment of so able a navigator.

gator, we must confess, that the latter is not coincident with his usual precision; nor can we think his conduct, in the above search, corresponds in all particulars with his usual assiduity. This is certain, the arm near Cape Hinchinbrook, above alluded to, and the northern part of Hudson's Bay, lie between the same parallels of latitude; and it has been the united opinion of all our most skillful navigators and geographers, that if a N. W. passage does exist, it must be through Hudson's, or Baffin's Bay. As to the Russian Discoveries, or those of any other monopolizing, trading companies, they have been of little service hitherto to navigation, and, with respect to their credit, of very small value. It were therefore to be wished, that the report of so able an officer as Mr. Gore, had been more particularly attended to; for we think, if the desirable passage can be found, it must be in a lower latitude than 72 deg. and through some arm or strait. This is our own private opinion, and we do not wish to infringe upon the judgement of others, we wish this sacred privilege always to remain inviolate, with every member of civil society.

On Monday, the 18th, about three o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and made sail to the southward, down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We were enabled to shorten our run out to sea, by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the S. W. of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other, by an island that extends 18 leagues in the direction of S. W. and N. E. to which our commodore gave the name of Montague Island. In this south-western channel are several islands. Those situated in the entrance next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that lie within are low; and as they were totally free from snow, they were, for this reason, called Green Islands. At two o'clock, P. M. the wind veered to the S. W. by S. which put us under the necessity of plying. We first

## 1796 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

first stretched over to within the distance of two miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in 53 fathoms. When we stood back to Montague Island, we discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others above the surface. We afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it dangerous to ply during the night, we spent it in standing off and on, under Montague Island; for the depth of water is so great, that we could not cast anchor. The next morning, at break of day, we steered for the channel between the Green Island and Montague Island, which is between two and three leagues in breadth. About eight in the evening, we had a perfect calm; when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, distant about two miles from Montague Island. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the succeeding morning, a slight breeze sprung up from the north, with which we again weighed and made sail.

Having got out into the open sea, by six in the evening, we discovered that the coast trended W. by S. as far as the eye could reach. To the place we had just left the commodore gave the name of Prince William's Sound. It seems to occupy, at least, one degree and a half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we are unacquainted. The natives, in general, are of a middling stature, though many of them are under it. They are square, or strong chested, with short, thick necks, and large broad visages, which are, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full, round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They have

*London. Published by Alex. Hoggs at the Kings Arms, N.º. 6 Paternoster Row.*



*A WOMAN of PRINCE WILLIAM'S SOUND.*



*A MAN of PRINCE WILLIAM'S SOUND.*

have black hair, strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general, thin, or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour. Some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards. The variety of their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good nature; and yet some of them shewed a reserve and sullenness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex, by the superior softness of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which was scarcely the effect of any stain, it not being a custom among them to paint their bodies. Both sexes, young and old, of this sound, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ankles. It has, at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances. The seams, where the different skins are sewed together, are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs, cut out of the same skins. A few have a sort of cape or collar, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute the whole of their dress in fair weather. When it is rainy, they put over this another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from

from the intestines of whales, or some other large animal, prepared with such skill, as to resemble, in great measure, our gold-beater's leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string. When in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water by this means is prevented from entering: at the same time it keeps the men dry upwards, for no water can penetrate through it. Yet, if not constantly kept moist, it is apt to crack or break. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar to the dress of the natives of Greenland. Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin-sockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skin of a bear's paw. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka Sound, having high truncated conical caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood. The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females suffer it to grow long; and the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few, after our custom, club it behind. Both men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They likewise perforate the septum of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under-lip cut quite through length-

wise,

wise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and, either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. When a person with his under-lip thus slit, was first seen by one of our sailors, he immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth, a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower-lip into separate holes; on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones. Such are the native ornaments of these people: but we observed among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they sometimes hang even as low as the point of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove them with such facility; for, with respect to their own lip-ornaments, they can take them out with their tongues at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads made of a shelly substance resembling amber, and of a cylindrical form. They are, in general, so fond of ornaments of some kind or other, that they fix a variety of things in their perforated lip; one of them appeared with two of

## 1800 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

our iron nails, projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large brass button into it. The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a blueish or leaden hue, but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to which is in vogue, as we have been informed, among the Greenland females. Upon the whole, we have not in any country seen savages, who take more pains than these do to disfigure their persons with imaginary ornaments.

They have two sorts of canoes; the one large and open, the other small and covered. They differ no otherwise from the great boats in Greenland, than in the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood; and the outside is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea animals, stretched over the wood. Their small canoes are constructed nearly of the same form and materials with those of the Esquimaux. Some of these carry two persons. Their fore part is curved like the head of a violin. Their weapons and implements for hunting and fishing, are the same with those used by the Greenlanders. Many of their spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood, about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour they have a sort of jacket, or a coat of mail, formed of laths, fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not im-  
properly,

properly, be compared to the stays worn by our women.

We had not an opportunity of seeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ships anchored, or where any of us landed: but with respect to their domestic utensils, they brought, in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow; and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides are one piece bent round, after the manner of our chip-boxes, but thick, and neatly fastened with thongs, the bottoms being neatly fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but shallower; these were composed of a piece of wood, or some horny substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had in their possession a great number of little square bags, made of the same gut with their exterior frocks, curiously adorned with very small red feathers interwoven with them, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord, made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise had some models in wood of their canoes; chequered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of little images, four or five inches high, either of wood, or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether these were intended merely as children's toys, or were applied to superstitious purposes. They have many instruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To these they fix a number of dried barnacle shells, with threads, which, when shaken, produce a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute

tute for the rattling bird at King George's Sound. It is uncertain with what kind of tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we observed among them being a sort of stone-adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands in the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved, others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have also knives, some of which are almost two feet in length, shaped in a great measure like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. These they wear in sheaths of skin, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe or frock. It is probable, that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purposes. Whatever they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete chest of tools; and their plaiting of sinews, sewing, and small-work on their little bags, may be found to vie with the neatest manufactures in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, considering the uncivilized state of the natives of this sound, their northerly situation, amidst a country almost continually covered with snow, and the comparative wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with respect to their skill and invention, in all manual operations, they are at least upon a footing with any other people in the islands of the great Pacific Ocean.

The animal food, we saw them eat, was either roasted, or broiled: they feed also on dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased, had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of fern-root, either baked, or dressed in some other method. Some of our company observed them to eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for, in their canoes, they brought snow in their wooden vessels,

vessels, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food: and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of a sea animal, yet, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. To all appearance, their persons were always free from filth; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of these people seemed difficult to be understood: this, perhaps, was not owing to any confusion, or indistinctness in their sounds, but to the various significations which their words bear: for they frequently made use of the same word on different occasions; though, probably, if we could have had a longer intercourse with them, this might have proved a mistake on our part. Among the few words and phrases the ingenious Mr. Anderson was enabled to procure, we have selected the following:

Ahleu	- - -	<i>A Spear</i>
Amilhtoo	- - -	<i>A Piece of white bear's skin</i>
Keelashuk	- - -	<i>Guts of which they make jackets</i>
Natooneshuk		<i>The Skin of a sea-otter</i>
Lukluk	- - -	<i>A Brown shaggy skin</i>
Namuk	- - -	<i>An Ornament for the ear</i>
Aa	- - - - -	<i>Yes</i>
Chilke	- - - - -	<i>One</i>
Taiha	- - - - -	<i>Two</i>
Tokke	- - - - -	<i>Three</i>
Chukelo	- - - - -	<i>Four</i>
Koeheene	- - - - -	<i>Five</i>
Takulai	- - - - -	<i>Six</i>
Keichillho	- - - - -	<i>Seven</i>
Klu or Kliev	- - - - -	<i>Eight</i>

## PHRASES.

Yaut	- - - -	<i>I'll go: or, shall I go?</i>
Whaehai	- - - -	<i>Shall I keep it? Do you give it me?</i>
Tawuk	- - - -	<i>Keep it</i>
Weona or Veena	- - - -	<i>Stranger (calling to one)</i>
Oonaka	- - - -	} <i>Will you barter for this that belongs to me?</i>
Kecta	- - - -	
Naema	- - - -	<i>Give me something in exchange?</i>
Akashou	- - - -	<i>What's the name of that?</i>

With regard to the numerals, Mr. Anderson observes, that the words corresponding to ours, after passing three, are not certain.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of America, is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears; common, and pine martins; sea-otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common are those of racoons, martins, and sea-otters, which form the ordinary dress of these people: but the skins of the martins which were in general of a far lighter brown than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness; whereas those of the sea-otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size; and were, for the most part, of the glossy black sort. The skins of seals, and bears, were also very common: the former were, in general, white; and many of the bears, here, were of a dark brown hue. Besides these animals, there is the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. Here is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and

and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal was brought to us, but we could not decide positively what it was; though from the colour, the shagginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, we conjectured, that it might be that of the male ursine-seal, or sea-bear. But one of the most beautiful skins that fell under our consideration, is that of a small animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obscure whitish specks, the sides being of a blueish ash-colour, with a few of those specks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitish hair. This animal is doubtless the same with that which is called by Mr. Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field-mouse: but whether it is really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel, we could not learn, nor determine, for want of entire skins; though Mr. Anderson was inclined to believe, that it is the same animal which some of our naturalists have described under the appellation of the casan-marmot. The great number of skins that we saw at this place, demonstrates the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; yet, it is somewhat remarkable, that we neither met with the skins of the moose, nor of the common species of deer. As to the birds we found the halcyon, or great king-fisher, having fine bright colours; the shag; the white headed eagle; and the humming bird, which often flew about our ships, while we lay at anchor; though it cannot be supposed to live here, during the winter, which must be extremely severe. The water-fowl seen by us were black scapies, with red bills, such as we met with at Van Diemen's Land. Some of our people brought down a snipe, a grouse, and some plovers: but notwithstanding the water-fowl were numerous, particularly

larly the geese and ducks, they were so shy, that it was a difficult matter to get within shot; in consequence of which, we procured a very considerable supply of them as refreshments. The duck is about the size of our common wild one; of a deep black, with red feet, and a short pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black spot, almost square, near its base, on each side, where it is also somewhat distended. On the forehead is a large triangular white spot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one still larger. The colours of the female are much less vivid than those of the male; and she has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting those of the two black spots, which are rather obscure. We observed a species of the diver, which seems peculiar to this place. In size, it is equal to a partridge, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, waved obscurely with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. We found also a small land bird, of the finch kind, about the bigness of a yellow-hammer; but we imagined it to be one of those which change their colours with the season, and with their different migrations. It was, at this time, of a dusky brown with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breast of the female.

With respect to the fish, what the natives brought to us for sale, were torrk and halibut. We caught some sculpins about the ship; and star-fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell-fish, and the only one of this tribe that fell under our notice, was a reddish crab, covered with large spines. We  
observed

observed few vegetables of any kind, and the trees that chiefly grew about this sound, were the Canadian, and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size. The metals we saw these people possessed of, were iron and copper; both which, but particularly the former, were in such abundance, that their lances and arrows were pointed with them. The ores which they used to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous red ochre or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue; and black lead: but each of these articles seemed to be very scarce among them. These people must, certainly, have received from some more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were, doubtless, the first Europeans, with whom they ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures. And it is more than probable, that they had obtained these articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada; unless we can admit the supposition, that the Russians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. As to copper these people, perhaps, procure it themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through very few hands; for when they offered any of it by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them, by pointing to their weapons, as if they would intimate, that, having so much copper of their own, they had no occasion to increase their stock. However, if the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is remarkable, that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with

Some of their sea-otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared, at one time or other, in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance; which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own cloathing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value as being of their own animals to the east, till they reached the traders at the European settlements.

On Wednesday the 20th of May, having took our departure from Prince William's Sound, we directed our course to the S. W. with a gentle breeze. This was succeeded by a calm, at four o'clock, the next morning, which was soon followed by a breeze from the S. W. This veering to the N. W. we continued to stretch to S. W. and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of 59 deg. 10 min. long. 207 deg. 45 min. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth-day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves, that it was the western extremity of the continent: but fresh land soon appearing in sight, bearing W. S. W. convinced us of our mistake. The wind had increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast: but, on the 22nd, P. M. the gale abated, and we stood for Cape Elizabeth. On Saturday the 23d, at noon, Cape Elizabeth bore W. distant 10 leagues; at which time, new land was seen, bearing S. W. which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had seen towards the west. We stood to the southward till the next day, at noon, when we were three leagues from the coast, which  
we

we had seen on the 22nd. More land was discovered, extending to the southward, whereon was seen a ridge of mountains, whose summits were covered with snow. This point of land lies in latitude 58 deg. 15 min. Its longitude is 207 deg. 42 min. And by what the commodore could gather from Beering's voyage and chart, he supposed it to be, what he called Cape St. Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, is so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place, which the navigator either saw or touched at. In the chart a space is pointed out, where Beering is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr. Stæhlin's account, who makes Cape St. Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Beering to the S. W. of it, to be a cluster of islands, and that St. Hermogenes is one of those that are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now saw; and we entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being obliged to proceed any farther to the S. W.

We were detained by light airs and calms off the cape, till two o'clock, A. M. of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel, one league in breadth. Some rocks are to be seen above water to the north of this island; and on the N. E. side of the rocks, we had from 30 to 20 fathoms water. At noon St. Hermogenes bore S. E. distant 8 leagues; the land to the N. W. extending from S. half W. to near W. In this last direction, it ended in a low point, named Point Banks. The ship was, at this time, in latitude 58 deg. 41 min. longitude 207 deg. 44 min. In this station the land was in sight, bearing N. W. which, it was thought, connected Cape Elizabeth with this S. W. land. When

we approached it, we observed it was an unconnected group of high islands and rocks; and from the nakedness of their appearance, the captain named them the Barren Isles: they are situated in latitude 59 deg. three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks. It was our intention to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided; but a strong current setting against us, we went to leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, when we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceeding high mountains. Captain Cook named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, canon of Windsor. It is situated 12 leagues from Point Banks, and 10 to the westward of the Barren Isles; in latitude 58 deg. 56 min. and longitude 206 deg. 10 min. Between this point and Cape Douglas is a large deep Bay, which, from our observing some smoke upon Point Banks, received the name of Smokey Bay. At day break on the 26th, being to the northward of the Barren Isles, we discovered more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of Mount St. Augustine. Having a fresh gale we stood to the N. W. till eight, when we found, that what we had supposed to be islands were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land. This was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea-beach; and had in every other respect, the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced, that no passage could be discovered by this inlet; and his continuing to explore it was more to satisfy others, than to confirm his own opinion. At this time Mount St. Augustine bore N. W. distant

tant three leagues. It is of a conical figure, and rises to a prodigious height; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, is not yet ascertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the west, we stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon. Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory; which was named Cape Bede, is a bay, wherein we might have anchored; but, the captain having no such intention, we tacked and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. Next morning the gale abated, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, the weather cleared up; Cape Douglas bearing S. W. by W. and the depth of water being 40 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. From Cape Bede the coast trended N. E. by E. with a chain of mountains in land, in the same direction. We had now the mortification to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from N. N. E. to N. E. by E. but, as it was supposed to be an island, we were not much discouraged.

On Thursday, the 28th, A. M. having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward, and in order to stop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight inch hauser. But, in bringing the ship up, we lost both that and the anchor. However, we brought the ship up, with one of the bowers, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of 59 deg. 51 min. the low land extended from N. E. to S. E. the nearest part distant two leagues; and the land on the western shore about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the southward, out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Though the water had become thick, and resembled that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as in the ocean, even

at low water. Three knots was the strength of the flood tide; and the stream continued to run up till four in the afternoon. At eight o'clock in the evening we stood up the inlet, to the north. Soon after the wind veered to this quarter, and blew in squalls, attended with rain; but this did not hinder us from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning at near five o'clock, when we anchored about two leagues from the eastern shore; and our latitude was 60 deg. 8 min. Some low land, which we supposed to be an island, lay under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues. The weather clearing up, a ridge of mountains appeared; and two columns of smoke were visible on the eastern shore. At one o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and plied up under double reefed top-sails, having a strong gale at N. E.

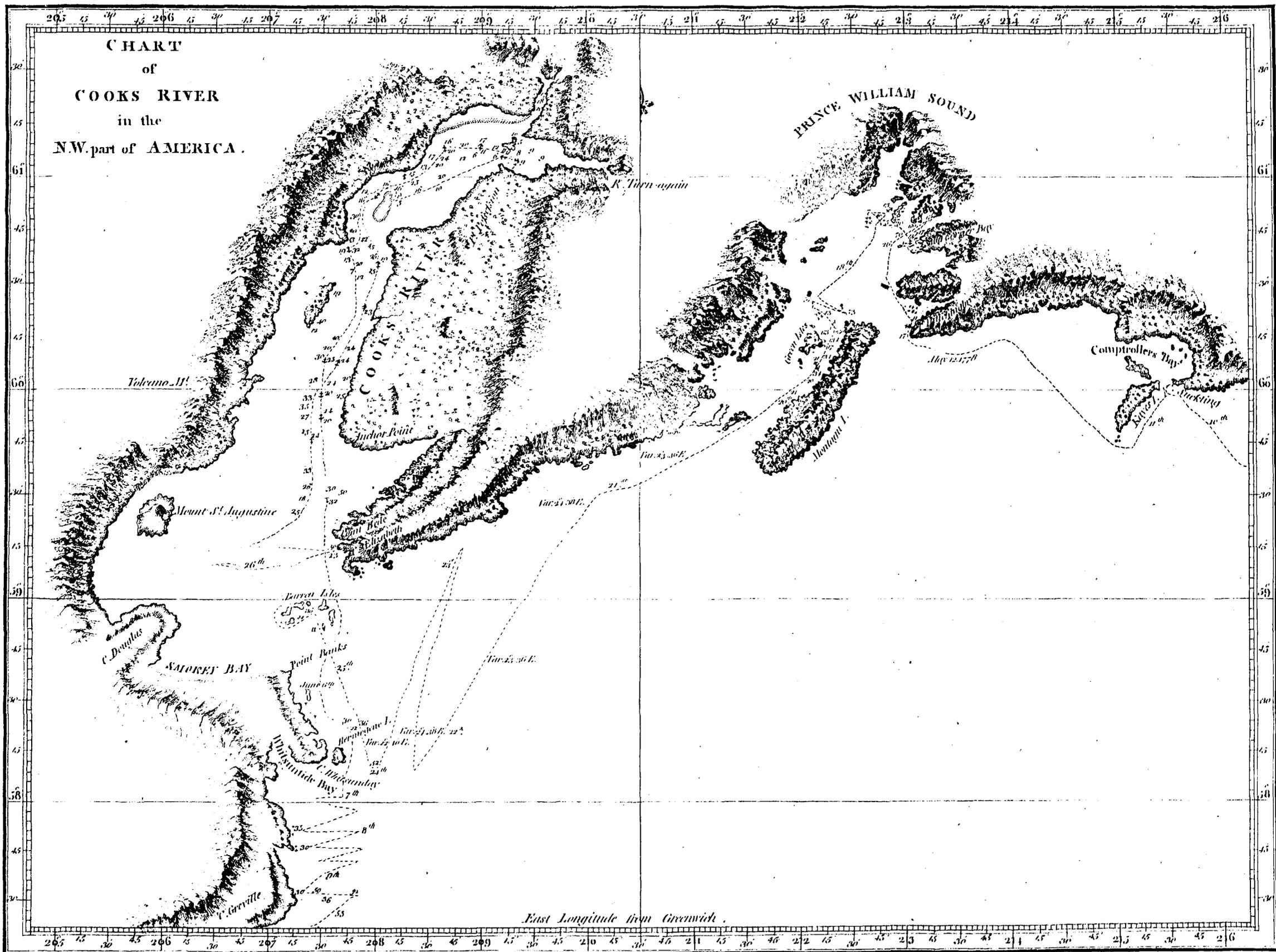
On Saturday the 30th, the gale having much abated, we plied up from two o'clock, A. M. till near seven, and then anchored under the shore to the eastward, in 19 fathoms water. At noon two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship, nearly from that part where we had seen the smoke the day before. They resembled strongly those we had seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person: their canoes were also constructed in the same manner; and one of them had a large beard, and a countenance like the common sort of people in the Sound. When the flood made, we weighed, stood over to the western shore, and fetched under a bluff point to the N. W. This, with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which a prodigious tide ran. It had a terrible appearance, and we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. We kept the western shore aboard, that appearing to be the safest. In the evening, about eight o'clock,  
we

we anchored under a point of land, bearing N. E. distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb. Till we arrived at this station, the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean : but now the appearances of a river evidently displayed themselves. The water, taken up at this ebb, was much fresher than any we had tasted ; whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a strait, which had a communication with the northern seas : but, having proceeded thus far, Captain Cook was anxious to have stronger proofs ; therefore, on the thirty-first, in the morning, we weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind. Near eight o'clock, many of the natives, in one large canoe, and several small ones, paid us a visit. The latter had only one person on board each ; but the larger ones contained men, women, and children. We bartered with them for some of their fur dresses, made of the skins of animals, particularly those of sea-otters, martins, and hares, also salmon, halibut, and a few of their darts ; for which, in return, we gave them old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron. These last they call goone ; but, in general, their language is nearly the same as that used in Prince William's Sound. At nine o'clock, we anchored in sixteen fathoms water, almost two leagues from the western shore, the ebb being already began. It ran but three knots an hour at its greatest strength, and fell, after we had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a perpendicular. In order to determine the direction, and other particulars respecting the inlet, Captain Cook dispatched two boats, and when the flood tide made, followed them with the two ships ; but, after driving about ten miles, we anchored, having a dead calm and strong tide against us. At the lowest of the ebb, the water at and near the surface, was perfectly fresh, though retaining a considerable degree of saltness, if taken above a foot below it.

Besides

Besides this, we had other convincing proofs of its being a river, such as thick muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backward and forward with the tide. In the afternoon we received another visit from the natives, who bartered largely with our people, without so much as attempting one dishonest action.

On Monday the 1st of June, at two o'clock, A. M. the master, who commanded the two boats, returned, informing us that he found the inlet or river contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly course through low land on each side. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which he found from 20 to 17 fathoms deep. While the stream ran down the water was perfectly fresh, but it became brackish when it ran up, and more so near high water. Three leagues to the northward of this search, the master discovered another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable, the river ran in a direction N. E. but this was thought by the captain to be only another branch, and that the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains. The pleasing hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, we took the advantage of the next tide to get a closer view of the eastern branch: in order to determine whether the low land on the east was an island or not. For this purpose we weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprang up in a direction opposite to our course, so that we despaired of reaching the entrance of the river. By reason of this untoward circumstance, two boats were dispatched, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable us to form some tolerable idea of the nature and course of the river. About ten o'clock, the Resolution  
and



London: Published by His Majesty, at the Kings Arms, in St. Peters Church Lane.

and Discovery anchored in nine fathoms water. The commodore observing the strength of the tide to be so powerful, that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return, before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The only knowledge concerning the grand question, obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the lowland, which we had imagined to be an island, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the south entrance of this eastern branch, which the commodore denominated the river Turnagain.

The low land begins again on the north side of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains, to the bank of the great river, forming before the river Turnagain a large bay. Having entered this, the flood set very strong into the river, the water falling 20 feet upon a perpendicular, from which circumstances it was evident, that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch: but, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltness, it is probable that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its several branches: We had traced it to the latitude of 61 deg. 30 min. and the long. of 210 deg. which is upwards of 210 miles from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source. The time we spent in the discovery— (Here the commodore having left a blank in his Journal, which he had not filled up with any particular name, the earl of Sandwich very properly directed it to be called Cook's River.) The time we spent in the discovery of Cook's River ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age: but the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss to us, who had a greater object in view. The season was far ad-

vanced, and it was now evident, that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts.

In the afternoon Lieutenant King was again sent with orders from the captain to land on the S. E. side of the river, where he was to display the flag; and, in his majesty's name, to take possession of the country and Cook's river. He was ordered also to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery. In the mean time the ships were got under way; but a calm ensued, and the flood tide meeting us, we found it necessary to cast anchor; the point where Mr. King landed bearing S. distant two miles. This Point of land was named Point Possession. On Mr. King's return we were informed, that after he had landed he saw several of the natives with their arms extended, an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Observing his attendants were armed with musquets, they were alarmed, and requested, by expressive signs, that he would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr. King and his party were permitted to walk up to them. They now appeared to be very sociable and chearful. Mr. Law, surgeon of the Discovery, being one of the party, purchased a dog, and taking it towards the boat, immediately shot it dead. At this they seemed exceedingly surprized; and, not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them.

At high-water we weighed anchor, and with a faint breeze stood over to the west shore, where the next morning, being Tuesday the second, we anchored,

chored, on account of the return of the flood. Soon after we were visited by several of the natives in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others, they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits, and red foxes, but only two or three of those of otters: We also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. They preferred iron to every thing we offered them in exchange. The lip-ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but those which pass through the nose were more frequent, and in general considerably longer. They had likewise more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-cases, and other articles. At half past ten we weighed, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, our ship struck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occasioned that strong agitation of the stream, with which we were so much surprized when turning up the river. We had twelve feet of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts. When our ship came aground Captain Cook made a signal for the *Discovery* to anchor. We were afterwards informed that she had been almost ashore on the west side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the west shore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us. At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb, and about five the next morning, the 3d, the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the west shore, about ten miles below the bluff point. In this station we were visited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning: their

company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships. The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we saw a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is 60 deg. 23 min. and it is the first high mountain north of Mount St. Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing southerly, we still tided it down the river.

On Friday the 5th, in the morning, we arrived at the place where we had lost our kedge anchor, which we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover. Before our departure from hence, we were again visited by some of the natives in six canoes from the eastern shore. The points of their spears and knives are made of iron; some of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons; and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of considerable length. Except these and a few glass beads, every thing we saw among them was of their own manufacture. A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast: but without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefited by such commerce. It should however be noted, that almost the only valuable skins, on this west side of North America, are those of the sea-otter; their other skins are of an inferior quality. As the skins are used by these people only for cloathing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them, than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief cause of their killing the animals, for they receive principally their supply of food from the sea and rivers: but if these were accustomed to a constant trade

trade with foreigners, such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries, to be enabled to purchase which, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins; and in this country, without doubt, a plentiful supply might be obtained.

This day, the ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and with a gentle breeze at S. W. plied down the river: the flood obliged us to anchor again; but the next morning of Saturday the 6th we got under sail with a fresh breeze, passed the Barren Islands about eight o'clock, A. M. and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore S. S. E. eight leagues distant. We intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land, but the wind soon after failed us; on which account we abandoned the design of carrying the ship through that passage: northward of it the land forms a bay, a low rocky island lying off the N. W. point. Some other islands, of a similar appearance, are scattered along the coast between here and Point Banks. At eight in the evening, St. Hermogenes extended from S. half E. to S. S. E. and the rocks bore S. E. distant three miles. About midnight we passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward; and on the 7th at noon St. Hermogenes bore N. distant four leagues. The southernmost point of the main land lay N. half W. five leagues distant. The latitude of this promontory is 58 deg. 15 min. and its longitude 274 deg. 24 min. It was named after the day in our calendar, Cape Whitsunday; and a large bay to the west of it was called Whitsuntide Bay. At midnight we stood in for the land, and at seven in the morning of the eighth we were within four miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken rocks, bearing W. S. W. Here we anchored in thirty-five fathoms water. To the west of the bay are some small islands. To the southward the sea coast is low, with projecting rocky points, having small inlets between them.

We were now in the latitude of 57 deg. 52 min. 30 sec. The land here forming a point, it was named Cape Greville, in lat. 57 deg. 33 min. long. 207 deg. 15 min. distant from St. Hermogenes 15 leagues. On the 9th, 10th and 11th, we continued plying up the coast.

On Friday the 12th, in the evening, the fog clearing up, we descried land twelve leagues distant, bearing W. and we stood in for it early the next morning. At noon an elevated point, which we called Cape Barnabas, in lat. 57 deg. 13 min. bore N. N. E. distant ten miles. The point to the S. W. had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called Two-headed Point. At six in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, a point of land was observed bearing S. 69 deg. W. On the fourteenth, at noon, we observed in lat. 56 deg. 49 min. The land seen the preceding evening, now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of it the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which we named Trinity Island. It lies in lat. 56 deg. 36 min. long. 205 deg. distant from the continent three leagues, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the small islands. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, we called Cape Trinity, it being a low point facing Trinity Island. Having reason at this time to expect foggy weather, we stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islets near the east end of Trinity Island. This we weathered, and in the afternoon steered westerly, with a gale at S. S. E. No land appearing on Monday the fifteenth at noon, and the gale and fog increasing, we steered W. N. W. under such sail as we could haul the wind with; sensible of the danger of running before a strong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coast and in a thick fog. It was

was however become necessary to run some risk, when the wind was favourable to us; as we were convinced that clear weather was generally accompanied with westerly winds.

On Tuesday, the 16th, at four o'clock, A. M. the fog being now dispersed, we found ourselves, in a manner, surrounded with land. The extreme of the main, at N. E. was a point of land we had seen through the fog, and was therefore named Foggy Cape. It is situated in latitude 56 deg. 31 min. About nine o'clock, we discovered the land to be an island, nine miles in circumference, in lat. 56 deg. 10 min. long. 202 deg. 45 min. we named it Foggy Island; and we supposed, from its situation, that it is the island on which Beering had bestowed the same appellation. Three or four islands bore N. by W. A point, with pinnacle rocks upon it, bore N. W. by W. called Pinnacle Point; and a cluster of islots, S. S. E. about nine leagues from the coast. On the 17th, at noon, the continent extended from S. W. to N. by E; the nearest part distant 7 leagues: at the same distance from the continent, a group of islands was seen to the N. W. On the 18th we had clear, pleasant weather, and it was a calm the greatest part of the day. One of our people, on board a boat dispatched to the Discovery, shot a most beautiful bird. It is smaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore-part of the head is white: behind each eye, an elegant yellowish-white crest arises: the bill and feet are of a reddish colour. The first of these birds were seen to the southward of Cape St. Hermogenes; after which we saw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We were also visited by most of the other sea-fowls, that are usually met with in the northern oceans; and seldom a day passed without our seeing whales, seals, and other fish of great magnitude. In the afternoon we steered west, for the channel between the islands and the continent. On  
Friday,

Friday, the 19th, at day break, we were not far from it, and perceived several other islands, within those we had already seen, of various dimensions. Between these islands, and those we had seen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which we steered; and, at noon our latitude was 55 deg. 18 min. in the narrowest part of the channel. Of this group of islands, the largest was now upon our left, and is called Kodiak, as we were afterwards informed. Other islands appeared to the southward, as far as an island could be seen. They begin in the longitude of 200 deg. 15 min. east, and extend about two degrees to the westward. Most of these islands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged, exhibiting romantic appearances, and abounding with cliffs and rocks. They have several bays and coves about them; and some fresh-water streams descend from their elevated parts, but the land is not adorned with a single tree or bush. Plenty of snow still remained on many of them, as well as on those parts of the continent which appeared between the innermost islands. By four o'clock, in the afternoon, we had passed all the islands to the south of us; and soon after we had got through the channel, the Discovery, which was two miles astern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a signal to speak with us. A boat being sent off to her, returned immediately with Captain Clerke. He informed the commodore, that some natives in three or four canoes, having followed his ship for some time, at last got under the stern; one of whom made many signs, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ship, to which he fastened a thin wooden box, and after he had made some more gesticulations, the canoes left the Discovery. Soon after the box was opened, and found to contain a piece of paper, carefully folded up, whereon some writing appeared, which was supposed to be in the Russian language,

language. To this writing was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced by his numerals, that others had preceded us in visiting these dreary regions. At first Captain Clerke imagined, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that seeing our ships, these unfortunate persons were induced thus to inform us of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on this occasion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join us; but no such idea ever occurred to Captain Cook. If this had really been the case, he supposed, that the first step such persons would have taken, in order to secure relief, would have been, to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought the paper was intended to communicate some information, from a Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive; and that the native, supposing us to be Russians, had brought off the note. In consequence of this opinion, the Captain ordered sail to be made, and we steered westward. At midnight, we beheld a vast flame ascend from a burning mountain, and observed several fires within land.

On Saturday, the 20th, at two o'clock, A. M. some breakers were seen, distant two miles; others appeared a-head; on our larboard side they were innumerable; and also between us and the land. We cleared them, though with difficulty, by holding a south course. These breakers were produced by rocks, many of which were above water: they are very dangerous, and extend seven leagues from land. We got on the outside of them about noon, when we observed in latitude 54 deg. 44 min. longitude 198 deg. The nearest land was an elevated bluff point, which we called Rock Point. It bore

N. distant 8 leagues; and a high round hill, called Halibut Head, bore S. W. distant 13 leagues. On the 21st, Halibut Island extended from N. by E. to N. W. This island is seven leagues in circumference, and except the head, is very low and barren. We were kept at such a distance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that we had but a very imperfect view of the coast between Halibut Island and Rock Point. We could, however, perceive the main land covered with snow; particularly some hills, whose elevated tops towered above the clouds to a most stupendous height. A volcano was seen on the most south-westerly of these hills, which perpetually threw up immense columns of black smoke: it is at no great distance from the coast, and lies in the latitude of 54 deg. 48 min. and in longitude 195 deg. 45 min. Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the summit of it: remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the smoke of the volcano rose, often moved in an opposite direction to what it did at sea, even in a fresh gale. In the afternoon, having three hours calm, upwards of 100 halibuts were caught by our people, some of which weighed upwards of a hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty each. They were highly acceptable to us. We fished in 35 fathoms water, about four miles distant from the shore; during which time, we were visited by a man in a small canoe, who came from a large island. When he drew near to the ship, he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done the preceding day, when he came off to the Discovery. It appeared very plain to us, that the Russians had some communication with these people, not only from their politeness, but from an additional proof that we now were favoured with: for our new visitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him a grey

fox-skin, and some fishing implements: also a bladder, wherein was some liquid, which we supposed to be oil: he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then closed it up again. His canoe was smaller than any one of those we had seen before, though of the same construction: like others who had visited the Discovery, he used the double-bladed paddle. His features resembled those of the natives of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint; and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, but at this visit he had not any kind of ornament in it. Many of the words frequently used by the natives of the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not seem to understand any of them, owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or our erroneous pronunciation. On Monday, the 22d, the wind shifted to the S. E. and, as usual, was attended with thick rainy weather. In the evening, fearing we might fall in with land, we hauled to the southward, till two the next morning, and then bore away west; yet we made but little way. At five o'clock, P. M. we had an interval of sun-shine, when we saw land bearing N. 59 deg. W. On Wednesday, the 24th, at six o'clock, A. M. we saw the continent; and at nine it extended from N. by E. to S. W. by W. the nearest part distant four leagues. The next morning we had clear weather, inasmuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. A large opening was likewise seen between several islands and a point of the land. We now steered to the southward; when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered west, the islands lying in that direction. By eight o'clock we had passed three of them, all of a good height; and more were now observed to the westward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at east, we therefore hauled the wind

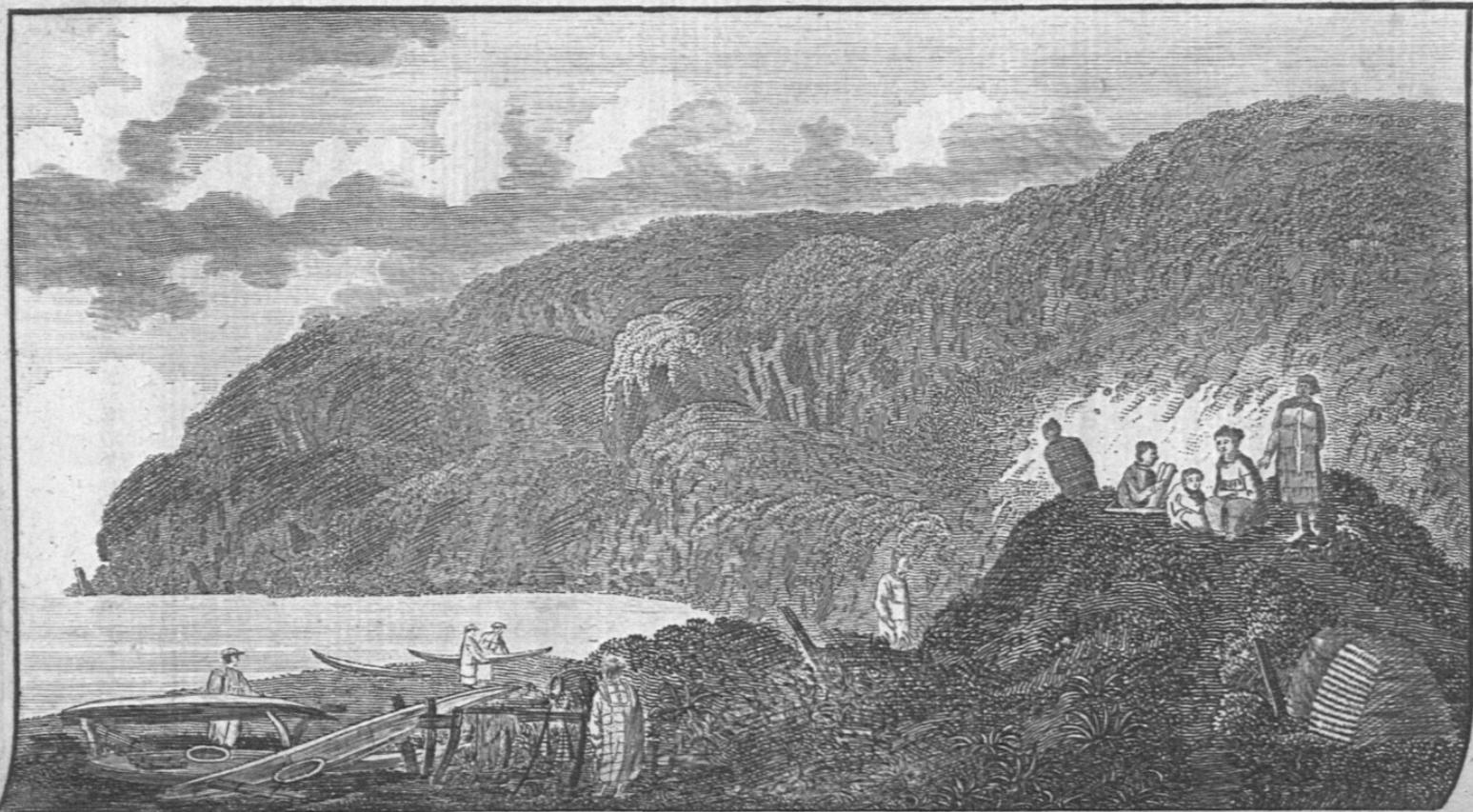
to the southward till day break, on Friday the 26th, when we resumed our course to the west. We derived but little advantage from daylight, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards; but as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the sound of breakers alarmed us on our larboard bow. We brought the ship to, and anchored in twenty-five fathoms water. The Discovery who was not far distant anchored also. Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the N. E. side of an island: two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet Providence had safely conducted the ships through in the dark, between those rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day; and to so commodious an anchoring-place, which, on account of our miraculous escape, received the name of Providence Bay. During the night, the wind blew fresh at south, but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog in a great measure dispersed. At seven o'clock, we weighed, and steered between the island near which we had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could pass through it. We were therefore glad to anchor in 34 fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the S. W. which we afterwards found to be an island, called Oonalashka. Between this, and the land to the north, which we suppose to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a N. W. direction. On a point, west from the ship, and at a distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this

this place we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants came off, at different times, to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed, indeed, remarkably shy; though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels, similar, in some degree, to ours. Their address expressed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes. Being favoured, about one o'clock, P. M. with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and directed our course to the channel last mentioned; expecting when we had passed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward, or that we should discover a passage out to sea, to the west; and we soon found we were right in our conjectures. After we had got under sail, the wind veered to the N. and we were obliged to ply. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary for us to anchor within three leagues of our last station.

On Sunday, the 28th, at day-break, we got again under sail, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze at south; this was succeeded by variable light airs from all directions. We had, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the Resolution got through before the ebb made. The Discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it. Being now through the channel, we observed the land on one side, trending W. and S. W. and that on the other side to N. This encouraged us to hope that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Finding our water ran short, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour on the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be

forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in 28 fathoms, and out of the reach of the strong tide, though even here it ran five knots an hour. In this station we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man among them overset his canoe, while he was along side of one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up by one of his countrymen, and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he accepted an invitation into the cabin, without any surprize or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment, resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea-animal. Under this he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together; the feathered side placed next the skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads. His cloaths being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in the appearance of our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity; for, such as had not canoes to bring them off, assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them. At low water we towed the ship into the harbour, where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the Discovery arriving soon after. A boat was now sent off to draw the seine, but we caught only a few trout, and some other small fish. We had scarce anchored, when a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to our commo-  
dore,

*London Published by Wm. Woodcut & Co. King-Street, No. 10. Paternoster-Row.*



*W. WOODCUT & CO. SCULPTORS. No. 10. PATERNOSTER-ROW.*

dore, but as it was written in the Russian language, neither he, nor any of our company, could read it. As it could not be of any use to us, and might be of consequence to others, Captain Cook returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents; for which he expressed his thanks, as he retired, by several low bows. On the 29th we saw along the shore, a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly. We were detained by thick fogs and a contrary wind, till Thursday the 2d of July, in this harbour. It is called by the natives Samganoodha, and is situated on the north side of the island of Oonalashka, in lat. 53 deg. 55 min. long. 193 deg. 30 min. and in the strait which separates this island from those to the north. It is about 2 mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles S. by W. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a stick of wood of any kind.

On Thursday, the 2d of July, we steered from the harbour of Samganoodha, having a gentle breeze at S. S. E. to the northward, and met with nothing to obstruct our course: for on the one side the Isle of Oonalashka trended S. W. and on the other, no land was to be seen in a direction more northerly than N. E. all which land was a continuation of the same group of islands that we had fallen in with, on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is situated before Samganoodha, and constitutes the north-eastern side of the passage, through which we came, is called Oonella; and its circumference is 21 miles. Another island, lying to the northward of it, bears the name of Acootan; it is much superior in size to Oonella, and has in it some very lofty mountains, at this time covered with snow. It appeared that we might have passed with great safety between these two islands and the continent,

whose

whose southwestern point opened off the north-eastern point of Acootan, and proved to be the same point of land that we had discerned when we left the coast of the continent, the 25th of June, in order to go without the islands. It is called by the natives Oonemack; and is situated in lat. 54 deg. 30 min. long. 192 deg. 30 min. E. Over the Cape, which is high land, we perceived a round elevated mountain, at present covered with snow. At six o'clock, A. M. this mountain bore E. 2 deg. N. and two hours afterwards not any land was to be seen. Concluding, therefore, that the coast of the continent had now inclined to the north-eastward, we steered the same course till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch stationed on deck gave intimation of their seeing land. Upon this we wore, and for the space of about two hours stood towards the S. W. after which we renewed our course to the E. N. E. At six we discovered land a-head, bearing S. E. distant five leagues. As we advanced we discovered a connected chain of land. At noon we perceived that it extended from S. S. W. to E. the part nearest to us being at the distance of five leagues. We now observed in lat. 55 deg. 21 min. long. 195 deg. 18 min. E. At six o'clock, A. M. we sounded, and found a bottom of black sand, at the depth of 48 fathoms. At this time we were four leagues from the land, and its eastern part in sight was in the direction of E. S. E. to appearance an elevated round hummock.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we saw the coast from S. S. W. and E. by S. and at intervals we could discern high land behind it, covered with snow. Soon after we had a calm, when all hands were employed in fishing; and as our people were now put on two thirds allowance, what each caught he might eat or sell. Fortunate for them, they caught some tons of fine fish, which proved a most seasonable supply; for the ship provisions,

vifions, what with falt and maggots eating into the beef and pork, and the rats and the weavils devouring the heart of the bread, the one was little better than putrid flefh, and the other, upon breaking, would crumble into duft. Among the fifh we caught with hook and line, were a great number of excellent cod. At noon we had an eafterly breeze and clear weather, when we were about fix leagues from the land, which extended from S. by W. to E. by S. and the hummock, feen the preceding evening, bore S. W. by S. nine leagues diftant. A great hollow fwell convinced us, that there was no main land weftward near us. At fix o'clock, P. M. we fteered a northerly courfe, when the wind veering to the S. E. enabled us to fteer E. N. E. The coaft lay in this direktion, and the next day, at noon, was four leagues diftant. On the 6th and 7th we made but little way, the wind being northerly. On Wednesday, the 8th, the coaft extended from S. S. W. to E. by N. and was all low land, and it is not improbable that this extends to a confiderable diftance towards the S. W. and that thofe places which we fometimes fupposed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than valleys between the mountains. This day we hooked plenty of fine cod: On Thursday the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at N. W. we fteered E. by N. in order to make a nearer approach to the coaft. At noon we obferved in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. long. 201 deg. 33 min. E. at the diftance of two leagues from land, which was obferved to extend from S. by E. to N. E. being all a low coaft, with points projecting in feveral places. In advancing towards the N. E. we had found that the depth of water gradually decreafed, and the coaft trended more and more northerly; but we obferved the ridge of mountains behind it continued to lie in the fame direktion as thofe that were more westerly; fo that the extent of the low land between the coaft and the foot of  
the

the mountains insensibly increased. Both the low and high grounds were totally destitute of wood, but apparently covered with a green turf, the mountains excepted, which were covered with snow. As we proceeded along the coast, with a light westerly breeze, the water shoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though we were eight or ten miles distant from the shore. About eight o'clock in the evening a lofty mountain, which had been some time within sight, bore S. E. by E. distant twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming the same chain, and much further distant, bore E. 3 deg. N. The coast was seen to extend as far as N. E. half N. where it seemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was both our hope and expectation that it would assume a more easterly direction. But not long afterwards we perceived low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as N. W. by W. where it was lost in the horizon; and behind it we discerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine prospect we had of getting to the northward, vanished in an instant. We stood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before-mentioned was one league distant, bearing N. E. half E. Behind the point is a river, which, at its entrance, seemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared somewhat discoloured, as upon shoals; but a calm would have given it a similar aspect. It seemed to take a winding direction, through the extensive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the S. E. and the hills to the north-westward. It abounds, we apprehend, with salmon, as many of those fish were seen leaping before the entrance. The mouth of this river, which we distinguished by the name of Bristol River, lies in lat. 58 deg. 27 min. and in long. 201 deg. 55 min. E.

On the 10th at day-break we made sail to the W. S. W. with a light breeze at N. E. At eleven o'clock,

o'clock, A. M. thinking that the coast towards the N. W. terminated in a point, bearing N. W. by W. we steered for that point, having ordered the Discovery to keep a-head; but before that vessel had run a mile, she made a signal for shoal water. At that very time we had the depth of seven fathoms, yet before we could get the head of our ship the other way, we had less than five; but the Discovery's soundings were less than four fathoms. We now stood back three miles to the N. E. but observing a strong tide setting to the W. S. W. in a direction to the shoal, we brought the ships to anchor in ten fathoms, over a sandy bottom. Two hours after the water fell upwards of two feet, which proved that it was the tide of ebb that came from Bristol River. In the afternoon, the wind having shifted to the S. W. we weighed at four o'clock, and made sail towards the S. having several boats a-head employed in sounding. When we had passed over the south end of the shoal, in six fathoms water, we afterwards got into fifteen fathoms, in which we let go our anchors again between eight and nine in the evening; some part of the chain of mountains on the south-eastern shore being in sight, and bearing S. E. half S. and the most westerly land on the other shore bearing N. W. In the course of this day we had descried high land which bore N. 60 deg. W.

On Saturday the 11th, at two o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, with a gentle breeze at S. W. by W. and plied to windward till nine, when judging the flood tide to be against us, we anchored in twenty-four fathoms. At one o'clock, P. M. the fog, that had this morning prevailed, dispersing, and the tide becoming favourable, we weighed and plied to the south-westward. Towards the evening we had some thunder. We had heard none before from the time of our arrival on this coast, and what we now heard was at a great distance. In the

morning of the 12th we steered a N. W. course, and at ten o'clock saw the continent. At noon it extended from N. E. by N. to N. N. W. quarter W. and an elevated hill appeared in the direction of N. N. W. distant ten leagues. This we found to be an island, to which, on account of its figure, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It is situated in the latitude of 58 deg. 37 min. and in longitude 200 deg. 6 min. E. distant from the continent seven miles. At nine in the evening, having steered a northerly course to within three leagues of the shore, we tacked in fourteen fathoms; the extremities of the coast bearing S. E. half E. and W. We stretched along shore till two the next morning, when we suddenly got into six fathoms water, being at the same time two leagues from shore. After we had edged off a little, our depth of water gradually increased, and at noon we sounded in twenty fathoms. Round Island at this time bore N. 5 deg. E. and the western extreme of the coast N. 16 deg. W. It is an elevated point, and having calm weather while we were off it, for this reason it was named Calm Point. On the 14th and 15th, having little wind, we advanced but slowly. At times a very thick fog came on. Our soundings were from twenty-six to fourteen fathoms. We had pretty good success in fishing, for we caught plenty of cod and some flat fish.

On Thursday the 16th, at five o'clock, A. M. the fog clearing up, we found ourselves nearer the shore than we expected. Calm Point bore N. 72 deg. E. and a point about eight leagues from it, in a westerly direction, bore N. 3 deg. E. only three miles distant. Between these two points the coast forms a bay, in several parts of which the land could scarcely be seen from the mast-head. Another bay is on the north-western side of the last-mentioned point, between it and a high promontory, which now bore N. 36 deg. W. at the distance of sixteen miles.

miles. About nine o'clock the Commodore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson to this promontory, with orders to go ashore and observe what direction the coast took beyond it, and what might be the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ships, had but a sterile appearance. We here found the flood tide setting strongly towards the N. W. along the coast. At noon it was high-water, and we cast anchor at the distance of twelve miles from the shore, in twenty-four fathoms. About five in the afternoon, the tide beginning to make in our favour, we weighed, and drove with it; there being no wind. When Mr. Williamson returned, he reported that he had landed on the point, and having ascended the most elevated hill, found that the most distant part of the coast in sight was nearly in a northerly direction. He took possession of the country in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and left on the hill a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships and of their commanders, and the date of the discovery, were inscribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point, of considerable height; and is seated in latitude 58 deg. 42 min. and in longitude 197 deg. 36 min. E. Over, or within it, two lofty hills arise one behind another, of which the innermost, or easternmost, is the highest. The country, as far as Mr. Williamson could discern, produces not a single tree or shrub. The hills were naked, but on the lower grounds there grew grass and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. The Lieutenant met with no other animals than a doe with her fawn, and a dead sea-horse or cow that lay on the beach; of the latter animals we had seen a considerable number from the ships. Cape Newenham is the northern boundary of the extensive gulph or bay situated before the river Bristol, which, in honour of the Admiral, Earl of Bristol, received from the

commodore the distinction of Bristol Bay. Cape Ooneemak forms the southern limit of this bay, and is eighty-two leagues distant, in the direction of S. S. W. from Cape Newenham. At eight o'clock in the evening we steered to the N. W. and N. N. W. round the cape, which at noon the next day was four leagues distant, bearing S. by E. The most advanced land towards the north, bore N. 30 deg. E. and the nearest part of the coast was three leagues and a half distant. During the afternoon there was but little wind, so that by ten o'clock in the evening we had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly course.

Saturday the 18th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we were steering N. by W. when the depth of water suddenly decreased to seven and five fathoms; on which account we brought to, till a boat from each of the ships was sent a-head to sound, and then we steered to the N. E. At noon, when the water deepened to seventeen fathoms, Cape Newenham was twelve leagues distant, bearing S. 9 deg. E. the north-eastern extremity of the land in sight bore N. 66 deg. E. and the distance of the nearest shore was four leagues. Our latitude was 59 deg. 16 min. N. Before one o'clock the boats a-head displayed the signal for shoal-water. They had only two fathoms; but at the same time the ships were in six. By hauling more to the north, we continued nearly in the same depth till between five and six o'clock, when our boats finding less and less water, Captain Cook made the signal to the Discovery, which was then a-head, to cast anchor, and both ships soon came to. In bringing up the Resolution, her cable parted at the clinch, so that we were obliged to make use of the other anchor. We rode in six fathoms water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of about five leagues from the continent. Cape Newenham now bore S. distant 16 leagues. The farthest hills we could perceive

towards

towards the north, bore N. E. by E. and low land stretched out from the more elevated parts as far as N. by E. Without this there was a shoal of stones and sand, dry at half ebb. The two masters having been sent, each in a boat, to sound between this shoal and the coast, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the soundings were 6 and 7 fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate. At low water, we attempted to get a hawser round the lost anchor, but did not then succeed: however being resolved not to leave it behind us, while there remained the prospect of recovering it, we persevered in our endeavours; and at length, in the evening of the 20th, we had the desired success. While thus employed, the commodore ordered Captain Clerke to send his master in a boat to search for a passage in a S. W. direction. He accordingly did so, but could find no channel in that quarter; nor did it appear, that there was any other way to get clear of the shoals, than by returning by the same track in which we had entered: for though, by following the channel we were now in, we might, perhaps, have got farther down the coast; and though this channel might have probably carried us at last to the northward, clear of the shoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard; and, in case of ill-success, there would have been a great loss of time, that we could not conveniently spare. These reasons induced the commodore to return by the way which had brought us in, and thus avoid the shoals. The latitude of our present station, by lunar observations, was 59 deg. 37 min. 30 sec. N. and our longitude 197 deg. 45 min. 48 sec. E. The most northern part of the coast that we could discern from this station, was supposed to be situate in lat. 60 deg. It formed, to appearance, a low point, to which was given the name of Shoal Nels. The tide of flood sets to the northward, and the ebb to the southward: it rises and falls five or six

fix feet upon a perpendicular, and we reckon that it is high water at eight o'clock on the full and change days.

On Tuesday the 21st, at three o'clock, A. M. having a gentle breeze at N. N. W. we set sail, with three boats a-head employed in founding. Notwithstanding this precaution, we met with greater difficulty in returning than we had in advancing; and were at length under the necessity of anchoring, to avoid the danger of running upon a shoal that had only a depth of five feet. While we lay at anchor, twenty-seven Americans, each in a separate canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with some degree of caution. As they advanced they hallooed, and extended their arms; thereby intimating, as we understood, their peaceable intentions, and how cordially they were ready to receive us. Some of them at last came near enough to receive a few trifling articles, which we threw to them. This gave encouragement to the others to venture alongside; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who obtained wooden vessels, bows, darts, arrows, dresses of skins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever we offered them. They appeared to be the same sort of people with those we had met with all along this coast; and they wore in their lips and noses the same sorts of ornaments; but they were not so well clothed, and were much more dirty. We thought them to be perfectly unacquainted with any civilized nation; they were ignorant of the use of tobacco; nor did we observe in their possession any foreign article, unless a knife may be considered as such. This indeed was nothing more than a piece of common iron fitted in a handle made of wood, so as to serve the purpose of a knife. However, these people understood so well the value and use of this instrument, that it seemed to be almost the only article they thought worth purchasing. The hair of  
most

most of them was shaved, or cut short off, a few locks being left on one side and behind. They wore for a covering on their heads, a hood of skins, and a bonnet seemingly made of wood. One part of their dress, which we procured, was a kind of girdle of skin, made in a very neat manner, with trappings depending from it, and passing between the thighs, so as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the use of this girdle, it is probable, that they sometimes go in other respects naked, even in this high northern latitude; for it can scarcely be supposed that they wear it under their other cloathing. Their canoes were covered with skins, like those we had lately seen; but they were broader, and the hole wherein the person sits was wider, than in any of those we had before met with. Our boats returning from sounding gave them some alarm, so that they all departed sooner than perhaps they otherwise would have done.

On Wednesday the 22d, we got clear of the shoals, yet we could not venture to steer towards the west during the night, but spent it off Cape Newenham. On the 23d, at day-break, we stood to the northward, the Discovery being ordered to go a-head. When we had proceeded two leagues, our soundings decreased to six fathoms. Being apprehensive, that, if we continued this course, we should meet with less water, we hauled to the south. This course brought us gradually into 18 fathoms water; upon which we ventured to steer a little westerly, and afterwards due west, when we at length found 26 fathoms. At noon, by observation, we were in lat. 58 deg. 7 min. long. 194 deg. 22 min. east. We now steered W. N. W. the depth of water increasing gradually to 34 fathoms. On Saturday the 25th, in the evening, having little wind, and an exceeding thick fog, we let go our anchors in 30 fathoms. At six o'clock the next morning, the weather clearing up, we set sail, and stood to the northward.

northward. After we had proceeded on this course for the space of nine leagues, the wind veered to the N. so that we were obliged to steer more westerly. On Tuesday the 28th, at noon, we had clear sunshine for a few hours, during which several observations were made, which determined our lat. to be 59 deg. 55 min. and our long. 190 deg. 6 min. but the time-keeper gave 189 deg. 59 min. difference only 7 min. On the 29th, in the morning, we discovered land, bearing N. W. by W. distant 6 leagues. We stood towards it till between ten and eleven, when we tacked in 24 fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore N. N. W. It was the south-eastern extreme, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height; upon which it received from the captain the name of Point Upright. Its lat. is 60 deg. 17 min. long. 187 deg. 30 min. east. More land was perceived to the westward of this point; and, at a clear interval, we discerned another portion of high land, bearing W. by S. and this seemed to be perfectly separated from the other. On Thursday, the 30th, at four o'clock, P. M. Point Upright bore N. W. by N. distant 6 leagues. A light breeze now springing up at N. N. W. we steered to the north-eastward till four the next morning, when the wind veered to the east; we then tacked, and stood to the N. W. The wind, not long after, shifting to S. E. we steered N. E. by N. and continued this course with soundings, from 35 to 20 fathoms, till noon the following day.

Saturday, August the 1st, we observed in lat. 60 deg. 58 min. long. 191 deg. east. The wind now becoming north-easterly, we first made a stretch of about ten leagues towards the N. W. and then, as we observed no land in that direction, we stood back to the E. for the space of 14 or 15 leagues, and met with a considerable quantity of drift wood. On the 2d, we had variable light winds, with showers  
of

of rain the whole day. In the morning of Monday, the 3d, we resumed our northward course. At noon, by observation, our lat. was 62 deg. 34 min. long. 192 deg. E. Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr. Anderson, Captain Cook's surgeon of the Resolution, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption upwards of a twelve-month. He was a sensible, intelligent young man; an agreeable companion; had great skill in his profession; and had acquired a considerable portion of knowledge in other branches of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of this voyage; and had it pleased God to have prolonged his life to a later period, the public might have received from him such communications on the various parts of natural history of the several places he visited, as would have abundantly shewn he was worthy of a higher commendation than we have here given him. His funeral was performed with the usual ceremonies at sea; after which Mr. Law, surgeon of the Discovery, was removed into the Resolution, and Mr. Samwell, the surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, was appointed to succeed Mr. Law as surgeon of the Discovery.

---

C H A P. XII.

*An Island named to the Memory of the ingenious Mr. Anderson, Captain Cook's late Surgeon, and Friend—Remarks on Sledge Island, King's Island, and Cape Prince of Wales, the western Extreme of America—The Resolution and Discovery anchor in a large Bay on the Asiatic Coast—The Commodore lands at a Village—Interview with some of the Natives, the Tschutski—A descriptive Account of them—The Resolution and Discovery quit the Bay—Their Progress*

northward—Cape Mulgrave—Icy Cape—Description of Sea horses—Cape Lisburne—Unsuccessful Attempts to get through the Ice—Remarks—Arrival on the Coast of Asia—Cape North—Prosecution of the Voyage deferred to the following Year—Return from Cape North along the Coast of Asia—Burney's Island—Several Capes and Bays described—Steer for the Coast of America—An Account of more Capes and Head land—Besborough Island—Captain Cook's Interview with a particular Family—Mr. King visits the same—He is sent to examine the Coast; his Report; and a Description of the Country, &c.—Norton's Sound—Steward's Island discovered and described—Cape Stevens—Point Shallow-water—Shoals—Clerk's Island—Gore's—Pinnacle—The Resolution springs a Leak—The two Ships arrive at Oonalaska—Interview with the Natives and Russian Traders—Mr. Ismyloff comes on Board—Account of the Islands visited by the Russians—Of their Settlement at Oonalaska—A particular Description of the Natives, their Manufactures, Repositories of their Dead, &c.—An Account of the Fish, and other sea Animals—Water Fowls—Land Birds—Quadrupeds Vegetables—Stones, &c.—Resemblance of the Inhabitants of this Side of America, to the Esquimaux and Greenlanders—Observations.

SOON after Mr. Anderson had resigned his breath, we discovered land to the westward, distant 12 leagues. We supposed it to be an island; and the commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom he had a very great regard, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. On Tuesday, the 4th, at three in the afternoon, we saw land extending from N. N. E. to N. W. We steered towards it till four, when, being four or five miles distant from it, we tacked; and, not long afterwards, the wind failing, we let go our anchors in 13 fathoms, over a sandy bottom, at the

the distance of about two leagues from land. Our lat. was now 64 deg. 27 min. N. and long. 194 deg. 18 min. E. We could at intervals discern the coast extending from E. to N. W. and an island of considerable elevation, bearing W. by N. nine miles distant. The land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America, appeared rather low next the sea; but inland it rose in hills, which seemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greenish hue, and was apparently destitute of wood, and free from snow. While our ships remained at anchor, we observed that the tide of flood came from the eastward, and set to the westward, till between the hours of ten and eleven; from which time, till two o'clock the next morning, the stream set to the E. and the water fell three feet. The flood running both longer and stronger than the ebb, we concluded that there was a westerly current besides the tide. Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and soon after anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Not long after we had cast anchor, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King and some other officers, landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast and sea towards the west; but in that direction the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from our ships. The coast of the continent seemed to incline to the north, at a low point, named by us Point Rodney, which bore from the island N. W. half W. at the distance of three or four leagues; but the high land, which assumed a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater distance. The lat. of this island is 64 deg. 30 min. N. and its long. is 193 deg. 57 min. E. It is about 12 miles in circumference. The surface of the ground principally consists of large loose stones, covered in many places with moss and other vegetables; of which 20 or 30 different species were observed,

served, and most of them were in flower. But the Captain saw not a tree or shrub either on the island or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, long-wort, pease, &c. some of which he took on board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds; a fox was also seen. He met with some decayed huts, built partly under-ground. People had lately been upon the island; and it is more than probable that they often repair to it, there being a beaten path from one end to the other. At a small distance from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge Island. It appeared to be such a one as is used by the Russians in Kamtschatka, for the purpose of conveying goods from one place to another over the snow or ice. It was about 20 inches in breadth, and 10 feet in length, had a sort of rail-work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatness; some with wooden pins, but for the most part with thongs or lashes of whale bone; in consequence of which, the captain imagined that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives. We weighed anchor at three o'clock, A. M. of the 6th, and made sail to the N. W. with a light breeze from the southward. Having afterwards but little wind, and that variable, we made but a slow progress; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ships getting into shoal-water, we anchored in seven fathoms, our distance from the coast being about two leagues. Sledge Island then bore S. 51 deg. E. nine or ten leagues distant. Soon after we had let go our anchors, the weather, which had been mitty, cleared up, and we perceived high land extending from N. 40 deg. E. to N. 30 deg. W. seemingly disjointed from the coast near which we lay at anchor, which

1

appeared

appeared to extend to the north-eastward. We at the same time saw an island bearing N. 81 deg. W. at the distance of eight or nine leagues. It seemed to be of small extent, and was named King's Island. We rode at anchor till eight the next morning, when we weighed, and steered a N. W. course. The weather being clear towards the evening, we obtained a sight of the north-western land, distant about three leagues. We passed the night in making short boards, the weather being rainy and misty, and the wind inconsiderable. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we again had a sight of the N. W. land; and not long afterwards having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the shore, we thought proper to anchor in 12 fathoms water, at the distance of about two miles from the coast. Over the western extremity is a lofty peaked hill, situate in the long. of 192 deg. 18 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 36 min. N. A north-easterly breeze springing up at eight o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the south-eastward, hoping to find a passage between this N. W. land and the coast, near which we had cast anchor in the evening of the 6th. But we quickly got into seven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coasts, and the elevated land behind it. Persuaded that the whole was a continued coast, we now tacked and steered for its north-western part, near which we anchored in 17 fathoms. The weather at present was very thick and rainy; but at four the next morning it cleared up, and enabled us to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock or island bore W. by S. another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore W. by N. the peaked hill before-mentioned, S. E. by E. and the point that was under it, S. 32 deg. E. Under this hill is some low land, extending towards the N. W. the extreme point of which was now about one league distant, bearing N. E.

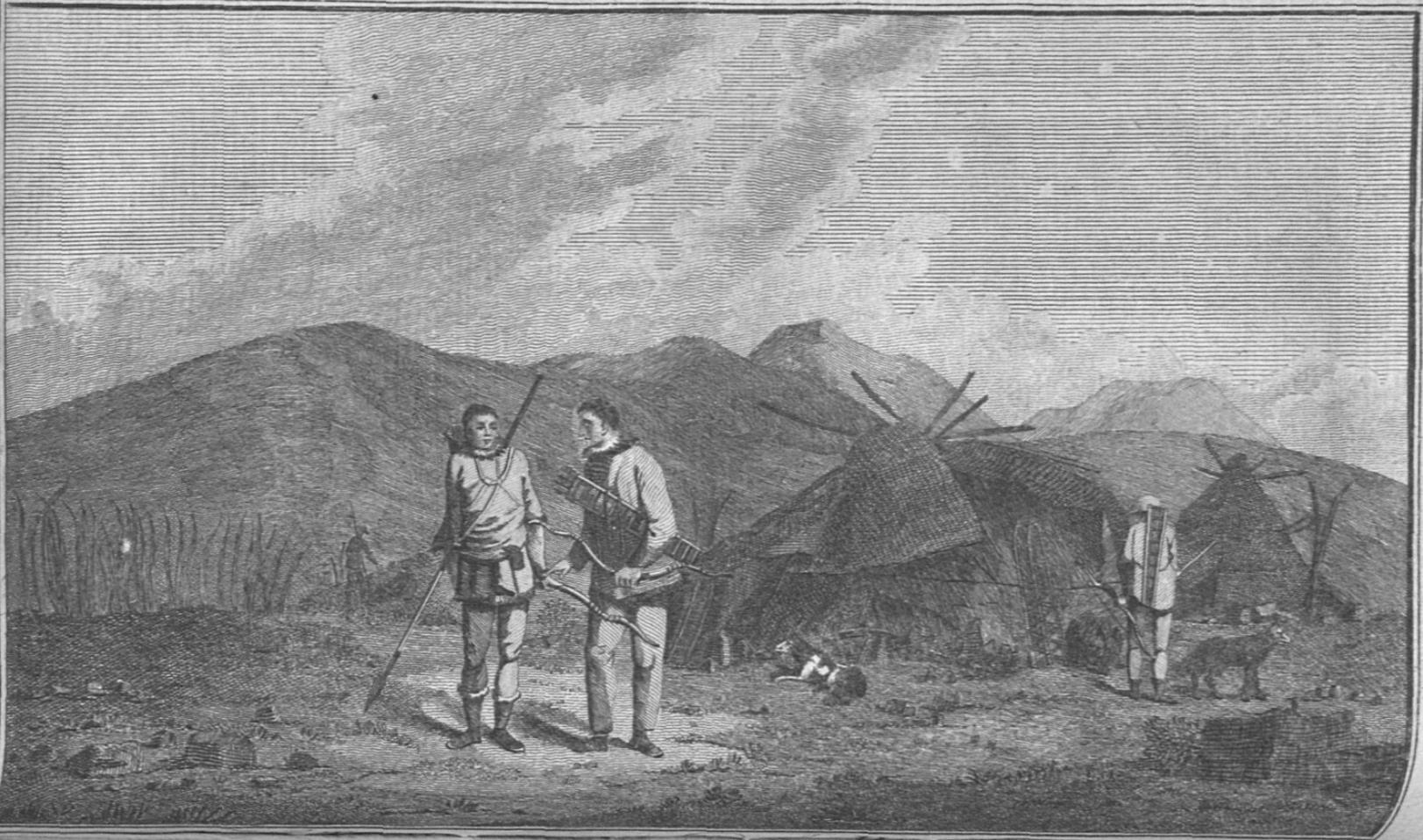
by

by E. Over it, and also beyond it, we observed some high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent. This point of land, which the commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extreme of all America hitherto known. It stands in the long. of 191 deg. 45 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 46 min. N. We fancied that we saw some people on the coast; and perhaps we were not mistaken in our supposition, as some elevations like stages, and others resembling huts, were observed at the same place. This morning, at eight o'clock, a faint northerly breeze arising, we weighed anchor; but our sails were scarcely set, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being at the same time misty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raising such a sea, that it often broke into the ship. Having plied to windward with little effect till two o'clock in the afternoon, we stood for the island which we had perceived to the westward, intending to cast anchor under it till the gale should abate. But upon our nearer approach to this island, we found that it was composed of two small islands, neither of which exceeded three or four leagues in circumference. As these could afford us little shelter, we did not come to an anchor, but continued to stretch towards the W. and about eight o'clock in the evening, we saw land extending from N. N. W. to W. by S. the distance of the nearest part being six leagues. We stood on till ten o'clock, and then made a board towards the E. in order to pass the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we resumed our westward course for the land seen by us the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after seven o'clock, it extended from S. 72 deg. W. to N. 41 deg. E. Betwixt the south-western extremity, and a point bearing W, six miles distant, the

the coast forms a spacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern shore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms. The northern part of this bay bore N. 43 deg. E. its southern point S. 58 deg. W. the bottom of the bay, N. 60 deg. W. between two and three leagues distant; and the two islands that we had passed the preceding day were at the distance of 14 leagues, bearing N. 72 deg. E. When steering for this bay we observed, on the north shore, a village, and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of our vessels. We could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burdens upon their shoulders. At this village Captain Cook proposed to land; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on an eminence near the houses; three of them came down towards the shore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party; for, the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hand; and, by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop, and accept some trifling presents: in return for these, they gave him two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth. The captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles down with them for the purpose of presenting them to him; and that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return. They seemed very timid and cautious: intimating their desire, by signs, that no more of our people should be suffered to come up. On the captain's laying his hand on  
the

the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the eminence, were prepared to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, the captain, and two or three of his companions, introduced themselves among them. The distribution of a few beads among some of them, soon created a degree of confidence, so that they were not alarmed, when the captain was joined by a few more of his people; and, in a short time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a song and a dance; and even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment. Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs; and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to, we cannot say, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows were such as we had observed on the American coast: their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship; and considerable pains had been taken to embellish them with carving, and inlayings of brass, and of a white metal. Those who stood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things,



things, and particularly their cloathing, indicated a degree of ingenuity far surpassing what any one would expect to find among so northern a people.

The Americans we had seen since our arrival on that coast, had round chubby faces, and high cheek-bones, and were rather low of stature. The people among whom we now were, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made: upon the whole, they appeared to be a very different nation. No women, nor children of either sex, were observed, nor any aged persons, except one man, whose head was bald; and he was the only one who bore no arms: the others seemed to be select men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark across his face, which was not perceived in any of the others; all of them had their ears perforated, and some had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments seen about them, for they wear none to their lips: this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans we had lately seen. Their apparel consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close; and besides these caps, which were worn by most of them, we procured from them some hoods, made of dog-skins, that were sufficiently large to cover both head and shoulders. Their hair was apparently black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off, and none of them wore beards. Of the few articles which they obtained from our people, knives and tobacco were what they set the most value upon.

In the village we saw both their winter and their summer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface

of the earth. One of them, which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing, a covering of strong coarse grass was laid, and that again was covered with earth; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar, in which the captain saw nothing but water; at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage, with the house, and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the ground one walked upon; but they cannot be said to be entirely below ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made, and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of sentry box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish. Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. Slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea-animals, composed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inside of one: there was a fire-place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels were deposited, all very dirty. Their bed-places were close to the side, and occupied about one half of the circuit: some degree of privacy seemed to be observed; for there were several partitions, made with skins. The bed and bedding consisted of deer-skins, and most of them were clean and dry. About the houses were erected several  
 staves,

stages, ten or twelve feet in height, such as we had seen on some parts of the American coast. They were composed entirely of bones, and were apparently intended for drying their fish and skins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had great numbers. These dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long soft hair, that resembles wool. They are, in all probability, used for the purpose of drawing their sledges in winter; for it appears that they have sledges, as the captain saw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is, likewise, not improbable, that dogs constitute a part of their food, for several lay dead, which had been killed that morning. The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the northern Americans, some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek, near the village. From the large bones of fish, and other sea-animals, it appeared, that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country seemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen saw not a tree or shrub. At some distance towards the west, they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

Some of us at first, supposed this land to be a part of the island of Alaschka, laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's Map before mentioned; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, we soon conjectured that it was, more probably, the country of the Tschutski, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Beering in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we must have pronounced Mr. Stæhlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment which we would not presume to pass, upon a publication so

respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs. Our party having remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, soon after, the wind becoming southerly, we weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the N. E. between the coast and the two islands. At noon, the next day, August 11, the former extended from S. 80 deg. W. to N. 84 deg. W. the latter bore S. 40 deg. W. and the peaked hill, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 36 deg. E. The latitude of the ship was 66 deg. 5 min. N. the longitude 191 deg. 19 min. E. our soundings were 28 fathoms; and our position nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coasts, each being at the distance of about seven leagues. From this station we steered to the eastward, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coast. In this course the water gradually shoaled; and there being very little wind, and all our endeavours to encrease our depth failing, we were obliged at last to cast anchor in six fathoms; which was the only remedy remaining, to prevent the ships driving into more shallow water. The nearest part of the western land bore W. 12 leagues distant; the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 16 deg. W. and the most northern part of the American continent in sight, E. S. E. the distance of the nearest part being about four leagues. After we had anchored, a boat was dispatched to sound, and the water was found to shoal gradually towards the land. While our ships lay at anchor, which was from six to nine in the evening, we perceived little or no current, nor did we observe that the water rose or fell. A northerly breeze springing up, we weighed, and made sail to the westward, which course soon brought us into deep water; and, during the 12th, we plied to the northward in sight of both coasts, but we kept nearest to that of America. On the 13th, at four  
in

in the afternoon, a breeze arising at S. we steered N. E. by N. till four o'clock the next morning, when, seeing no land, we directed our course E. by N. and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which we supposed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from E. by S. to E. by N. and, not long afterwards, we descried more land, bearing N. by E. Coming rather suddenly into 13 fathoms water, at two in the afternoon, we made a trip off till four, when we again stood in for the land; which, soon after, we saw, extending from N. to S. E. the nearest part being at the distance of three or four leagues. The coast here forms a point, named by us Point Mulgrave, which is situated in the latitude of 67 deg. 45 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 51 min. E. The land seemed to be very low near the sea, but a little farther it rises into hills of a moderate height; the whole was free from snow, and apparently destitute of wood. We now tacked, and bore away N. W. by W. but, in a short time afterwards, thick weather, with rain, coming on, and the wind increasing, we hauled more to the westward.

Saturday the 15th, at two o'clock, A. M. the wind veered to S. W. by S. and blew a strong gale, which abated towards noon. We now stood to the N. E. till six the next morning, when we steered rather more easterly: in this run, we met with several sea-horses, and great numbers of birds; some of which resembled sand-larks, and others were not larger than hedge-sparrows. We also saw some shags, so that we judged we were not far from land; but, having a thick fog, we could not expect to see any; and as the wind blew strong, it was not deemed prudent to continue a course which was most likely to bring us to it. From the noon of this day, to six o'clock in the morning of the following, we steered E. by N. a course which brought us into fifteen fathoms water. We now steered

steered N. E. by E. thinking, by such a course, to increase our depth of water. But in the space of six leagues, it shoaled to 11 fathoms, which induced us to haul close to the wind, that now blew at W. About twelve o'clock, both sun and moon were clearly seen at intervals, and we made some hasty observations for the longitude; which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 70 deg. 33 min. N. gave 197 deg. 41 min. E. The time-keeper, for the same time, gave 198 deg. In the forenoon, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, usually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable we should so soon meet with ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left us no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in 22 fathoms water, being then in the latitude of 70 deg. 41 min. north, and unable to stand on any farther, for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from W. by S. to E. by N. as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of sea-horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the boats to kill some of these animals; but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design; and we continued to ply towards the south, or rather towards the west, for the wind came from that quarter. We made no progress; for, at twelve on the 18th, our latitude was 70 deg. 44 min. north, and we were almost five leagues farther to the east. We were, at present, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at least ten or twelve feet in height: but, farther northward,

it

it seemed to be much higher. Its surface was exceedingly rugged, and, in several places, we saw pools of water upon it. We now stood to the south, and, after running six leagues, shoaled the water to seven fathoms; but it soon increased to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather, which had been hazy, becoming clearer, we saw land extending from S. to S. E. by E. at the distance of three or four miles. The eastern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice, on which account it was distinguished by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is 70 deg. 29 min. north, and its longitude 198 deg. 20 min. east. The other extreme of the land was lost in the horizon; and we had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Discovery being about a mile astern, and to leeward, met with less depth of water than we did; and tacking on that account, the commodore was obliged to tack also, to prevent separation. Our present situation was very critical. We were upon a lee-shore in shoal water; and the main body of the ice to windward, was driving down upon us. It was evident, that if we continued much longer between it and the land, it would force us ashore, unless it should chance to take the ground before us. It appeared almost to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it was to the south westward. After making a short board to the north, Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to tack, and his ship tacked at the same time. The wind proved in some measure favourable, so that we lay up S. W. and S. W. by W.

Wednesday the 19th, at eight in the morning, the wind veering to west, we tacked to the northward; and, at twelve, the latitude was 70 deg. 6 min. north, and the longitude 196 deg. 42 min. east. In this situation, we had a considerable quantity of drift

drift ice about our ships, and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two, we got in with the edge of it. It was less compact than that which we had observed towards the north; but it was too close, and in too large pieces to attempt forcing the ships through it. We saw an amazing number of sea-horses on the ice, and as we were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the evening, we had received, on board the Resolution, nine of these animals; which, till this time, we had supposed to be sea-cows; so that we were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they now have been disappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no person ever eat of them. Notwithstanding this, we made them serve us for provisions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our salt meat. The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it is salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste; but the heart is almost as well tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickness, were extremely useful about our rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them were, at this time, of a very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals, had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth. They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like swine, one over the other; and they roar very



very loud ; so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could discern it. We never found the whole herd sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would awake those that were next to them ; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away, before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the sea, one over the other, in the utmost confusion ; and, if we did not happen, at the first discharge, to kill those we fired at, we generally lost them, though mortally wounded. They did not appear to us to be so dangerous as some authors have represented them, not even when they were attacked. They are, indeed, more so, in appearance, than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats ; but the flash of a musket in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female will defend her young one to the very last, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed ; so that, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds her young one between her forefins. Mr. Pennant, in his Synopsis of Quadrupeds, has given a very good description of this animal under the name of the Arctic Walrus. Why it should be called a sea-horse, is difficult to determine, unless the word be a corruption of the Russian name *Morse* : for they do not in the least resemble a horse. It is, doubtless, the same animal that is found in the Gulph of St. Lawrence, and there called a sea-cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horse ; but this resemblance consists in nothing but the snout. In short, it is an animal

not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the shoulder, was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcase, without the head, skin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds. It may not be improper to remark, that, for some days before this time, we had often seen flocks of ducks flying to the south. They were of two species, the one much larger than the other. The larger sort was of a brown colour; and of the small sort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people said that they also saw geese. This seems to indicate, that there must be land to the northward, where these birds, in the proper season, find shelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

After we had got our sea-horses on board, we were in a manner surrounded with the ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by steering to the southward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light westerly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather. Our soundings were from 12 to 15 fathoms. We then tacked and stood to the northward till ten o'clock, when the wind shifting to the N. we stood to the W. S. W. and W. At two in the afternoon, we fell in with the ice, and kept along the edge of it, being partly directed by the roaring of the sea-horses, for we had an exceeding thick fog. Thus we continued sailing till near midnight, when we got in among the loose pieces of ice. The wind being easterly, and the fog very thick, we now hauled to the southward; and, at ten the next morning, the weather clearing

up, we saw the American continent, extending from S. by E. to E. by S. and, at noon, from S. W. half S. to E. the distance of the nearest part being five leagues. We were at present in the latitude of 69 deg. 32 min. N. and in the longitude of 195 deg. 48 min. E. and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the sea; which, a few days before, had been free from it; and that it extended farther towards the S. than where we first fell in with it. During the afternoon we had but little wind; and the master was sent in a boat to observe whether there was any current, but he found none. We continued to steer for the American land till eight o'clock, in order to obtain a nearer view of it, and to search for a harbour; but seeing nothing that had the appearance of one, we again stood to the N. with a gentle westerly breeze. At this time, the coast extended from S. W. to E. the nearest part being at the distance of four or five leagues. The southern extreme seemed to form a point, to which the name of Cape Lisburne was given. It is situate in the latitude of 69 deg. 5 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 42 min. E. and appeared to be tolerably high land, even down to the sea; but there may be low land under it, which we might not then see, being not less than ten leagues distant from it. In almost every other part, as we advanced to the north, we had found a low coast, from which the land rises to a moderate height. The coast now before us was free from snow, except in one or two places, and had a greenish hue, But we could not discern any wood upon it.

Saturday the 22d, the wind was southerly, and the weather for the most part foggy, with some intervals of sunshine. At eight in the evening, we had a calm, which continued till midnight, when we heard the surge of the sea dashing against the ice, and had many loose pieces about us. A light  
breeze

breeze now arose at N. E. and the fog being very thick, we steered to the S. to get clear of the ice. At eight the next morning, the fog dispersed, and we hauled towards the W. for the commodore finding we could not get to the N. near the coast, by reason of the ice, resolved to try what could be done at a distance from it; and as the wind seemed to be fixed at N. he considered it as a favourable opportunity. In our progress to the westward, the water gradually deepened to 28 fathoms. With the northerly wind the air was sharp and cold; and we had fogs, sunshine, showers of snow and sleet alternately. On the 26th, at ten in the morning, we fell in with the ice. At twelve, it extended from N. W. to E. by N. and seemed to be thick and compact. We were now, by observation, in the latitude of 69 deg. 36 min. N. and in the longitude of 184 deg. E. and it appeared that we had no better prospect of getting to the N. here, than nearer the shore. We continued steering to the W. till five in the afternoon, when we were, in some degree, embayed by the ice, which was very close in the N. W. and N. E. quarters, with a great quantity of loose ice about the edge of the main body. At this time, we had baffling light airs, but the wind soon settled at S. and increased to a fresh gale, accompanied with showers of rain. We got the tack aboard, and stretched to the E. as this was the only direction in which the sea was free from ice.

Thursday the 27th, at four o'clock, A. M. we tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven o'clock in the evening, we were close in with the edge of the ice, which lay E. N. E. and W. S. W. as far in each of those directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats, to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer ridge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if  
it

it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, not to insist on the improbability of such prodigious masses floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed with it; which would certainly have been the case, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or small. The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty to fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. He also thought it highly improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. He was rather inclined to suppose it to have been the production of many winters: It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the summer, could destroy even the tenth part of what now subsisted of this great mass; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The sun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing these enormous masses. For though that luminary is above the horizon a considerable while, it seldom shines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not seen for several successive days. It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these prodigious masses, by grinding one piece against another, and by undermining and washing away those parts which are exposed to the surge of the sea. This was manifest, from the captain's observing, that the upper surface of many pieces had been partly washed away, while the base, or under part, continued firm for several fathoms round that which appeared above the water, like a shoal

shoal round a high rock. He measured the depth of water upon one, and found that it was 15 feet, so that the ships might have sailed over it. If he had not measured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is destroyed in one tempestuous season, than is formed in several winters, and an endless accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is constantly a remaining store, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the spot. A thick fog, which came on while the commodore was thus employed with the boats, hastened him aboard sooner than he could have wished, with one sea-horse to each ship. Our party had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of these animals, on all the ice that we had seen, is really astonishing. We spent the night standing off and on, among the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning, the fog having in some degree dispersed, boats from each of the ships were dispatched for sea-horses; for our people by this time began to relish them, and those we had before furnished ourselves with, were all consumed. At noon, our latitude was 69 deg. 17 min. N. our longitude 183 deg. E. and our depth of water was 25 fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many sea-horses as were deemed sufficient, and the wind freshening at S. S. E. we hoisted in the boats, and steered to the S. W. But being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, we made a board to the eastward, till about eight o'clock, then resumed our course to the S. W. and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the N. W. and blowing a stiff gale, we stretched to the S. W. close hauled.

Friday the 29th, in the morning, we saw the main  
see

ice towards the N. and soon after, perceived land bearing S. W. by W. In a short time after this, more land was seen, bearing W. It shewed itself in two hills, resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. As we made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreased very fast, so that, at twelve o'clock, when we tacked, we found only eight fathoms; being three miles from the coast, which extended from S. 30 deg. E. to N. 60 deg. W. the latter extremity terminating in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before. The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain; but, soon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the southward, westward, and northward. This enabled us to have a tolerable view of the coast; which resembles, in every respect, the opposite coast of America; that is, low land next the sea, with higher land farther back. It was totally destitute of wood, and even of snow; but was, probably, covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the south eastward farther than we could see. As we stood off, the most westerly of the two hills above-mentioned, came open off the bluff point, in a N. W. direction. It had the appearance of an island, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though we did not see it. And if that be the case, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky and steep, received the name of Cape North. It is situated nearly in the latitude of 68 deg. 56 min. N. and in the longitude of 180 deg. 51 min. E. The coast beyond it doubtless assumes a very westerly direction; for we could discern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wishing to see more of the coast to the westward, we tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking we should be able to weather

ther Cape North; but finding we could not, the wind freshening, a thick fog arising, with much snow, and being apprehensive of the ice coming down upon us, the commodore relinquished the design he had formed of plying to the westward, and again stood off shore. The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that Captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic. Having stood off till our soundings were eighteen fathoms, we made sail to the eastward, along the coast, which, we were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Asia. The wind blowing fresh, and there being, at the same time, a thick mist, and a very heavy fall of snow, it was requisite that we should proceed with particular caution: we therefore brought to, for a few hours, in the night. Early the next morning, the 30th, we steered such a course as we judged most likely to bring us in with the land, being guided, in a great measure, by the land; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with incessant showers of snow. At ten o'clock we obtained a sight of the coast, which was at the distance of four miles, bearing S. W. Soon afterwards, our depth of water having decreased to seven fathoms, we hauled off. A very low point now bore S. S. W. distant two or three miles; to the eastward of which there seemed to be a narrow channel, that led into some water which  
we

we saw over the point. It is not improbable, that the lake above-mentioned communicates here with the sea. At noon, the mist dispersing, we had a view of the coast, which extended from S. E. to N. W. by W. Some parts of it were apparently higher than others; but the greatest part of it was rather low, with high land farther up the country. It was almost entirely covered with snow, which had fallen very lately. We ranged along the coast, at the distance of about two leagues, till ten o'clock in the evening, when we hauled off; but resumed our course early on the following morning, when we had another view of the coast, extending from W. to S. E. by S. At eight o'clock the eastern part bore S. and was found to be an island, which at twelve was four or five miles distant, bearing S. W. half S. It is of a moderate height, between four and five miles in circumference, with a steep rocky coast. It is situate in the lat. of 67 deg. 45 min. N. about three leagues from the continent; and is distinguished in the chart by the appellation of Burney's Island. The inland country about this part abounds with hills, some of which are of considerable elevation. The land in general was covered with snow, except a few spots on the coast, which still continued to be low, but somewhat less so than farther towards the W. During the two preceding days, the mean height of the mercury in the thermometer had been frequently below the freezing point, and in general, very little above it; insomuch that the water in the vessels upon deck, was often covered with a sheet of ice. We continued to steer S. S. E. almost in the direction of the coast, till five o'clock in the afternoon, when we saw land bearing S. 50 deg. E. which proved to be a continuation of the coast. We hauled up for it without delay; and at ten in the evening, being a-bread of the eastern land, and doubtful of weathering it, we

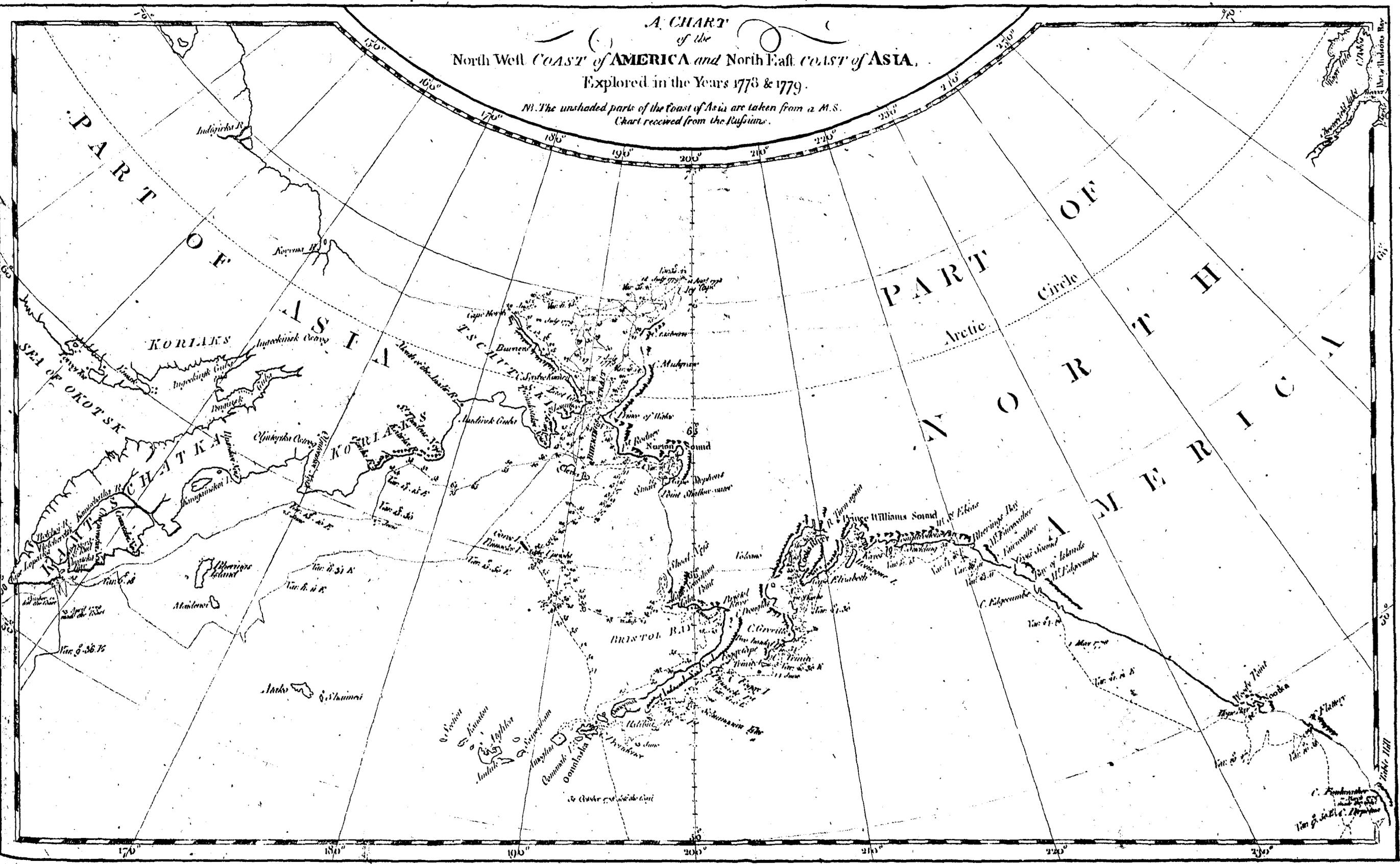
tacked, and made a board towards the W. till after one o'clock the next morning.

Tuesday, the 1st of September, we again made sail to the E. The wind was now very unsettled, continually varying from N. to N. E. Between eight and nine, the eastern extremity of the land was at the distance of six or seven miles, bearing S. by E. A head-land appeared at the same time, bearing E. by S. half S. and not long after, we could discern the whole coast that lay between them, and a little island at some distance from it. The coast now in sight seemed to form several rocky points, that were connected by a low shore, without any appearance of an harbour. At a distance from the sea, many hills presented themselves to our view, the highest of which were involved in snow; in other respects, the whole country had a naked aspect. At seven o'clock in the evening, two points of land beyond the eastern head, opened off it in the direction of S. 37 deg. E. Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before imagined, that this was the country of the Tschutski, or the north-eastern coast of Asia; and that Beering had proceeded thus far in the year 1728; that is, to this head, which, according to Muller, is denominated Serdze Kamen, on account of a rock upon it, that is of the figure of a heart. There are indeed many high rocks on this cape, some one or other of which may perhaps be shaped like a heart. It is a promontory of tolerable height, with a steep rocky cliff fronting the sea. Its lat. is 67 deg. 3 min. N. and its long. 188 deg. 11 min. E. To the E. of it the coast is elevated and cold; but to the W. it is low, and extends N. W. by W. and N. N. W. and it is nearly of the same direction all the way to Cape North. The depth of water is every where the same at an equal distance from the shore; and this is likewise the case on the opposite coast of America. The greatest depth we met with, as we ranged along it, was 23 fathoms.

A CHART  
of the  
North West COAST of AMERICA and North East COAST of ASIA.

Explored in the Years 1778 & 1779.

*Note.* The unshaded parts of the Coast of Asia are taken from a M.S.  
Chart received from the Russians.



fathoms. During the night, or in thick foggy weather, the soundings are no bad guide to those who sail along either of these coasts. On the 2d, at eight in the morning, the most advanced land to the south-eastward, bore S. 25 deg. E. and, from this particular point of view, had an insular appearance. But the thick showers of snow that fell in quick succession, and settled on the land, concealed from our sight at this time a great part of the coast. In a short time after, the sun, which we had not seen for near five days, broke out during the intervals between the showers, by which means the coast was in some degree freed from the fog, so that we obtained a sight of it, and found that the whole was connected. The wind was still northerly, the air was cold, and the mercury in the thermometer did not rise above 35 deg. and was sometimes not higher than 30 deg. At 12 o'clock our lat. was 66 deg. 37 min. N. Cape Serdze Kamen was 12 or 13 leagues distant, bearing N. 52 deg. W. the most southerly point of land that we had in our sight, bore S. 41 deg. E. our soundings were 22 fathoms; and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was about two leagues. The weather was now fair and bright; and as we were ranging along the coast, we saw several of the natives, and some of their dwelling-places, which had the appearance of hillocks of earth. In the course of the evening we passed the Eastern Cape, or the point before mentioned; from which the coast trends to the south-westward. This is the same point of land that we had passed on the 11th of the preceding month. Those who gave credit to Mr. Stahlin's Map, then supposed it to be the eastern point of his island Alaschka; but we were by this time convinced, that it is no other than the eastern promontory of Asia; and perhaps it is the upper Tschukotkoi Nofs, though the promontory which received that name from Beering, is situated fur-

ther towards the S. W. Muller, in his map of the discoveries of the Russians, places the Tschukotskoi Nofs nearly in the lat. of 75 deg. N. and extends it somewhat to the eastward of this cape. But Captain Cook was of opinion, that he had no good authority for so doing. Indeed his own, or rather Deshneff's, account of the distance between the river Anadir and the Nofs, cannot well be reconciled with so northerly a position. For he says, that with the most favourable wind, a person may go by sea from the Nofs to the river Anadir in three whole days, and that the journey by land is very little longer. But Captain Cook, having hopes of visiting these parts again, deferred the discussion of this point to another opportunity. In the mean time, however, he concluded, as Beering had done before him, that this was the easternmost point of all Asia. It is a peninsula of considerable elevation, joined to the continent by a very low, and apparently narrow isthmus. It has next the sea, a steep rocky cliff, and off the very point are several rocks resembling spires. It stands in the long. of 190 deg. 22 min. E. and in the lat. of 66 deg. 6 min. N. and is 13 leagues distant, in the direction of N. 53 deg. W. from Cape Prince of Wales, on the coast of America. The land about this promontory consists of valleys and hills. The former terminate at the sea in low shores, and the latter in steep rocky points. The hills appeared like naked rocks; but the valleys, though destitute of tree or shrub, were of a greenish hue.

Having passed the cape, we steered S. W. half W. towards the northern point of St. Lawrence's Bay, in which our ships had anchored on the 10th of August. We reached it by eight o'clock the following morning, and saw some of the natives at the place where we had before seen them, as well as others on the opposite side of the bay. Not one of them, however, came off to us, which was rather remarkable,

remarkable, as the weather was sufficiently favourable, and as those whom we had lately visited had no reason to be displeas'd with us. These people are certainly the Tschutski, whom the Russians had not hitherto subdued; though it is manifest that they must carry on a traffic with the latter, either directly, or by the interposition of some neighbouring nation; as their being in possession of the spoons we saw among them, cannot otherwise be accounted for. The Bay of St. Lawrence is, at the entrance, at least five leagues in breadth, and about four leagues deep, growing narrow towards the bottom, where it seem'd to be pretty well sheltered from the sea winds, provided there is a competent depth of water for ships. The commodore did not wait to examine it, though he was extremely desirous of finding a convenient harbour in those parts, to which he might resort in the succeeding spring. But he wish'd to meet with one where wood might be obtained, and he knew that none could be found here. From the southern point of this bay, which is situated in the lat. of 65 deg. 30 min. N. the coast trends W. by S. for the space of about nine leagues, and there seems to form a deep bay or river; or else the land in that part is so low that we could not discern it. In the afternoon, about one o'clock, we saw what was first supposed to be a rock, but it was found to be a dead whale, which some Asiatics had killed, and were then towing ashore. They seem'd to endeavour to conceal themselves behind the fish, in order to avoid being seen by us. This, however, was unnecessary, for we proceeded on our course without taking notice of them. On the 4th, at break of day, we hauled to the north-westward, for the purpose of gaining a nearer view of the inlet seen the day before; but the wind, not long after, veering to that direction, the design was abandoned; and steering towards the S. along the coast, we pass'd

two

## 1870 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

two bays, each about six miles deep. The most northerly one is situate before a hill, which is rounder than any other we had observed upon the coast. There is an island lying before the other bay. It is a matter of doubt whether there is a sufficient depth of water for ships in either of these bays, as when we edged in for the shore, we constantly met with shoal water. This part of the country is extremely naked and hilly. In several places on the lower grounds, next the sea, were the habitations of the natives, near all of which were erected stages of bones, like those before-mentioned. This day, at noon, our lat. was 64 deg. 38 min. N. and our long. 188 deg. 15 min. E. the nearest part of the shore was at the distance of three or four leagues; and the most southern point of the continent in sight, bore S. 48 deg. W. By this time the wind had veered to the N. and blew a light breeze; the weather was clear, and the air sharp. The commodore did not think proper to follow the direction of the coast, as he perceived that it inclined westward towards the Gulph of Anadir, into which he had no motive for going. He therefore steered a southerly course, that he might have a sight of the isle of St. Lawrence, which had been discovered by Beering. This island was quickly seen by us, and at eight in the evening it bore S. 20 deg. E. supposed to be at the distance of 11 leagues. The most southerly point of the main land was at that time 12 leagues distant, bearing S. 83 deg. W. Captain Cook conjectured, that this was the point which was called by Beering the eastern point of Suchotski, or Cape Tschukotskoi; an appellation which he gave it with some propriety, because the natives, who said they were of the nation of the Tschutski, came off to him from this part of the coast. Its lat. is 64 deg. 13 min. N. and its long. 186 deg. 36 min. E. The more the captain was convinced of his being at present upon the

Asiatic

Asiatic coast, the more he was at a loss to reconcile his observations with Mr. Stæhlin's Map of the New Northern Archipelago; and he could find no other method of accounting for so important a difference, than by supposing that he had mistaken some part of what Mr. Stæhlin denominates the island of Alafchka for the continent of America, and had missed the channel by which they are separated. But even on that supposition there would still have been a considerable variation. The captain considered it as an affair of some consequence to clear up this point during the present season, that he might have only one object in view in the following one. And as these northerly islands were said to abound with wood, he had some hopes if he should find them, of procuring a competent supply of that article, of which we began to stand in great need. With this view he steered over for the coast of America; and the next day, about five o'clock in the afternoon, land was seen bearing S. three quarters E. which we imagined was Anderson's Island, or some other land near it. On Sunday, the 6th, at four in the morning, we had a sight of the American coast, near Sledge Island, and at six in the evening of the same day, that island was at the distance of about ten leagues, bearing N. 6 deg. E. and the most easterly land in view bore N. 49 deg. E. If any part of what Captain Cook had conjectured to be the coast of the American continent, could possibly be the island of Alafchka, it was that now in sight; in which case he must have missed the channel between it and the main land, by steering towards the W. instead of the E. after he had first fallen in with it. He was, therefore, at no loss where to go, for the purpose of clearing up these doubts. On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we had made a near approach to the land. Sledge Island bore N. 85 deg. W. about eight leagues distant; and the eastern part of the coast bore

bore N. 70 deg. E. with elevated land in the direction of N. E. At this time we perceived a light on shore, and two canoes with people in them, came off towards us. We brought to, in order to give them time to approach; but they resisted all our tokens of amity, and kept at the distance of a quarter of a mile. We therefore left them, and proceeded along the coast. The next morning, at one o'clock, observing that the water shoaled pretty fast, we anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that situation till day-light came on. We then weighed, and pursued our course along the coast, which trended E. and E. half S. At seven o'clock in the evening we were abreast of a point, situated in the long. of 197 deg. E. and in the lat. of 64 deg. 21 min. N. beyond which the coast assumes a more northerly direction. At eight this point, which received the appellation of Cape Darby, bore S. 62 deg. W. the most northern land we had in view; bore N. 32 deg. E. and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was one league. In this situation we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

On Wednesday the 9th, at break of day, we weighed, and made sail along the coast. We now saw land, which we supposed to be two islands; the one bearing E. the other S. 70 deg. E. Not long afterwards, we found ourselves near a coast covered with wood; a pleasing sight, to which we had not been lately accustomed. As we advanced northward, land was seen in the direction of N. E. half N. which proved a continuation of the coast, upon which we now were: we likewise perceived high land over the islands, apparently, at a considerable distance beyond them. This was imagined to be the continent, and the other land the isle of Alaschka; but it was already a matter of doubt, whether we should discover a passage between them, for the water gradually shoaled, as we proceeded  
further

further towards the N. In consequence of this, two boats were dispatched a-head to sound; and the commodore ordered the Discovery, as she drew the least water, to lead; keeping nearly in the middle channel, between the coast and the most northerly island. In this manner we continued our course, till three o'clock in the afternoon, when, having passed the island, our soundings did not exceed three fathoms and a half, and the Resolution once brought the mud up from the bottom. In no part of the channel could a greater depth of water be found, though we had sounded it from one side to the other; we therefore deemed it high time to return.

At this time a head-land on the western shore, to which the name of Bald-head was given, was about one league distant, bearing N. by W. The coast extended beyond it as far as N. E. by N. where it appeared to terminate in a point; behind which the coast of the high land that was seen over the islands stretched itself. The shore on the western side of Bald-head, forms a bay, in the bottom of which is a beach, where we perceived many huts of the natives. We continued to ply back during the whole night, and by day-break on the 10th had deepened our water six fathoms. At nine o'clock, when we were about three miles from the W. shore, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went with two boats in search of wood and water. They landed in that part, where the coast projects into a bluff head, composed of perpendicular strata of a dark blue rock, intermixed with glimmer and quartz. Adjoining to the beach is a narrow border of land, which was at this time covered with long grass, and where they observed some angelica. The ground beyond this, rises with some abruptness; towards the top of this elevation they found a heath, that abounded with berries of various kinds: further onward, the country was rather level, and thinly

covered with small spruce trees, birch, and willows. They saw the tracks of foxes and deer upon the beach, in many parts of which, there was a great abundance of drift-wood : there was also no want of fresh water. Our gentlemen and their attendants having returned on board, the commodore had thoughts of bringing the ships to an anchor here; but the wind then shifting to N. E. and blowing rather on this shore, he stretched over to the opposite one, expecting to find wood there likewise. At eight in the evening, we anchored near the southern end of the most northerly island, for such we then imagined it to be. The next morning, however, we found that it was a peninsula, connected with the continent by a low isthmus, on each side of which a bay is formed by the coast. We plied into the southernmost of these bays, and cast anchor again about twelve o'clock, in five fathoms water, over a muddy bottom; the point of the peninsula, to which the name of Cape Denbigh was given, being one league distant, in the direction of N. 68 deg. W. We observed on the peninsula, several of the natives, and one of them came off in a small canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knife and some beads, with which he appeared to be well pleased; we made signs to him to bring us some provisions, upon which he instantly quitted us, and paddled towards the shore. Happening to meet another man coming off, who had two dried salmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to our ship he refused to give them to any body except Captain Cook. Some of our people fancied, that he asked for him under the name of Capitane; but in this they were perhaps mistaken. Others of the inhabitants came off soon afterwards, and gave us a few dried fish, in exchange for such trifles as we had to barter with them. They shewed no dislike for tobacco, but they were most desirous of knives. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was dispatched

to the peninsula, to procure wood and water; of the former of which articles we observed great plenty upon the beach. At the same time a boat from each of the ships was sent to sound round the bay; and at three o'clock, the wind freshening at N. E. we weighed anchor, and endeavoured to work further in, but that was quickly found to be impracticable, by reason of the shoals which extended entirely round the bay, to the distance upwards of two miles from the shore, as the officers who had been sent out for the purpose of sounding reported. We therefore stood off and on with the ships, waiting for Lieutenant Gore, who returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He informed the commodore, that he had found but little fresh-water, and that the wood could not be procured without difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at some distance from the beach. As this was the case, we stood back to the other shore, and the next morning at eight, all the boats and a detachment of men with an officer, were sent to get wood from the place where Captain Cook had landed on the 10th. After having continued for some time to stand off and on with the ships, we at length cast anchor in less than five fathoms, at the distance of half a league from the coast, whose southern point bore S. 26 deg. W. Cape Denbigh was about 26 miles distant, bearing S. 72 deg. E. Bald-head was nine leagues off, in the direction of N. 60 deg. E. and the island near the eastern shore, S. of Cape Denbigh, named by Captain Cook, Besborough Island, was 15 leagues distant, bearing S. 52 deg. E. This being a very open road, and therefore not a secure station for the ships, the commodore resolved not to wait till our stock of water was completed, as that would take up some time; but only to furnish both ships with wood, and afterwards to seek a more commodious place for the former article. Our people carried

off the drift wood that lay on the beach, and performed that business with great expedition; for, as the wind blew along the shore, the boats were enabled to sail both ways. In the afternoon Captain Cook went on shore, and took a walk into the country, which in those parts where there was no wood, abounded with heath, and other plants, several of which had plenty of berries, all ripe. Scarce a single plant was in flower. The under-wood, such as birch, alders, and willows, occasioned walking to be very troublesome among the trees, which were all spruce, and none of which exceeded seven or eight inches in diameter; but some were observed lying on the beach, that were above twice that size. All the drift-wood that we saw in these northern parts was fir.

Sunday the 13th, a family of the natives came near the spot where our people were occupied in taking off the wood. The captain saw only the husband and wife, and their child, besides a fourth person, who was the most deformed cripple he had ever seen. The husband was nearly blind, and neither he, nor his wife, were such well-looking people as many of those whom we had met with on this coast. Both of them had their lower lips perforated; and they were in possession of some glass-beads, resembling those we had seen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleased them most. For four knives which had been formed out of an old iron-hoop, the captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish, that had been lately caught by them. Some of these were trout, and others were, with respect to size and taste, somewhat between a herrings and a mullet. The captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother immediately burst into tears, then the father, next after him the cripple; and at last, to add the finishing stroke to the concert, the child herself.

This

This music, however, was not of long duration. Mr. King had on the preceding day been in company with the same family. His account of this interview is to the following purport: While he attended the wooing party, a canoe filled with natives approached, out of which an elderly man and woman (the husband and wife above-mentioned) came ashore. Mr. King presented a small knife to the woman, and promised to give her a much larger one in exchange for some fish. She made signs to him to follow her. After he had proceeded with them about a mile, the man fell down as he was crossing a stony beach, and happened to cut his foot very much. This occasioned Mr. King to stop; upon which the woman pointed to her husband's eyes, which were covered with a thick whitish film. He afterwards kept close to his wife, who took care to apprise him of the obstacles in his way. The woman had a child on her back, wrapped up in the hood of her jacket. After walking about two miles, they arrived at an open skin-boat, which was turned on one side, the convex part towards the wind, and was made to serve for the habitation of this family. Mr. King now performed a remarkable operation on the man's eyes. He was first desired to hold his breath, then to breathe on the distempered eyes, and afterwards to spit on them. The woman then took both the hands of Mr. King, and pressing them to the man's stomach, held them there for some time, while she recounted some melancholy history respecting her family; sometimes pointing to her husband, sometimes to her child, and at other times to the cripple, who was related to her. Mr. King purchased all the fish they had, which consisted of excellent salmon, salmon-trout, and mullet. These fish were faithfully delivered to the person he sent for them. The woman was short and squat, and her visage was plump and round. She wore a jacket made of deer skin, with a large hood,

hood, and had on a pair of wide boots. She was punctured from the lip to the chin. Her husband was well made, and about five feet two inches in height. His hair was black and short, and he had but little beard. His complexion was of a light copper cast. He had two holes in his lower lip, in which, however, he had no ornaments. The teeth of both of them were black, and appeared as if they had been filed down level with the gums.

Before night, on Sunday the 13th, we had amply furnished the ships with wood, and had conveyed on board about a dozen tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on shore to cut brooms, and likewise the branches of spruce-trees for brewing beer. About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on board, for the wind freshening had raised so heavy a surf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger. As doubts were still entertained whether the coast, upon which we now were, belonged to an island, or to the continent of America, Lieutenant King was dispatched by the commodore, with two boats, well manned and armed, to make such a search as might tend to remove all difference of opinion on the subject. He was instructed to proceed towards the north as far as the extreme point seen on Wednesday the 9th, or a little further, if he should find it necessary; to land there, and, from the heights, endeavour to discover whether the land he was then upon, imagined to be the island of Alaschka, was really an island, or was connected with the land to the eastward, supposed to be the American continent. If it proved to be an island, he was to examine the depth of water in the channel between it and the continent, and which way the flood tide came: but, if he should find the two lands united, he was to return immediately to the ship. He was directed not to be absent longer than four or five days; and  
it

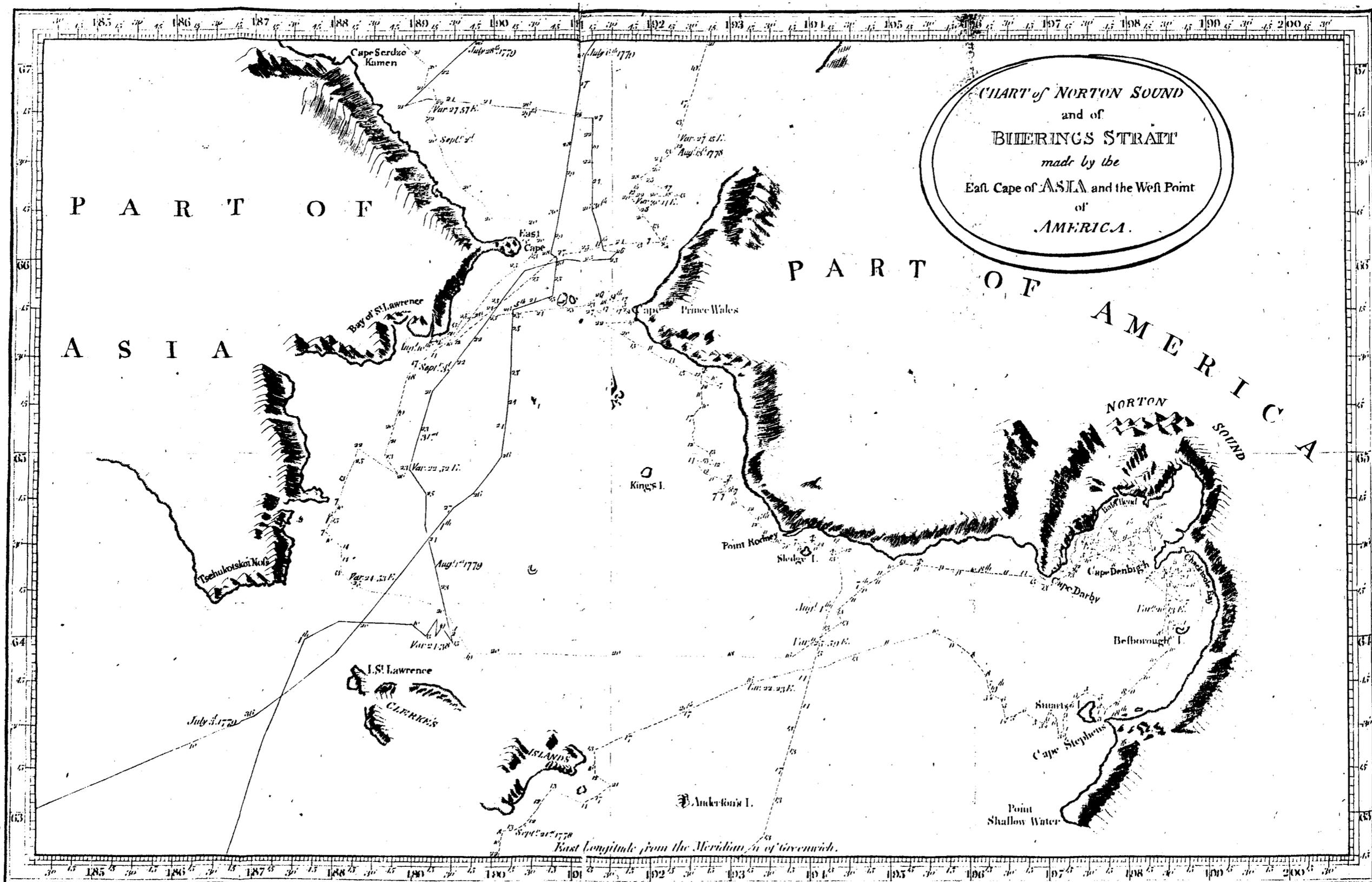
*London: Published as the Act directs, by Alex.<sup>r</sup> Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup>. 16, Paternoster Row.*



it was also mentioned in his instructions, that, if any unforeseen or unavoidable accident should force our ships off the coast, the rendezvous was to be at the harbour of Samganooodha. On Tuesday the 15th, the ships removed over to the bay on the south eastern side of Cape Denbigh, where we cast anchor in the afternoon. Not long after, several of the inhabitants came off in canoes, and gave us some dried salmon in exchange for trifling articles. Early the next morning, nine men, each in a separate canoe, paid us a visit, with the sole view of gratifying their curiosity. They approached the ship with caution, and drawing up abreast of each other, under our stern, favoured us with a song; while one of their number made many ludicrous motions with his hands and body, and another beat upon a sort of drum. There was nothing savage, either in the song, or the gestures with which it was accompanied. There seemed to be no difference, either with respect to size or features, between these people, and those whom we had seen on every other part of the coast, except King George's Sound. Their dress, which chiefly consisted of the skins of deer, was made after the same mode; and they had adopted the practice of perforating their lower lips, and affixing ornaments to them. The habitations of these Americans were situated close to the beach. They consist merely of a sloping roof, without any side-walls, formed of logs, and covered with earth and grass. The floor is likewise laid with logs. The entrance is at one end, and the fire-place is just within it. A small hole is made near the door of the hut, for the purpose of letting out the smoke. A party of men was dispatched, this morning, to the peninsula for brooms and spruce. Half the remainder of the people of both ships were, at the same time, permitted to go ashore and gather berries. These returned on board about twelve o'clock, and the other half then landed

for the same purpose. The berries found here were hurtle-berries, heath-berries, partridge-berries, and wild currant-berries. Captain Cook also went ashore himself, and took a walk over part of the peninsula. He met with very good grass in several places, and scarcely observed a single spot on which some vegetable was not growing. The low land by which this peninsula is united to the continent, abounds with narrow creeks, and likewise with ponds of water, several of which were at this time frozen over. There were numbers of bustards and geese, but they were so shy, that it was impossible to get within musquet-shot of them. Some snipes were also seen; and, on the higher grounds, were partridges of two species; where there was wood, musquitoes were numerous. Some of the officers, who went further into the country than Captain Cook did, met with some of the natives of both sexes, who treated them with civility and kindness. The commodore was of opinion, that this peninsula had been an island in some distant period; for there were marks of the sea having formerly flowed over the isthmus; and even at present, it appeared to be kept out by a bank of sand, stones, and wood, which the waves had thrown up. It was manifest from this bank, that the land here encroached upon the sea, and it was not difficult to trace its gradual formation.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about seven o'clock this evening. He had set out at eight o'clock at night, on the 14th. The crews of the boats rowed without intermission towards the land, till one in the morning of the 15th. They then set their sails, and stood across the bay, which the coast forms to the westward of Bald-head. They afterwards, about three o'clock, again made use of their oars, and, by two in the afternoon, had got within two miles of Bald-Head, under the lee of the high land. At that time all the men in the  
boat



boat belonging to the Resolution, except two, were so oppressed with fatigue and sleep, that Mr. King's utmost endeavours to make them put on were perfectly ineffectual. They, at length, were so far exhausted, as to drop their oars, and fall asleep at the bottom of the boat. In consequence of this, Mr. King, and two gentlemen who were with him, were obliged to lay hold of the oars; and they landed, a little after three o'clock, between Bald-Head and a point that projects to the eastward. Mr. King, upon his landing, ascended the heights, from which he could see the two coasts join, and that the inlet terminated in a small creek or river, before which there were banks of sand or mud, and in every part shoal water. The land, for some distance towards the north, was low and swampy; then it rose in hills; and the perfect junction of those, on each side of the inlet, was traced without the least difficulty. From the elevated situation in which Mr. King took his survey of the sound, he could discern many spacious valleys, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded; and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers towards the N. W. seemed to be considerable; and he was inclined to suppose, from its direction, that it discharged itself into the sea at the head of the bay. Some of his people, penetrating beyond this into the country, found the trees to be of a larger size the further they proceeded. To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Grantley; a near relation of Mr. King. It extends northward as far as the latitude of 64 deg. 55 min. N. The bay, wherein our ships were now at anchor, is situated on the south-eastern side of it, and is denominated Chacktoole by the natives. It is not a very excellent station, being exposed to the S. and S. W. winds. Nor is a harbour to be met with in all this sound. We were so fortunate, however, as to

have the wind from the N. E. and the N. during the whole time of our continuance here, with very fine weather. This afforded an opportunity of making a great number of lunar observations, the mean result of which gave 197 deg. 13 min. E. as the longitude of the anchoring place on the western-side of the sound, while its latitude was 64 deg. 31 min. N. With respect to the tides, the night flood rose two or three feet, and the day flood was scarcely perceivable. Captain Cook being now perfectly convinced, that Mr. Stæhlin's Map was extremely erroneous, and having restored the continent of America to the space which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary island of Alaschka, thought it now high time to quit these northerly regions, and retire to some place for the winter, where he might obtain provisions and refreshments. He did not consider Petropaulowka, or the harbour of St. Peter and Paul in Kamtschatka, as likely to furnish a sufficient supply. He had likewise other reasons for not going thither at present; the principal of which was, his great unwillingness to remain inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the consequence of passing the winter in any of these northern countries. He at length concluded, that no situation was so convenient for our purpose as the Sandwich Islands. To them, therefore, he formed a resolution of repairing. But a supply of water being necessary before he could execute that design, he determined, with a view of procuring this essential article, to search the coast of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the southward. If he should not meet with success in that search, his intention was to reach Samganoedha, which was appointed for our place of rendezvous, in case the ships should happen to separate.

On Thursday, the 17th, in the morning we weighed anchor with a light easterly breeze, and  
steering

steering to the southward, attempted to pass within Besborough Island; but, though it is six or seven miles distant from the continent, we were prevented, by meeting with shoal water. Having but little wind all the day, we did not pass that island before it was dark; and the night was spent under an easy sail. On the 18th, at day break, we resumed our progress along the coast. At noon, our soundings were no more than five fathoms. Besborough Island, at this time, bore N. 42 deg. E. the most southerly land in sight, which also proved to be an island, bore S. 66 deg. W. the passage between it and the continent, was in the direction of S. 40 deg. W. and the nearest land was at the distance of about two miles. We continued to steer for this passage, till the boats which were a-head made the signal for having no more than three fathoms water. In consequence of this, we hauled without the island, and displayed the signal for the Resolution's boat to keep between the shore and the ships. This island, to which the name of Stuart's Island was given, lies in the latitude of 63 deg. 35 min. N. and is 17 leagues distant from Cape Denbigh, in the direction of S. 27 deg. W. It is six or seven leagues in circumference. Though some parts of it are of a moderate height, yet, in general, it is low, with some rocks off the western part. The greatest part of the coast of the continent is low land, but we perceived high land up the country. It forms a point, opposite the island, which was distinguished by the name of Cape Stephens, and is situated in the latitude of 63 deg. 33 min. N. and in the longitude of 197 deg. 41 min. E. Some drift wood was observed on the shores, both of the island and of the continent; but not a single tree was seen growing upon either. Vessels might anchor, upon occasion, between the continent and the N. E. side of this island, in a depth of five fathoms, sheltered from the easterly, westerly, and southerly winds.

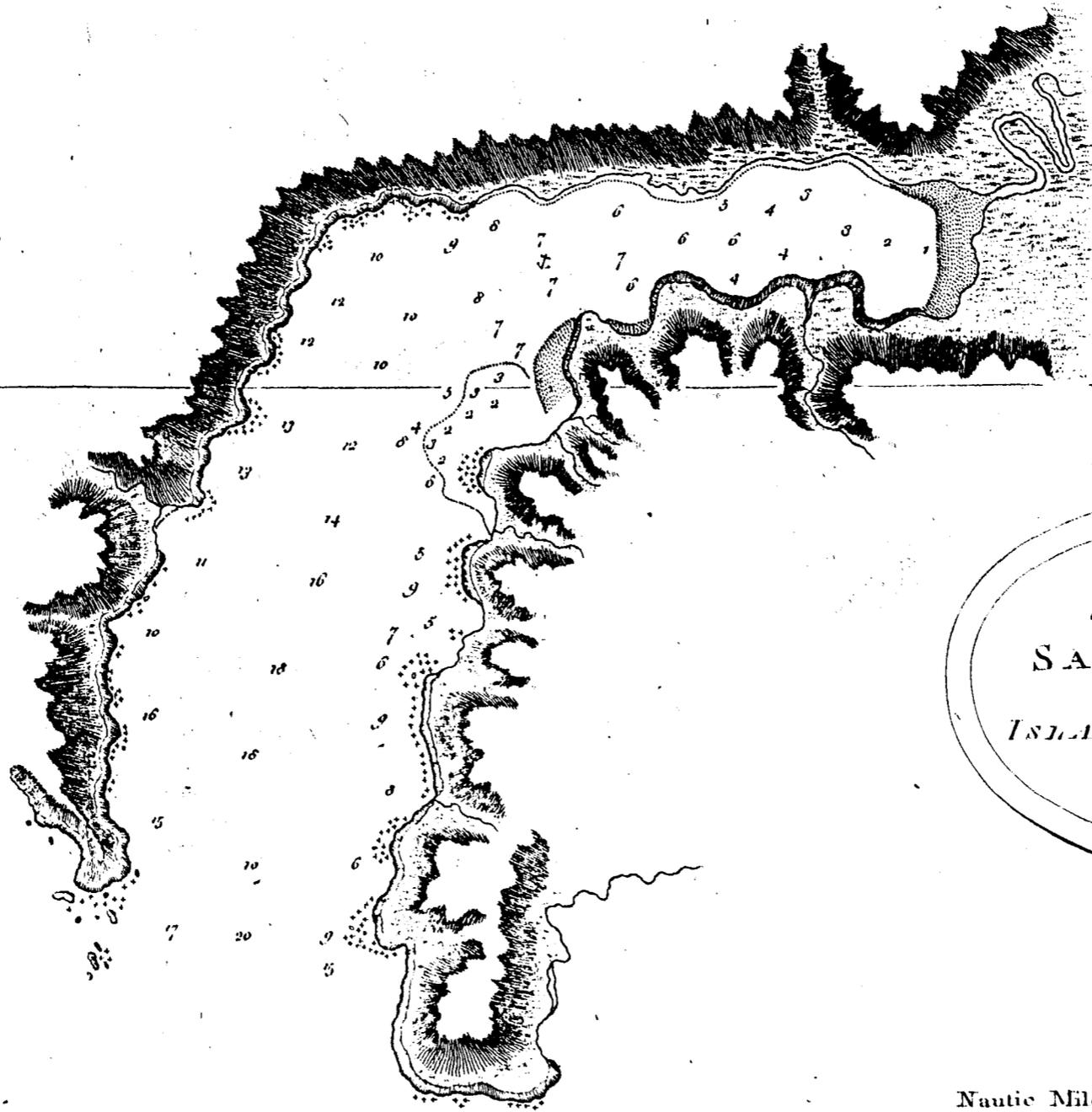
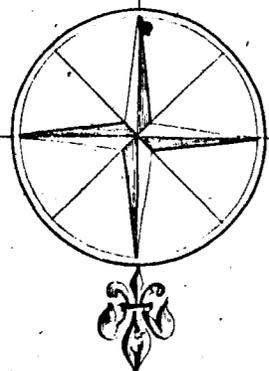
But this station would be entirely exposed to the northerly winds, the land, in that direction, being too remote to afford any security. Before we reached Stuart's Island, we passed two little islands, situate between us and the main land; and as we ranged along the coast, several of the natives made their appearance upon the shore, and, by signs, seemed to invite us to approach.

We were no sooner without the island, than we steered S. by W. for the most southern part of the continent in sight, till eight in the evening, when, the depth of water having decreased from six fathoms to less than four, we tacked and stood to the northward into five fathoms, and then passed the night in standing off and on. At the time we tacked, the southernmost point of land above mentioned, which we named point Shallow Water, bore S. half E. at the distance of seven leagues. On the 19th, at day-break, we resumed our southerly course; but shoal water soon obliged us to haul more to the westward. We were at length so far advanced upon the bank, that we could not hold a N. N. W. course, as we sometimes met with only four fathoms. The wind blowing fresh at E. N. E. it was now high time to endeavour to find a greater depth of water, and to quit a coast upon which we could no longer navigate with safety. We therefore hauled the wind to the northward, and the water gradually increased in depth to eight fathoms. At this time, we were about twelve leagues distant from the continent, and nine to the W. of Stuart's Island. We saw no land to the southward of Point Shallow Water, which Captain Cook judged to lie in the latitude of 63 deg. N. so that between this latitude and Shoal Nefs, in latitude 60 deg. the coast has not been explored. It is probably accessible only to boats, or very small vessels; or, if there are channels for vessels of greater magnitude, it would require some time to find them. From the  
mast

mast head, the sea within us appeared to be chequered with shoals; the water was very muddy and discoloured, and much fresher than at any of the places where our ships had lately anchored. From this we inferred, that a considerable river runs into the sea, in this unexplored part. After we had got into eight fathoms water, we steered to the westward, and afterwards more southerly, for the land discovered by us on the 5th of September, which at noon on the 20th, bore S. W. by W. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues. We had now a fresh gale at N. and, at intervals, showers of hail and snow, with a pretty high sea. To the land before us, the commodore gave the appellation of Clerke's Island. It stands in the latitude of 63 deg. 15 min. and in the longitude of 190 deg. 30 min. It seemed to be an island of considerable extent, in which are several hills, all connected by low ground, so that it looks, at a distance, like a group of islands. Near its eastern parts is a little island, which is remarkable for having on it three elevated rocks. Both the greater island, and this smaller one, were inhabited. In the afternoon, about six o'clock, we reached the northern point of Clerke's Island; and having ranged along its coast till dark, we brought to during the night. Early the next morning, we again stood in for the coast, and proceeded along it in quest of a harbour, till twelve o'clock, when finding no probability of success, we left it and steered S. S. W. for the land discovered by us on the 29th of July; having a fresh gale at N. accompanied with showers of snow and sleet.

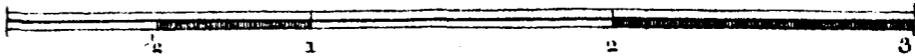
Wednesday the 23d, at day break, the land above-mentioned made its appearance, bearing S. W. at the distance of six or seven leagues. From this point of view, it resembled a cluster of islands; but it was found to be only one, of about thirty miles in extent, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. the south-eastern extremity being Cape Upright, which

which we have mentioned before. The island is narrow, particularly at the low necks of land by which the hills are connected. Captain Cook afterwards found, that it was entirely unknown to the Russians, and therefore, considering it as a discovery of our own, he named it Gore's Island. It appeared to be barren and destitute of inhabitants, at least we saw none. Nor did we observe such a number of birds about it, as we had seen when we first discovered it. But we perceived some sea-otters, an animal which we had not found to the N. of this latitude. About twelve miles from Cape Upright, in the direction of S. 72 deg. W. stands a small island, whose lofty summit terminates in several pinnacle rocks, for which reason it obtained the name of Pinnacle Island. At two o'clock, P. M. after we had passed Cape Upright, we steered S. E. by S. for Samganooha, with a gentle breeze at N. N. W. being resolved to lose no more time in searching for a harbour among islands, which we now began to suspect had no existence; at least, not in the latitude and longitude in which they had been placed by modern delineators of charts. On the 24th in the evening, the wind veered to S. W. and S. and increased to a fresh gale. We continued our easterly course till eight in the morning of the 25th, when in the longitude of 191 deg. 10 min. and in the latitude of 58 deg. 32 min. we tacked and stood to the westward; soon after which, the gale increasing, we were reduced to two courses, and close-reefed main-top-sails. In a short time after, the Resolution sprung a leak, under the starboard buttock, which was so considerable, as to keep one pump constantly employed. We would not venture to put the ship upon the other tack, from the apprehension of getting upon the shoals that lie to the N. W. of Cape Newenham; but continued to steer towards the W. till six in the evening of Saturday the 26th, when we wore and stood



SKETCH  
of the Harbour of  
SANGANOODA,  
on the  
ISLAND CONALASKA.  
Lat.  $53^{\circ} 35' N.$   
Long.  $153^{\circ} 30' E.$   
Variation  $20.3 E. 1778$

Nautic Miles.



T. Bowen sculp.

to the eastward; and then the leak gave us no farther trouble. This proved, that it was above the water-line, which gave us great satisfaction. The gale had now ceased, but the wind continued at S. and S. W. for some days longer.

On Friday the 2nd of October, at day break, we saw the isle of Oonalashka, in a S. E. direction. But as the land was obscured by a thick haze, we were not certain with respect to our situation till noon, when the observed latitude determined it. We hauled into a bay, ten miles to the westward of Samganoodha, known by the name Egoochshac; but finding very deep water, we speedily left it. The natives visited us at different times, bringing with them dried salmon, and other fish, which our sailors received in exchange for tobacco. Only a few days before, every ounce of tobacco that remained in the ship, had been distributed among them, and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so thoughtless and improvident a being is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if we had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thousand per cent. The next day, at one o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the sheathing of and under the wale of the Resolution on the starboard-side. Many of the seams were found entirely open; it was therefore not to be wondered at, that so much water had got into the ship. We cleared the fish and spirit rooms, and the after-hold; and disposed things in such a manner, that, in case of any future leaks of the same nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Besides this work, and completing our stock of water, we cleared the fore-hold, and took in a quantity of ballast.

The vegetables we had met with when we were here before, were now, for the most part, in a state of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one-third of the people, by turns, had permission to go ashore and gather them. Considerable quantities of them were also brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any seeds of the scurvy, among the people of either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them. We likewise procured abundance of fish; at first, chiefly salmon, both fresh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the fresh salmon was in the highest perfection; but there was one sort, which, from the figure of its head, we called hook-nosed, that was but indifferent. Drawing the seine several times, at the head of the bay, we caught many salmon trout, and a halibut that weighed 254 pounds. We afterwards had recourse to hooks and lines. A boat was sent out every morning, which seldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than sufficient to serve all our people. These fish were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus we not only obtained a supply of fish for present consumption, but had some to carry with us to sea. On the 8th, Captain Cook received, by the hands of a native of Oonalashka, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, considering the place we were in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye in the form of a loaf, as it enclosed some salmon, well seasoned with pepper. This man had brought a similar present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the captains, written in a character which none of us understood. It was natural to imagine, that these two presents were from some Russians now in our neighbourhood, and therefore the captains sent, by the same messenger, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine and porter, which they supposed

supposed would be highly acceptable. Captain Cook also sent, in company with Derramoufik, Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, for the purpose of gaining farther information; with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that we were Englishmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

Saturday the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who with several others resided at Egoochishac, where they had some store-houses, a dwelling-house, and a sloop of about 30 tons burthen. One of these Russians was either master or mate of this vessel. They were all three intelligent well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give us all the information we could desire. But for want of an interpreter, we found it very difficult to understand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the discoveries that had been made from Kamtschatka, by Beerīng, Tschirikoff, and Spangenberg. But they had not the least idea to what part of the world Mr. Stahlin's Map referred, when it was laid before them. When Captain Cook pointed out Kamtschatka, and some other places upon this map, they asked him whether he had seen the islands there represented; and, on his answering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of islands are laid down, and said, that he had cruised there in search of land, but could never meet with any. The captain then shewed them his own chart, and found that they were strangers to every part of the coast of America, except that which lies opposite this island. One of these men said, that he had been with Beerīng in his American voyage; but he must then have been very young; for even now, at the distance of 37 years, he had not the appearance

ance of being aged. Never was greater respect paid to the memory of any eminent person, than by these men to that of Beering. The trade in which they are engaged is very advantageous, and its being undertaken and extended to the eastward of Kamtschatka, was the immediate result of the second voyage of that distinguished navigator, whose misfortunes proved the source of much private benefit to individuals, and of public utility to the Russian empire. And yet, if his distresses had not accidentally carried him to the island which bears his name, where he ended his life, and from whence the remainder of his ship's crew brought back specimens of its valuable furs, the Russians would probably have undertaken no future voyages, which could lead them to make discoveries in this sea, towards the American coast. Indeed, after his time, their ministry seem to have paid less attention to this object; and for what discoveries have been since made, we are principally indebted to the enterprising spirit of private merchants, encouraged, however, by the superintending care of the court of Peterfburg. The three Russians having remained all night with the commodore, visited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, perfectly satisfied with the reception they had met with. They promised to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the islands situate between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka. In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr. Webber were at a village, not far from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who proved to be the principal person among his countrymen in this and the adjacent isles. His name was Erasmus Gregorloff Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three persons, attended by twenty or thirty smaller canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they constructed a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they had brought with them,

them, and they afterwards made others for themselves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with grass. Ismyloff having invited the captain and Mr. Webber into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of sense; and the captain felt no small mortification in not being able to converse with him, except by signs, with the assistance of figures, and other characters. The captain requested him to favour him with his company on board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had indeed moved into the neighbourhood of our station, for the express purpose of waiting upon us. The commodore was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promised, but he was disappointed. However, Ismyloff assured him he should have it, and he kept his word. The captain found him very well acquainted with the geography of those parts, and with all the discoveries which had been made in this quarter by the Russians. On seeing the modern maps, he instantly pointed out their errors: he said he had accompanied Lieutenant Syndo, or (as he called him) Synd, in his northern expedition; and, according to his account, they did not proceed farther than the Tschukotkoi Nofs, or rather than St. Lawrence's Bay; for he pointed on our chart to the very place where Captain Cook landed. From thence, he said, they went to an island in the lat. of 63 deg. N. upon which they did not land. He did not recollect the name of that island; but the captain conjectured, that it was the same with that to which the appellation of Clerke's Island had been given. To what place Synd repaired afterwards, or in what particular manner he employed the two years, during which, according to Ismyloff, his researches lasted, he was either unable or unwilling to inform us. Perhaps he did not comprehend our enquiries on  
this

this point ; and yet, in almost every other thing, we found means to make him understand us. This inclined us to suspect, that he had not really been in this expedition, notwithstanding what he asserted. Not only Ismyloff, but also the others affirmed, that they were totally unacquainted with the American continent to the northward ; and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other Russian, had seen it of late years. They called it by the same name which Mr. Stæhlin has affixed to his large island, that is Alafchka. According to the information we obtained from Ismyloff, and his countrymen, the Russians have made several attempts to gain a footing upon that part of the North American continent, that lies contiguous to Oonalasska and the adjacent islands, but have constantly been repulsed by the inhabitants, whom they represent as a very treacherous people. They made mention of two or three captains, or chief men, who had been murdered by them ; and some of the Russians shewed us wounds, which they declared they had received there. Ismyloff also informed us, that in the year 1773, an expedition had been undertaken into the Frozen Ocean in sledges, over the ice, to three large islands that are situate opposite the mouth of the river Kovyma. But a voyage which he said he himself had performed, engaged our attention more than any other. He told us that on the 12th of May, 1771, he sailed from Bolcheretzka, in Kamtschatka, in a Russian vessel to Marcekan, one of the Kurile islands, where there is an harbour, and a Russian settlement. From this island he proceeded to Japan, where his continuance appears to have been but short ; for, as soon as the Japanese knew that he and his companions professed the Christian faith, they made signs for them to depart ; but did not, so far as we could understand him, offer any insult or violence. From Japan he repaired to Canton, in China ; and from thence, in a French ship

ship to France. He then travelled to Peterburgh, and was afterwards sent out again to Kamtschatka. We could not learn what became of the vessel in which he first embarked, nor what was the principal intention of the voyage. His being unable to speak one word of the French language, rendered this story rather suspicious; he seemed clear, however, as to the times of his arrival at the different places, and of his departure from them, which he put down in writing. The next morning (Friday the 16th) he offered Captain Cook a sea-otter skin, which he said was worth 80 rubles at Kamtschatka. The captain, however, thought proper to decline the offer; but accepted of some dried fish, and several baskets of the lily, or faranne root. In the afternoon, Ismyloff, after having dined with Captain Clerke, left us with all his retinue, but promised to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he paid us another visit, bringing with him the charts above-mentioned, which he permitted Captain Cook to copy, and the contents of which are the foundation of the following remarks.

These charts were two in number, they were both manuscripts, and bore every mark of authenticity. One of them comprehended the Penshinskian sea; the coast of Tartary, as low as the lat. of 41 deg. N. the Kurile Islands, and the peninsula of Kamtschatka. Since this chart had been made, Wawseelec Irkeechoff, a naval captain, explored, in the year 1758, the coast of Tartary, from Okotsk, and the river Amur, to Japan, or 41 deg. of northern lat. We were informed by Mr. Ismyloff, that a great part of the sea-coast of Kamtschatka had been corrected by himself; and he described the instrument used by him for that purpose, which must have been a theodolite. He also told us, that there were only two harbours proper for shipping, on all the eastern coast of Kamtschatka, viz. the bay of Awatska, and the river Olutora, in the bottom of the gulph of the  
same

same name; that there was not one harbour on its western coast; and that Yamisk was the only one, except Okotk, on all the western side of the Pen-shinkian sea, till we come to the river Amur. The Kurile Islands contain but one harbour, and that is on the N. E. side of Mareekan; where, as we have already mentioned, the Russians have a settlement. The other chart comprehended all the discoveries that the Russians had made to the eastward of Kamtschatka, towards America. That part of the American coast, with which Tischerikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between the latitude of 58 deg. and 58 and an half deg. N. and 75 deg. of eastern longitude from Okotk, or 218 and an half deg. from Greenwich; and the place where Beering anchored in 59 and an half deg. of lat. and 63 and an half deg. of long. from Okotk, or 207 deg. from Greenwich. To say nothing of the long. which may, from several causes, be erroneous, the lat. of the coast discovered by Beering and Tischerikoff, particularly that part of it which was discovered by the latter, differs considerably from Mr. Muller's Chart. Whether the chart now produced by Ismyloff, or that of Muller, be most erroneous in this respect, it may be difficult to determine. According to Ismyloff's account, neither the number nor the situation of the islands which are dispersed between 52 deg. and 55 deg. of lat. in the space between Kamtschatka and America, is properly ascertained. He struck out about a third of them, assuring us that they did not exist; and he considerably altered the situation of others, which he said was necessary, from the observations which he himself had made; and there was no reason to entertain a doubt about this. As these islands are nearly under the same parallel, different navigators, misled by their different reckonings, might easily mistake one island, or cluster of islands for another; and imagine they had made a new discovery, when they had only found old ones; in a position somewhat

what different from that which their former visitors had assigned to them. The isles of St. Theodore, St. Stephen, St. Abraham, St. Macarius, Seduction Island, and several others, which are represented in Mr. Muller's chart, were not to be found in this now produced to us; nay, Ismyloff and the other Russians assured Captain Cook, that they had been frequently fought for without effect. Nevertheless, it is difficult to believe, that Mr. Muller could place them in his chart without some authority. Captain Cook, however, confiding in the testimony of these people, whom he thought competent witnesses, omitted them in his chart; and made such corrections respecting the other islands, as he had reason to think were necessary.

We shall now proceed to give some account of the islands, beginning with those which are nearest to Kamtschatka, and computing the long. from the harbour of Petropaulowka, in the bay of Awatka. The first is Beering's Island, in 55 deg. of northern lat. and 6 deg. of eastern long. At the distance of 10 leagues from the southern extremity of this, in the direction of E. by S. or E. S. E. stands Maidenoi Ostroff, or the Copper Island. The next island is Atakou, in the lat. of 52 deg. 45 min. and in the long. of 15 deg. or 16 deg. The extent of this island is about 18 leagues in the direction of E. and W. and it is perhaps the same land which Beering fell in with, and to which he gave the name of Mount St. John. We next come to a cluster of six or more islands; two of which, Amluk and Atghka, are of considerable extent, and each of them has a good harbour. The middle of this group lies in the lat. of 52 deg. 30 min. and 28 deg. of long. from the bay of Awatika, and its extent is about four degrees in the direction of E. and W. These are the isles that Ismyloff said were to be removed four degrees to the eastward. In the situation they have in Captain Cook's chart, was a group, comprehending 10 little islands, which  
we

we were informed were entirely to be struck out ; and also two islands, situate between them and the group to which Oonalashka appertains. In the place of these two, an island, named Amoghta, was introduced.

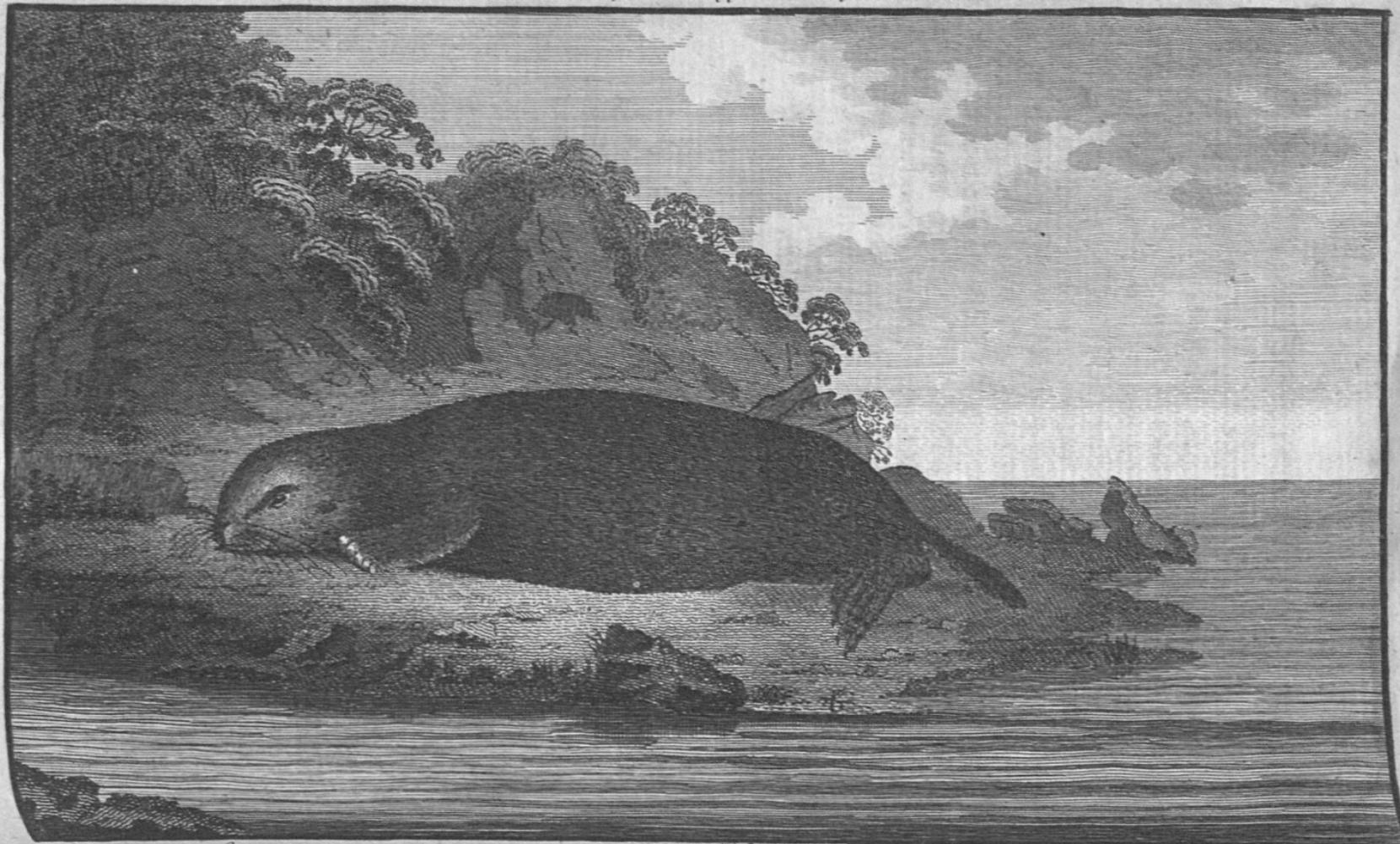
The situation of many of these islands may, perhaps, be erroneously laid down. But the position of the largest group, of which Oonalashka is one of the most considerable islands, is free from such errors. Most of the islands that compose this cluster, were seen by us ; their long. and lat. were therefore determined with tolerable accuracy ; particularly the harbour of Samganoodha, in Oonalashka, which must be considered as a fixed point. This group may be said to extend as far as Halibut Idles, which are forty leagues distant from Oonalashka, towards the E. N. E. Within these idles, a passage, communicating with Bristol Bay, was marked in Ismyloff's chart, which converts about 15 leagues of the coast, that Captain Cook had supposed to be part of the continent, into an island, named Ooneemak. This passage might easily escape us, being, as we were informed, extremely narrow, shallow, and only to be navigated through with boats, or vessels of very small burthen. From the chart, as well as from the testimony of Ismyloff and his countrymen, it appears, that this is as far as the Russians have made any discoveries, or have extended themselves, since the time of Beerling. They all affirmed, that no persons of that nation had settled themselves so far to the eastward, as the place where the natives gave the note to Captain Clerke ; which being delivered to Ismyloff for his perusal, he said, that it had been written at Oomanak. From him we procured the name of Kodiak, the largest of Schumagin's Islands ; for it had no name assigned to it upon the chart which he produced. It may not be improper to mention, that no names were put to the islands which Ismyloff said were to  
be

be struck out of the chart ; and Captain Cook considered this as some confirmation that they have no existence. The American continent is here called by the Russians, as well as by the islanders, Alaschka ; which appellation, though it properly belongs only to that part which is contiguous to Ooneemak, is made use of by them when speaking of the American continent in general. This is all the intelligence we obtained from these people, respecting the geography of this part of the globe ; and perhaps this was all the information they were able to give. For they repeatedly assured Captain Cook, that they knew of no other islands, besides those which were represented upon this chart, and that no Russian had ever visited any part of the American continent to the northward, except that which is opposite the country of the Tschutskis. If Mr. Ståhlin was not greatly imposed upon, what could induce him to publish a map so singularly erroneous as his map of the New northern Archipelago, in which many of these islands are jumbled together without the least regard to truth ? Nevertheless, he himself styles it “ a very accurate little map.”

Ismyloff continued with us till the evening of the 21st, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook entrusted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, enclosing a chart of all the northern coasts we had visited. Ismyloff said there would be an opportunity of transmitting it to Kamtschatka, or Okotsk, in the course of the succeeding spring ; and that it would be at Peteriburg the following winter. He gave the captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, who resides at Bolcheretzk, in that peninsula ; and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowska. This gentleman seemed to possess abilities that might entitle him to a higher station than that in which we found him. He had considerable knowledge in astronomy, and in the most useful branches of the

mathematics. Captain Cook made him a present of an Hadley's octant; and though, perhaps, it was the first he had ever seen, he very quickly made himself acquainted with most of the uses to which that instrument can be applied.

Thursday the 22d, in the morning, we made an attempt to get out to sea, with the wind at S. E. but did not succeed. In the afternoon of the 23d, we were visited by one Jacob Ivanovitch Sopotnicoff, a Russian, who commanded a small vessel at Oomanak. This man seemed very modest, and would drink no strong liquor, of which the other Russians, whom we had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what supplies could be obtained at the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr. Ismyloff. But by all accounts, every thing we should have occasion to purchase at that place, was very scarce, and bore a high price. This man informed us, that he was to be at Petropaulowska in the ensuing May; and, as we understood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He seemed very desirous of having some token from the captain to carry to Major Behm; and to gratify him, the captain sent a small spying-glass. After we had contracted an acquaintance with these Russians, several of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island, where they always met with very friendly treatment. It consisted of a dwelling-house and two store-houses. Besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and of the Oonashkans, as servants to the former. Some other natives of this island, who appeared to be independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians, were all of the male sex; and they are either taken or purchased from their parents when young. There were at present about twenty of these, who could be considered



01 SEA OTTER *Lutra lutra* (Linn.)

considered in no other light than as children. They all reside in the same house, the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the Oonalashkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally consists of fish, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the first and last table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Russians can make indifferent things palatable. They dress whale's flesh in such a manner as to make it very good eating; and they have a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine and fried, which is a tolerable substitute for bread. They may, perhaps, occasionally taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is one of the ingredients. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally sip at their meals, they drink no other liquor than pure water; and it seems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing stronger. As the island furnishes them with subsistence, so it does in some measure with clothing. This is chiefly composed of skins. The upper garment, which is made like a waggoner's frock, reaches down to the knees. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of some kind of strong gut, but the soles and upper leathers are of Russian leather. Their two chiefs, Isnyloff and Ivanovitch, wore a calico frock; and they, as well as several others, had shirts of silk. Many Russians are settled upon all the most considerable islands between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka, for the purpose of collecting furs. Their principal object is the sea-beaver or otter; but skins of inferior value also make a part of their cargoes. We neglected to enquire how long they have had a settlement upon Oonalashka, and the neighbouring islands; but if we form our judgment on this point from the great subjection

the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date. These furriers are from time to time succeeded by others. Those we saw arrived here from Okotsk in 1776, and were to return in 1781.

As for the native inhabitants of this island, they are to all appearance a very peaceable, inoffensive race of people; and in point of honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nations. But, from what we saw of their neighbours, with whom the Russians are unconnected, we have some doubt whether this was their original disposition; and are rather inclined to be of opinion, that it is the consequence of their present state of subjection. Indeed, if we did not misunderstand the Russians, they had been under the necessity of making some severe examples before they could bring the islanders into tolerable order. If severities were really inflicted at first, the best excuse for them is, that they have produced the most beneficial effects; and, at present, the greatest harmony subsists between the Russians and the natives. The latter have their own chiefs in each island, and seem to enjoy liberty and property without molestation. Whether they are tributaries to the Russians, or not, we could never learn; but we had some reason to suppose that they are.

The people of Oonalashka are in general rather low of stature, but plump, and well shaped. Their necks are commonly short, and they have swarthy chubby faces. They have black eyes, and small beards. Their hair is long, black, and straight: the men wear it loose behind, and cut before; but the women generally tie it up in a bunch. The dress of both sexes is the same with respect to fashion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of the skins of seals; and that of the men, of the skins of birds; both reach below the knees. This constitutes the whole dress of the females. But, over the frock, the men wear



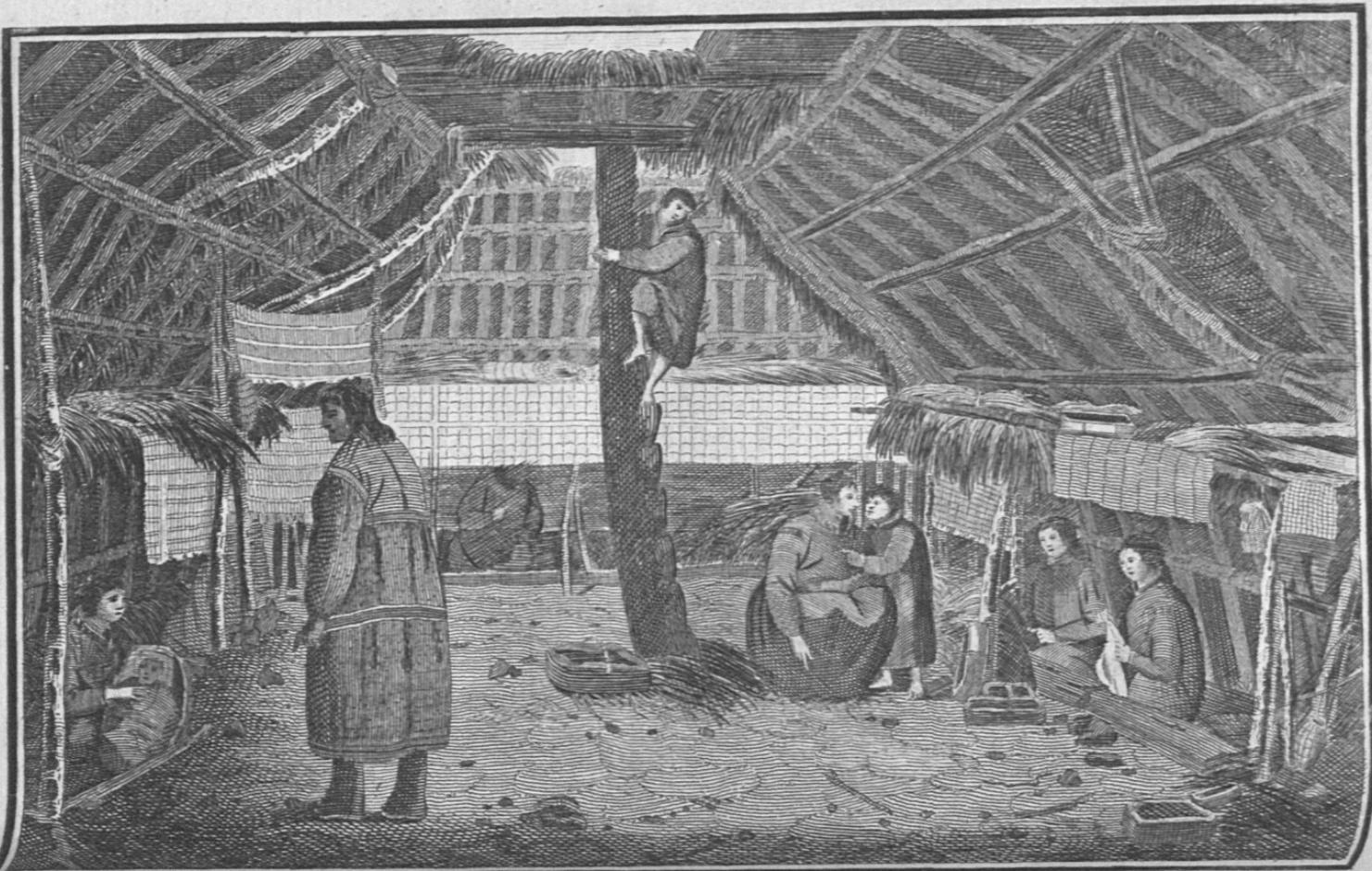
MAN SOONALASHKA. WOMAN SOONALASHKA.

wear another composed of gut, which water cannot penetrate; it has a hood to it, which is drawn over the head. Some of them wear boots; and all of them wear a sort of oval snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim that admits the head. They dye these caps with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim they fix the long bristles of some sea animal, on which glass beads are strung; and on the front is a small image or two formed of bone. They do not make use of paint; but the women puncture their faces slightly, and both sexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to see a man with this ornament, as to observe a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the nostrils; and they all suspend ornaments in their ears.

Fish and other sea animals, birds, roots, berries, and even sea-weed, compose their food. They dry quantities of fish during the summer, which they lay up in small huts for their use in winter; and, probably, they preserve berries and roots for the same season of scarcity. They eat most of their provisions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we saw practised among them; and the former they in all probability learnt from the Russians. Some have in their possession small brass kettles; and those who have not, make one of a flat stone, with sides of clay. Captain Cook once happened to be present, when the chief of this island made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any part of it was given to the chief, two of his servants eat the gills, with no other dressing than squeezing out the slime. After this, one of them having cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea, and washed it, then came with it, and seated himself by the chief; but not before he had pulled up some grass, upon a part of which the head was placed, and the rest was strewed before the chief. He then cut large  
pieces

pieces off the cheeks, and put them within the reach of the chief, who swallowed them with great satisfaction. When he had finished his meal, the remains of the head being cut in pieces, were given to the servants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As the Oonalashkans use no paint, they are less dirty in their persons than those savages who thus besmear themselves; but they are full as filthy in their houses. The following is their method of building: they dig, in the ground, an oblong pit, which rarely exceeds fifty feet in length, and twenty in breadth; but the dimensions are in general smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood, which they cover first with grass, and then with earth, so that the external appearance resembles a dung-hill. Near each end of the roof is left a square opening, which admits the light; one of these openings being intended only for this purpose, and the other being also used to go in and out by, with the assistance of a ladder, or rather a post, in which steps are cut. In some of the houses there is another entrance below, but this is rather uncommon. Round the sides and ends of the habitations, the families, several of which dwell together, have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work; not on benches, but in a sort of concave trench, dug entirely round the inside of the house, and covered with mats, so that this part is kept pretty clean and decent. The same cannot be said of the middle of the house, which is common to all the families. For, though it is covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for every kind of dirt, and the place where the urine trough stands; the stench of which is by no means improved by raw hides, or leather, being almost continually steeped in it. Behind, and over the trench, they place the few effects that they have in their possession, such as their mats, skins, and apparel.



Their furniture consists of buckets, cans, wooden bowls, spoons, matted baskets, and sometimes a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are made in a very neat manner; and yet we observed no other tools among them than the knife and the hatchet; that is, a small flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fixing it into a crooked wooden handle.

Though the Russians live among these people, we found much less iron in possession of the latter, than we had met with among other tribes on the neighbouring continent of America, who had never seen the Russians, nor perhaps had any intercourse with them. Probably a few beads, and a small quantity of tobacco and snuff, purchase all they have to spare. There are few of them that do not both smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff. They did not appear to be very desirous of more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being formed of bone. With these they sew their canoes, and make their clothes, and also work very curious embroidery. They use, instead of thread, the fibres of sinews, which they split to the thickness which is required. All sewing is performed by the females. They are the shoe-makers, taylor, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers; for the men, in all probability, construct the wooden frame, over which the skins are sewed. They manufacture mats, and baskets of grass, which are both strong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perseverance. We did not observe a fire-place in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which, though simple, effectually answer the purpose for which they are intended. They consist of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate; in the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with some dry draf, which serves  
for

for a wick. Both sexes often warm themselves over one of these lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and sitting thus over it for several minutes. These people produce fire both by collision and attrition; the first by striking two stones against each other, on one of which a quantity of brimstone has been previously rubbed. The latter method is performed by means of two pieces of wood, one of which is flat, and the other is a stick of the length of about a foot and a half. They press the pointed end of the stick upon the other piece, whirling it nimbly round as a drill, and thus fire is produced in a few minutes. This method is common in many countries. It is not only practised by these people, but also by the Kamtschadales, the Greenlanders, the Otahiteans, the New Hollanders, and the Brazilians, and probably by other nations. Some men of learning and genius have founded an argument on this custom, to prove that this and that nation are of the same extraction. But casual agreements, in a few particular instances, will not wholly authorize such a conclusion; nor, on the other hand, will a disagreement, either in manners or customs, between two different nations, prove of course that they are of different extraction. We saw no offensive, nor even defensive weapon among the natives of Oonalashka. It can scarcely be supposed that the Russians found them in such a defenceless state; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own security, they have disarmed them. Political motives, likewise, may have induced the Russians not to permit these islanders to have any large canoes; for we can hardly believe they had none such originally, as we found them among all their neighbours. However, we observed none here except two or three that belonged to the Russians.

The canoes in use among the natives, are smaller than any of those we had seen upon the coast of  
America,

*London: Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup>. 16, Paternoster Row*



America, from which, however, they differ but little in their construction. The form of these terminates somewhat abruptly; the head is forked, and the upper point of the fork projects without the under one, which is level with the surface of the water. It is remarkable that they should thus construct them, for the fork generally catches hold of every thing that comes in the way; to prevent which, they fix a piece of small stick from one point to the other. In other respects they build their canoes after the manner of those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders; the frame being of slender laths, and the covering of the skins of seals. They are about twelve feet in length, eighteen inches in breadth in the middle, and twelve or fourteen inches in depth. They sometimes carry two persons, one of whom sits in the seat, or round hole, which is nearly in the middle; and the other is stretched at full length in the canoe. Round this hole is a rim or hoop of wood, about which gut-skin is sewed, which can be drawn together, or opened like a purse, with leathern strings fitted to the outer edge. The man sits in this place, draws the skin tight about his body over his gut-frock, and brings the ends of the thongs, or purse-strings, tight round his wrists; and it being close round his neck, and the hood being drawn over his head, where his cap confines it, water cannot easily penetrate, either into the canoe, or to his body. If, however, any water should find means to insinuate itself, the boatman dries it up with a piece of sponge. He makes use of a double-bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, striking the water first on one side, and then on the other, with a quick regular motion. Thus the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction perfectly straight. In sailing from Egooshak to Samganoodha, though our ship went at the rate of seven miles an hour, two or three canoes

kept pace with her. Their implements for hunting and fishing lie ready upon their canoes, under straps fixed for the purpose. They are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and are not very different from those used by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the missile dart; which, in some that we saw at this island, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas those of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed these darts, as well as some others of their instruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. The bird, fish, or other animal is no sooner struck, than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb. The dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and also contributes to fatigue it considerably, so that it is easily taken. They throw these darts by the assistance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is slightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumb, in order to grasp with greater firmness. The natives throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in striking fish, both in the sea, and in rivers. They also use hooks and lines, nets and weirs. The lines are formed of twisted sinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoises, grampuses, halibut, sword-fish, salmon, trout, cod, soals, flat-fish, and several other sorts, are found here; and there may be many more that we had not an opportunity of seeing.

Salmon

Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the people of these isles principally subsist; at least, they were the only sort of fish, except cod, that we observed to be laid up for their winter store. Seals, and all that tribe of sea animals, are not so numerous as they are in many other seas. Nor can this be thought surprizing, since there is hardly any part of the coast, on either continent, nor any of these islands, situate between them, but what is inhabited, and whose inhabitants hunt these animals for their food and clothing. Sea-horses are, indeed, to be found in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the sea-otter is scarce any where to be met with but in this sea. An animal was sometimes seen by us, that blew after the manner of whales. It had a head resembling that of a seal. It was larger than that animal, and its colour was white, with dark spots interspersed. This was perhaps the manati, or sea-cow.

Water fowls are neither found here in such numbers, nor in such variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However there are some in these parts, that we do not recollect to have seen in other countries; particularly the alca monochroa of Steller, and a black and white duck, which we judged to be different from the stone-duck that Krasheninikoff has described in his History of Kamtschatka. All the other birds we saw are mentioned by this author, except some which we observed near the ice; and the greatest part of these, if not all, have been described by Martin, in his voyage to Greenland. It is somewhat extraordinary, that penguins, which are so frequently met with in many parts of the world, should not be found in this sea. Albatrosses too are extremely scarce here. The few land birds seen by us are the same with those of Europe; but there were probably many others which we had no opportunity of observing. A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton

Sound ; which, we understand, is sometimes found in England ; and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people saw other small birds there, but in no great abundance or variety ; such as the bull-finch, the wood-pecker, the yellow-finch, and tit-mouse.

Our excursions and observations being confined to the sea coast, we cannot be expected to have much knowledge of the animals or vegetables of the country. There are few other insects besides musquitoes, and we saw few reptiles except lizards. There are no deer at Oonalashka, or any of the neighbouring islands ; nor are there any domestic animals, not even dogs. Weasels and foxes were the only quadrupeds we observed ; but the natives told us, that they had likewise hares, and the marmottas mentioned by Krasheninikoff. Hence it appears, that the inhabitants procure the greatest share of their food from the sea and rivers. They are also indebted to the sea for all the wood which they use for building, and other necessary purposes ; as there is not a tree to be seen growing upon any of the islands, nor upon the neighbouring coast of the continent. The seeds of plants are said to be conveyed, by various means, from one part of the world to another ; even to islands lying in the midst of extensive oceans, and far distant from any other lands. It is therefore remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent isles. They are doubtless as well situated for receiving seeds, by the various ways we have heard of, as those coasts which have plenty of wood. Nature has, perhaps, denied to some soils the power of raising trees, without the assistance of art. With respect to the drift-wood, upon the shores of these islands, we have no doubt of its coming from America. For though there may be none on the neighbouring coast, a sufficient quantity may grow farther up the country, which may be broken loose by torrents in the spring;

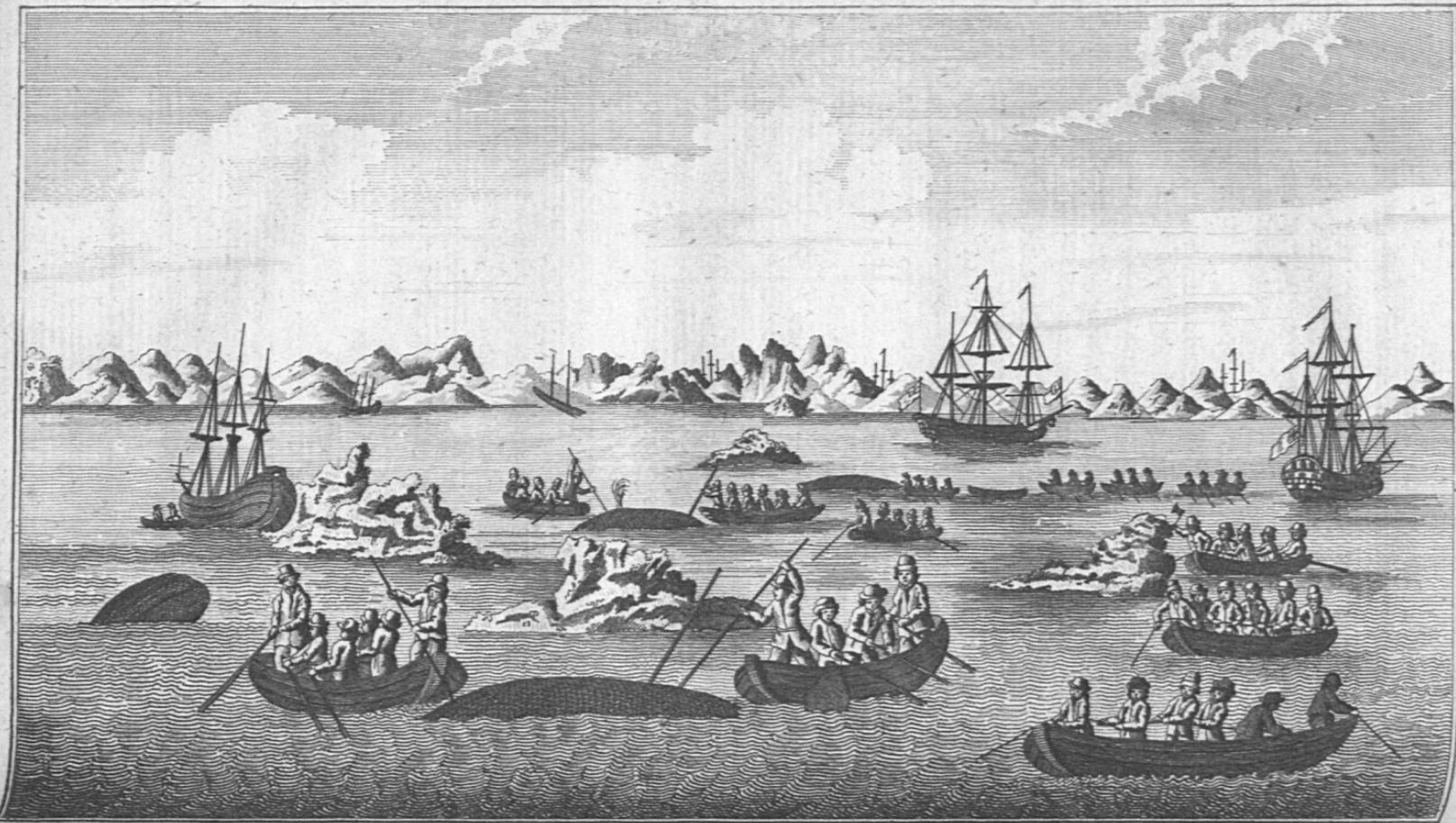
spring, and brought down to the sea; and not a little may be conveyed from the woody coasts, though situated at a more considerable distance. But plants are to be found in great variety at Oonahka. Several of them are such as we meet with in Europe, and also in Newfoundland, and other parts of America; and others of them, which are likewise found in Kamtschatka, are eaten by the natives both there and here. Of these, Krasheninnikoff has favoured us with descriptions. The principal one is the faranne, or lily root; which is about as large as a root of garlick, round, and composed of a number of small cloves and grains. When boiled it somewhat resembles saloop; the taste of it is not disagreeable. It does not appear to be in great abundance. Among the food of the natives we may reckon some other wild roots; the stalk of a plant not unlike angelica; and berries of different species, such as cranberries, hurtle-berries, bramble-berries, and heath-berries; besides a small red berry, which, in Newfoundland, is denominated partridge berry; and another brown berry, with which we were unacquainted. This has somewhat of the taste of a floe, but is different from it in every other respect. When eaten in a considerable quantity it is very astringent. Brandy may be distilled from it. Captain Clerke endeavoured to preserve some; but they fermented, and became as strong as if they had been steeped in spirits. There were several plants which were serviceable to us, but are not used either by the Russians or natives, such as wild purslain, pea-tops, a kind of scurvy grass, cresses, and some others. On the low ground, and in the valleys is plenty of grass, which grows very thick, and to a great length. Among the inhabitants, native sulphur was seen, but we had no opportunity of learning where they got it. We found also ochre, a stone that gives a purple colour, and another that gives a very good green. In its natural state

state it is of a greyish green colour, coarse, and heavy. It dissolves easily in oil, but it entirely loses its properties when put into water. It seemed to be scarce in Oonalashka, but, we were told, it was in greater plenty in the island of Oonemak.

The inhabitants of Oonalashka bury their dead on the summits of hills, and raise a little hillock over their graves. There was one of these receptacles of the dead by the side of the road leading from the harbour to the village, over which was raised a heap of stones. It was observed that every one who passed it added one to it. In the country, we saw several stone hillocks, that seemed to have been raised by art; and many of them were apparently of great antiquity. These people are remarkably chearful and friendly among each other; and always behaved with great civility to us. The Russians told us, that they never had any connections with their women, because they were not Christians. Our people were not so scrupulous; and some them had reason to repent that the females of Oonalashka encouraged their addresses without any reserve; for their health suffered by a distemper that is not unknown here.

We have had occasion to mention frequently, from the time of our arrival in Prince William's Sound, how remarkably the natives on this north-west side of America, resemble the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, in various particulars of person, dress, weapons, canoes, and the like. We were, however, much less struck with this, than with the affinity subsisting between the dialects of the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, and those of Oonalashka and Norton's Sound. But we must observe, with respect to the words which were collected by us on this side of America, that too much stress is not to be laid upon their being accurately represented; for, after the death of Mr. Anderson, we had few who took any great degree of pains about such matters;

London Published by Alex. Hogg at the Kings Arms N<sup>o</sup>. 6 Paternoster Row.



matters; and we have often found that the same word, written down by two or more persons, from the mouth of the same native, differed considerably, on being compared together. Nevertheless, enough is certain to authorize this judgment, that there is great reason to suppose, that all these nations are of the same extraction; and if that be the case, there is little doubt of there being a northern communication by sea, between the western side of America, and the eastern side, through Baffin's Bay; which communication, however, is perhaps effectually shut up against ships, by ice, and other obstructions; such, at least, was Captain Cook's opinion at this time.

In these parts the tides are not very considerable, except in Cook's River. The flood comes from the S. or S. E. following the direction of the coast to the N. W. Between Cape Prince of Wales and Norton Sound we found a current setting towards the N. W. particularly off that Cape, and within Sledge Island. This current, however, extended but a little way from the coast, and was neither consistent nor uniform. To the N. of Cape Prince of Wales, we observed neither tide nor current, either on the coast of America, or that of Asia. This circumstance gave rise to an opinion, which some of our people entertained, that the two coasts were connected either by land or ice; and that opinion received some degree of strength, from our never having any hollow waves from the northward, and from our seeing ice almost the whole way across. From the several observations made during our continuance in the harbour of Samganoodlia, its latitude is 53 deg. 5 min. N. and its longitude 193 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. E.

## C H A P. XIII.

ON Monday, the 26th of October, we sailed from Samganooodha harbour, when, the wind being southerly, we stood to the westward. The commodore's intention was to proceed to Sandwich Islands, in order to pass a few of the winter months there, if we should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then direct our course to Kamtschatka, so as to endeavour to arrive there by the middle of May, in the ensuing year. This being determined on, the commodore delivered into the hands of Captain Clerke instructions how to proceed in case of separation, Sandwich Islands being appointed for the first place of rendezvous; and for the second, Petropaulowka, in Kamtschatka. Having got out of the harbour, the wind veered to the S. E. with which we were carried to the western part of Oonalashka, by the evening. We had here the wind at S. and stretched to the westward: On Tuesday the 27th, at seven o'clock, A. M. we wore, and stood to the E. The wind had now so greatly increased, as to reduce us to our three courses. It blew in heavy squalls, accompanied with snow, hail, and rain. On the 28th, in the morning, Oonalashka bore S. E. four leagues distant. We now stood to the westward; but, towards evening, the wind, after it had for a short time abated, got insensibly to the N. E. increasing to a very hard gale, accompanied with rain: we therefore steered first to the southward, and then, as the wind inclined to the N. and N. W. more westerly. On Thursday the 26th, at half-past six, A. M. land was descried, supposed to be the island of Amoghta. At eight, finding it not in our power to weather the island, we gave over plying, and bore away, with the view of going to the N. of Oonalashka, not presuming in so hard a gale of wind to attempt a passage to the

the S. E. of it. When we bore away, the land extended from E. by S. half S. to S. S. W. distant four leagues. Our lat. was 53 deg. 38 min. and our long. 191 deg. 17 min. which gives a very different situation to this island from that assigned to it upon the Russian map; and Captain Cook was at a loss to determine whether it was Amoghta or not; but on the chart, Krenitzen's and Levasheff's voyage, in 1768 and 1769, an island called Amuckta is laid down, not very far from the place here assigned to Amoghta by Captain Cook. As we were steering to the N. E. at 11 o'clock we discovered a rock, elevated like a tower, bearing N. N. E. about four leagues distant, and situated in lat. 53 deg. 57 min. long. 191 deg. 2 min. This rock is not marked in the Russian map, produced by Isinyloff; yet it has a place in the chart of Krenitzen's and Levasheff's voyage. The chart also agrees with Captain Cook's, as to the general position of this group of islands. The singularly indented shores of the island of Oonalashka, are represented in both charts nearly alike. These circumstances are worthy of notice, as the more modern Russian maps of this archipelago are so exceedingly erroneous. At three in the afternoon, we had in view Oonalashka; upon which we shortened sail, and hauled the wind, being unable to run through the passage before night. Friday, the 20th, we had a very hard gale at W. N. W. with heavy squalls and snow, inasmuch that we were compelled to bear away under courses, and close-reefed top-sails. At noon, we were about the middle of the strait, between Oonalashka and Oonella, the harbour of Samganoodha, bearing S. S. E. one league distant. At three o'clock, P. M. we were through the strait, and clear of the isles, Cape Providence bearing W. S. W. distant three leagues.

On Sunday, the 1st of November, the wind was favourable, and we stood to sea. The weather was

1914 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

fairer than it had been at any time since we cleared Samganoodha Harbour, as it is called by the Russians, or Providence Bay, as it was named by Captain Cook. On the 2d, the wind was at S. and, in the evening, blew a violent storm, which occasioned us to bring to. Several guns were fired by the Discovery, which we immediately answered. We lost sight of her at eight o'clock; nor did she join us till ten the next morning, being the 3d. On Saturday the 7th, in lat. 42 deg. 12 min. long. 201 deg. 26 min. E. a shag, or cormorant, flew often round the ship. As it is not common for these kind of birds to go far from land, we concluded there might be some at no great distance, though we did not discover any. Having but little wind, Captain Clerke came on board with some melancholy intelligence. He informed us, that the second night after we had departed from Providence Bay, or Samganoodha, the main-tack of the Discovery gave way, by which accident John Mackintosh, seaman, was struck dead, and the boatswain, with three other mariners, much wounded. He added, that on the 3d, his ship having sprung a leak, and the rigging received considerable damage, he fired some guns as a signal for the Resolution to bring to. On the 8th we were favoured with a gentle breeze at N. attended with clear weather. On the 9th, we had eight hours calm; to which succeeded a wind from the S. accompanied with fair weather. Such of our people as could handle a needle, were now employed to repair the sails; and the carpenters were directed to put the boats in order. Thursday, the 12th, we observed in lat. 38 deg. 14 min. long. 206 deg. 17 min. The wind returned back to the northward; and on Sunday the 15th, in lat. 33 deg. 30 min. it veered to the E. We now saw a tropic bird, and a dolphin, the first we had observed in our passage. On Tuesday, the 17th, the wind was southward, at which point it  
remained

remained till the 19th, in the afternoon, when it was suddenly brought round by the W. to the N. The wind increased to a very strong gale, and brought us under double-reefed top-sails. We were now in lat. 32 deg. 26 min. long. 207 deg. 30 min. E. In lowering the main top-sail, in order to reef it, the violence of the wind tore it out of the foot-rope, and it was split in several parts. We got; however, another top-sail to the yard the next morning. This gale proved to be the forerunner of the trade-wind, which, in lat. 25 deg. veered to the E. and E. S. E. We steered to the southward till Wednesday, the 25th, when we were in lat. 20 deg. 55 min. On the 26th, at day-break, we discovered land, extending from S. S. E. to W. At eight o'clock we stood for it, when it extended from S. E. half S. to W. the nearest part being about two leagues distant. We now perceived that our discovery of the group of Sandwich Islands had been very imperfect, those which we had visited in our progress northward, all lying to the leeward of our present station. An elevated hill appeared in the country, whose summit rose above the clouds. The land from this hill fell in a gradual slope, terminating in a steep rocky coast: the sea breaking against it in a most dreadful surf. Unable to weather the island, we bore up, and ranged to the westward. We now perceived people on many parts of the shore; also several houses and plantations. The country appeared to be well supplied with wood and water, and running streams were seen in various places, falling into the sea. It being of the utmost importance to procure a supply of provisions at these islands, which could not be accomplished, should a free trade with the natives be permitted; for this reason, the commodore published an order, prohibiting all persons on board the ships from trading, except those that should be appointed by himself and Captain Clerke; and even these were under

limitations of trading only for provisions and refreshments. Injunctions were also laid against admitting women into the ships, under certain restrictions; but the evil intended to have been prevented by this regulation, had already got amongst them. At noon, the coast extended from S. 81 deg. E. to N. 56 deg. W. A low flat, like an isthmus, bore S. 42 deg. W. the nearest shore being four miles distant. Our lat. was now 20 deg. 59 min. our long. 203 deg. 50 min. E. Some canoes came off, and when along-side, many of those who were in them, entered the ship without hesitation. We soon perceived that they were of the same nation as those islanders more to the leeward, whom we had already visited; and, as we understood, they were no strangers to our having been in these parts before. It was indeed too evident; these people having got the venereal disease among them, which they probably contracted by an intercourse with their neighbours, after we had left them. Our visitors supplied us with a quantity of cuttle-fish, in exchange for nails and iron. They brought but a small quantity of fruit or roots, but said they had plenty of them on their island, as well as of hogs and fowls. The horizon being clear, in the evening, we supposed the westernmost land that we could see to be an island, distinct from that off which we now were. Expecting the natives would return the next day, with the produce of their island, we plied off the whole night, and stood close in shore the next morning. We were at first visited by a few only, but towards noon numbers of them appeared, bringing with them potatoes, taro, bread-fruit, plantains, and small pigs; all of which were bartered for iron tools and nails, we having few other articles to give them. We made mutual exchanges till four in the afternoon, at which time they had disposed of all their cargoes, and not  
expressing

expressing any inclination to fetch more, we immediately made sail.

On Monday, the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the N. E. end of the island, some more canoes came off. Most of these belonged to Terreeboob, a chief, who came in one of them. He made the commodore a present of three pigs; and we procured a little fruit by bartering with his people. In about two hours they all left us, except seven persons who chose to remain on board. Soon after, a double sailing canoe arrived to attend upon them, which we towed astern the whole night. In the evening, another island was seen to the windward, called, by the natives, Owhyhee. That which we had been off for some days, was called Mowee.

On Tuesday, the 1st of December, at eight o'clock A. M. Owhyhee extended from S. 22 deg. E. to S. 12 deg. W. and Mowee from N. 41 deg. to N. 81 deg. W. Perceiving we could fetch Owhyhee, we stood for it, when our visitors from Mowee thought proper to embark in their canoes, and went ashore. We spent the night, standing off and on the north side of Owhyhee. On the 2nd, in the morning, to our great surprize, we saw the summits of the mountains covered with snow. Though they were not of an extraordinary height, the snow, in some places, appeared to be of a considerable depth, and to have remained there some time. As we drew near the shore some of the native approached us, who appeared a little shy at first; but we prevailed on some of them to come on board; and at length prevailed on them to return to the island to bring us such refreshments as we wanted. After these had reached the shore, we had plenty of company, who brought us a tolerable supply of pigs, fruit, and roots. We traded with them till six in the evening, when we stood off, in order to ply to windward round the island. In the evening of the 4th, an eclipse of the moon was observed. Mr. King

## 1780 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

King used, for the purpose of observation, a night-telescope, with a circular aperture at the object end. The commodore observed with the telescope of one of Ramsden's sextants. The mean of their observations made our longitude to be 204 deg. 35 min. E. Sunday, the 6th, in the evening, being near the shore, and five leagues farther up the coast; we again traded with the natives; but receiving only a trifling supply, we stood in the next morning, when the number of our visitors was considerable. We had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, sufficient to serve us four or five days; we, therefore, made sail, and still plied to the windward. Among other stores, the commodore had procured a great quantity of sugar-cane; and having, upon trial, discovered, that a decoction of it made very palatable liquor, he ordered some of it to be brewed for our ship's service; but on broaching a cask thereof, not one of the crew would even taste it. Captain Cook having no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preserving our spirits for a colder climate, neither exerted his authority, nor had recourse to persuasion, to induce them to drink it, well knowing that, so long as we could be plentifully supplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the scurvy. But that he might not have his intention frustrated, he ordered that no grog should be served in either of the two ships. The commodore and his officers continued to drink this sugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which we had on board improved it much; and it was, doubtless, extremely wholesome; though our inconsiderate crew, could not be persuaded, but it must be injurious to their health. About the beginning of this month, the crew of the Discovery being much in want of provisions, Captain Clerke, against his inclination, was under the necessity of substituting stock fish in the room of beef; but they were no sooner

sooner well in with the land, than they were visited by many of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, with all sorts of provisions, which their island afforded; and every man had leave to purchase what he could for his own indulgence. This diffused a joy among the mariners that is not easy to be expressed. From a fullness and discontent, visible in every countenance, all was cheerfulness, mirth and jollity. Fresh provisions and kind females are the sailors sole delight; and when in possession of these, past hardships are instantly forgotten; even those whom the scurvy had attacked, and rendered almost lifeless, brightened up on this occasion, and for the moment appeared alert. We must here observe, that innovations, of whatever kind on board a ship, are sure to meet with the disapprobation of the seamen, though even to their advantage. Our portable soup and sour kroust were condemned, at first, as improper food for human beings. Few commanders have introduced more useful varieties of food and drink into their ships than Captain Cook has done: few others, indeed, have had the opportunities, or have been driven to the necessity of trying such experiments. It was nevertheless, owing to certain deviations from established customs and practice, that he was enabled, in a great degree, to preserve his people from the scurvy, a distemper that has often made more havoc in peaceful voyages, than the enemy in military expeditions.

Sunday, the 13th, having hitherto kept at some distance from the coast, we now stood in, six leagues more to the windward; and, after trading with such of the natives as came off to us, returned to sea. On the 15th, it was our intention to approach the shore again, with the view of procuring a fresh supply of fruit and roots; but the wind being then at S. E. by S. and S. S. E. we embraced the opportunity of stretching to the eastward, in order to get

## 1920 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

round the S. E. end of the island. The wind continued at S. E. the greatest part of the 16th; it was variable on the 17th, and on Friday the 18th, it was continually veering. Sometimes it blew in hard squalls; and, at other times, it was calm, with thunder, lightning, and rain. In the afternoon it was westerly for a few hours, but it shifted, in the evening to E. by S. The S. E. point of the island now bore S. W. by S. five leagues distant. We expected to have weathered it, but, on Saturday, the 19th, at one o'clock, A. M. we were left wholly at the mercy of a north-easterly swell, which drove us fast towards the land; so that long before day-break, lights were seen upon the shore, which was then distant about a league. It was a dark night, with thunder, lightning, and rain. The calm was succeeded by a breeze from the S. E. by E. blowing in squalls with rain. We stood to the N. E. thinking it the best tack to clear the coast; but had it been day-light, we should have chosen the other. At day-break, the coast extended from N. by W. to S. W. by W. about half a league distant; a most dreadful surf breaking upon the shore. We had certainly been in most imminent danger; from which we were not yet secure, the wind veering more easterly; so that for a considerable time, we were but just able to keep our distance from the coast. Our situation was rendered more alarming, by the leach-ropes of the main-top-sail giving way, in consequence of which the sail was rent in two; and the top-gallant-sails gave way in the same manner, though not half worn out. We soon, however, got others to the yards, and left the land astern. The Discovery was at some distance to the north, entirely clear from the land; nor did she appear in sight till eight o'clock. Captain Cook here remarks, that the bolt ropes to our sails are extremely deficient in strength or substance. This, at different times, has been the source of infinite labour

labour and vexation; and has occasioned much loss of canvas by giving way; from whence he concludes, that the cordage, canvas, and other stores, made use of in the navy, are inferior, in general, to those used in the merchants service. The commodore also observes, an opinion prevails among all naval officers, that the King's stores are superior to any others. They may be right, he admits, as to the quantity, but not as to the quality of the stores. This, indeed, he says, is not often tried; for these articles are usually condemned, or converted to other uses, before they are half worn out. Only such voyages as ours afford an opportunity of making the trial; our situation being such, as to render it necessary to wear every thing to the extreme. Captain Cook in this comparison of some cordage used in the King's service, with what is used in that of the merchants, may, in part, be right; especially in time of war, when part of the cordage wanted in the navy is, from necessity, made by contract. But it is well known, that there is no better cordage than what is made in the King's yards. This we assert, on the authority of a naval officer of distinguished rank, and great professional ability, who has, at the same time, recommended it as a necessary precaution, that ships fitted out on discovery, should be furnished with no cordage but what is made in the King's yards; and, indeed, that every article of their stores, of every kind, should be the best that can be made.

When day-light appeared, the natives ashore displayed a white flag, we imagined, as a signal of peace and friendship. Many of them ventured out after us; but as the wind freshened, and we were unwilling to wait, they were left presently astern. In the afternoon we made another attempt to weather the eastern extreme; in which we failed. Indeed, our getting round the island was a matter of no importance, for we had seen the extreme of it

## 1922 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

to the S. E. which was all the commodore desired ; the natives having informed us, that there was no other island to the windward of this. But as we were so near accomplishing our design, we did not entirely abandon the idea of weathering it, and continued to ply. On Sunday, the 20th, at noon, the S. E. point bore S. distant three leagues. The snowy hills bore W. N. W. and we were within four miles of the nearest shore. In the afternoon we were visited by some of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains : the latter were highly acceptable, we having been without vegetables for some days ; but this supply was scarcely sufficient for one day ; we therefore stood in the next morning, till within about four miles of the land, when a number of canoes came off, laden with provisions. The people continued trading with us till four o'clock in the afternoon, at which time having obtained a good supply, we made sail, stretching off to the northward. In our intercourse with the people of this island, we met with less reserve and suspicion, than we had ever experienced among any of the Indian tribes. They frequently sent up into the ship, the articles they meant to barter, and afterwards came in themselves, to traffic on the quarter deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom we so often visited, had not that confidence in our integrity. It is but justice to observe, that the natives of Owhyhee never attempted to over-reach us in exchanges, nor to commit a single theft. They perfectly understood trading, and clearly comprehended the reason of our plying upon the coast : for though they brought off plenty of pigs, and other provisions, they were particular in keeping up the price, and rather than dispose of them at what they thought under the value, they would carry them to shore again.

Tuesday, the 22nd, at eight o'clock, A. M. we tacked

tacked to the southward. At noon, in lat. 20 deg. 28 min. 30 sec. the snowy peak bore S. W. half S. the preceding day we had a good view of it, and the quantity of snow seemed to have increased, and to extend lower down the hill. We stood to the S. E. till midnight, when we tacked till four. We had hopes of weathering the island, and should have succeeded, if a calm had not ensued, and left us to the mercy of a swell, which impelled us towards the land, from which we were not above the distance of two leagues. Some light puffs of wind, however, took us out of danger. As we lay in this situation, some islanders came off with hogs, fowls, and fruit. From one of the canoes we got a goose, little larger than a Muscovy duck. The colour of its plumage was dark grey; the bill and legs were black. Having purchased what the natives had brought off, we made sail, and stretched to the north. At midnight we tacked and stood to the S. E. in order to examine the weathermost side of the island, where, we were told, there was a safe harbour. In this attempt the Discovery had her main-top-mast stay-sail split, and by continuing standing to the north, she lost sight of our ship, the Resolution. Heavy complaints again prevailed among her company. The weather continuing tempestuous, their sufferings on this account, from incessant labour, and scanty of provisions, were grown confessedly grievous. Their grog, that had been stopped at our arrival on the coast, was now dealt to them as usual, and it was only by the kindest treatment from their officers, that the men could be kept to their duty. On Thursday the 24th, at day-light, she was not in sight, but, at this time, the weather being hazy, we thought she might be following us. At noon we observed in lat. 19 deg. 55 min. and in long. 205 deg. 3 min. the S. E. point of the island bearing S. by E. six leagues distant; the other extreme bore N. 60 deg.

W. when we were two leagues from the nearest shore. In the evening at six o'clock, the southermost part of the island bore S. W. the nearest shore being seven miles distant. We had, therefore, now succeeded in our endeavours, in getting to the windward of the island. The Discovery was not yet in sight, but as the wind was favourable for her to follow us, we expected she would shortly join us. We, therefore, kept cruising off this point of the island, till Captain Clerke was no longer expected here. It was at length conjectured, that he was gone to leeward, in order to meet us that way, not having been able to weather the N. E. part of the island. Keeping generally at the distance of from five to ten leagues from the land, one canoe only came off to us till the 28th, when about a dozen appeared, bringing, as usual, the produce of the island. We were concerned that the people had been at the trouble of coming, as we could not possibly trade with them, not having yet consumed our former stock; and we were convinced by experience, that the hogs could not be kept alive, nor the roots be many days preserved from putrefaction. It was our intention, however, not to leave this part of the island before we had procured a good supply, knowing we could not easily return to it, if it should hereafter be found expedient so to do. On Wednesday the 30th, we began to be in want, but a calm prevented us from approaching the shore. A breeze, however, sprung up at midnight, which enabled us to stand in for land, at day-break, of the 31st. At ten o'clock, A. M. the islanders visited us, bringing with them a quantity of fruit and roots, but only three small pigs. This scanty supply was, perhaps, owing to our not having purchased what they lately brought off: yet, for the purposes of traffic, we brought to, but were interrupted shortly with an excessive rain; and, indeed, we were too far from the shore; nor could we venture

ture to go nearer, as we could not, for a moment, depend upon the wind's continuing where it was. The swell too was extremely high, and set obliquely upon the shore, where it broke in a most frightful surf. We had fine weather in the evening, and passed the night in making boards.

On Friday, the 1st of January, the atmosphere was laden with heavy clouds; and the New Year was ushered in with a heavy rain. We had a light breeze southerly, with some calms. At ten, the rain ceased, the sky became clear, and the wind freshened. Being now about four or five miles from the shore, some canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. We traded till three in the afternoon; when, being pretty well supplied, we made sail, in order to proceed to the lee side of the island, in search of the Discovery. We stretched to the eastward till midnight, when the wind favoured us, and we went upon the other tack. The 2nd, 3d, and 4th, we passed in running down the S. E. side of the island, standing off and on during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, in order to give the natives an opportunity of trading with us. They frequently came off, at the distance of five leagues from the shore; but never brought much with them, either from a fear of losing their articles in the sea, or from the uncertainty of a market. On Tuesday the 5th, in the morning, we passed the south point of the island, in lat. 18 deg. 54 min. beyond which the coast trends N. 60. deg. W. A large village is situated on this point, many of whose inhabitants thronged off to the ship with hogs and women. The latter could not possibly be prevented from coming on board; and they were less reserved than any females we had ever seen. Indeed, they seemed to have visited us with no other view than to make a tender of their persons. Having obtained a quantity of salt, we purchased only such hogs as  
were

were large enough for salting; refusing all those that were under size: and we could seldom procure any that exceeded the weight of 60 pounds. Happily for us, we had still some vegetables remaining, as we were now supplied with but few of those productions. Indeed, from the appearance of this part of the country, it seemed incapable of affording them. Evident marks presented themselves of its having been laid waste by the explosion of a volcano; and though we had not seen any thing of the kind, yet the devastation it had made, in the neighbourhood, was very visible. The natives having now left us, we run a few miles down the coast in the evening, and passed the night in standing off and on. The next morning, being Thursday the 7th, we were again visited by the natives. Being not far from the shore, Captain Cook sent Mr. Bligh, in a boat, in order to sound the coast, and also to go ashore, in search of fresh water. On his return, he reported, that, within two cables length of the shore, he found no soundings with a line of 160 fathoms; that, on the land, he could discover no stream or spring; that there was some rain-water in holes, upon the rocks, which the spray of the sea had rendered brackish; and, that the whole country was composed of flags and ashes, interspersed with a few plants. Between ten and eleven, to our great satisfaction, the Discovery made her appearance, coming round the south point of the island, and joined us about one. Captain Clerke came on board, and acquainted us, that having cruised four or five days where we were separated, he plied round the east side of the island; where meeting with tempestuous weather, he had been driven from the coast. He had one of the islanders on board all this time, who had refused to leave the ship, though opportunities had been in his favour. At noon we observed in lat. 19 deg. 1 min. long. 203 deg. 26 min. the nearest part of the

the

the coast being two leagues distant. On the 8th, at day-break, we perceived, that while we were plying in the night, the current had carried us back considerably to the windward; and that we were now off the S. W. point of the island, where we brought to, in order to enable the inhabitants to trade with us. We spent the night in standing off and on. Four men and ten women, who came on board the preceding day, were with us still. The commodore not liking the company of the latter, we stood in shore on the 9th, about noon, solely with the view of getting rid of our guests; when some canoes coming off, we embraced the opportunity of sending them away.

On Sunday the 10th, in the morning, we had light airs from the N. W. and calms; at eleven, the wind freshened at N. N. W. which so greatly retarded us, that, in the evening, at eight o'clock, the south snowy hill bore 1 deg. 30 min. E. On the 11th, at four o'clock, A. M. the wind being at W. we made for the land, in expectation of getting some refreshments. The natives seeing us so near them, began to come off, and we continued trading with them the whole day: though we procured but a very scanty supply, many of those who came off in their canoes, not having a single thing to barter. From this circumstance, it appeared, that this part of the island was extremely poor, and had already furnished us with every thing they could spare. Tuesday the 12th, was employed in plying off and on, with a fresh gale at west. A mile from the shore we found ground, at the depth of 55 fathoms. At five o'clock, P. M. we stood to the southward, and at midnight we had a calm. On the 13th, we had a small breeze at S. S. E. and steered for the land. A few canoes came off to us with some hogs; but they brought no vegetables, which we now much wanted. In the evening, we had got the length of the S. W. point of

the island, but, by the veering of the wind, we lost in the night all that we had gained in the day. Being in the same situation on the 14th, in the morning, some more canoes attended us; but they brought not any articles we stood in need of. We were now destitute of fruit and roots, and therefore obliged to have recourse to our sea provisions. Several canoes, at this juncture, arrived from the northward, from whence we were supplied with some hogs and roots. On Friday, the 15th, we had variable light airs till five in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up at E. N. E. and enabled us to steer along shore to the northward. This day the weather was remarkably fine, and we had plenty of company; many of them continued with us all night, and their canoes were towed astern. On the 16th, at day-break, seeing the appearance of a bay, the boats from both ships were sent out to examine it; for we were informed there was a harbour, wherein we might safely moor, and where we should be supplied with materials to refit the ships, and provisions to victual them. In the evening the boats returned with the joyful news, that they had succeeded in their search, and that the harbour promised fair to answer all that had been said of it. While our boats were employed in towing the ships into the bay, we had a view of the greatest number of spectators in canoes, and on shore, that we had ever seen assembled together in any place during this voyage. It was concluded that their number could not be less than 2 or 3,000. While hovering on the coast, we had sometimes been visited by 200 canoes at a time, who came to trade, and who brought us provisions when the weather would permit: we likewise obtained from them great quantities of cordage, salt, and divers other manufactures of the island, which the commodore purchased for the use of the ships, and without which we could not well have proceeded; for during the blowing

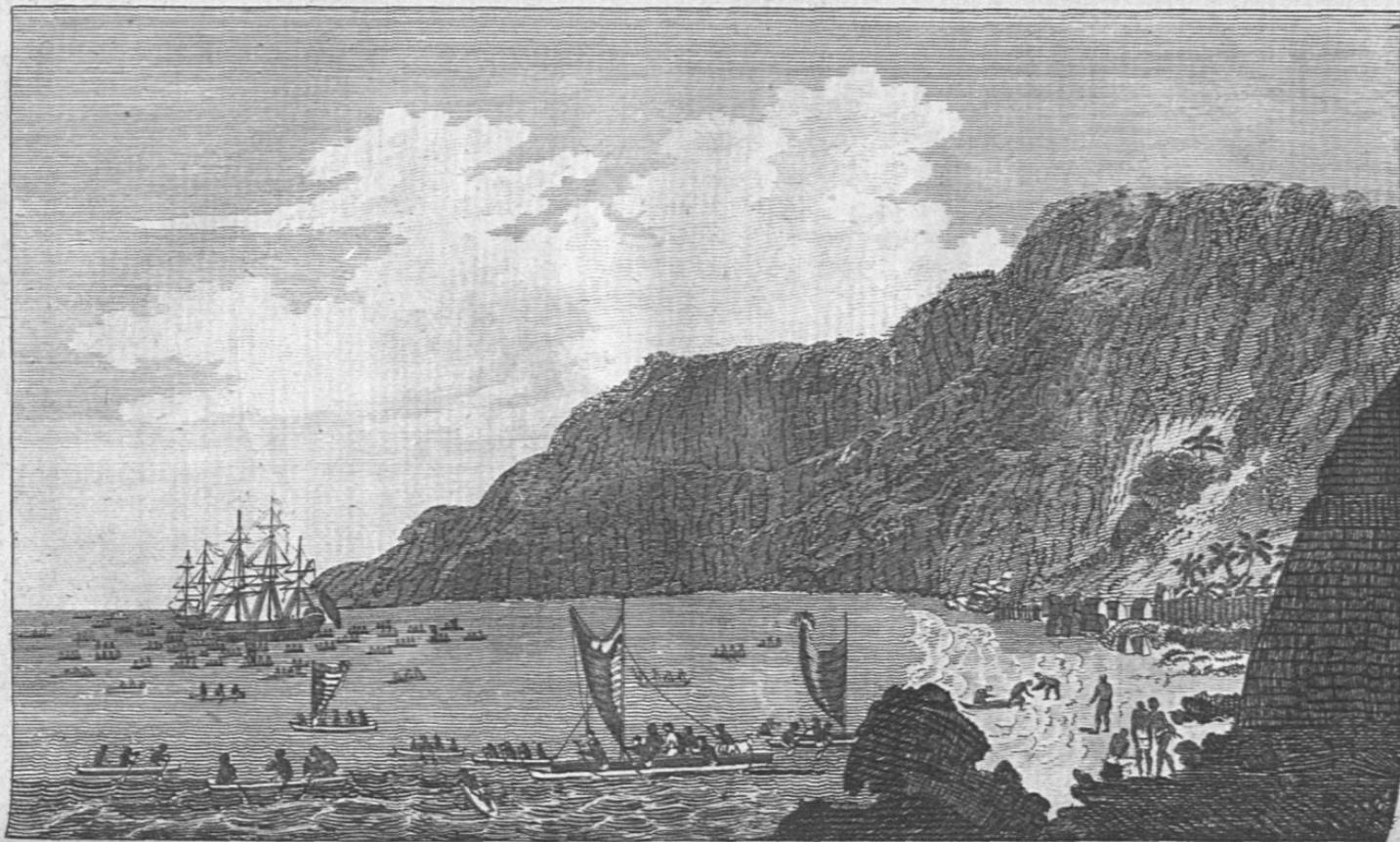
blowing weather, our cordage snapped rope after rope, so that our spare hands were employed incessantly, in knotting and splicing. In the course of this day, we were attended by, at least, 1000 canoes, crowded with people, and laden with hogs, and other articles to barter. We were perfectly convinced of their peaceable intentions, not a single person having a weapon of any sort with him. Among such numbers as we had frequently on board, it might be expected, that some of them would discover a thievish disposition. One of them made off with a boat's rudder, and was not detected till it was too late to recover it. The commodore imagined this to be a proper opportunity to shew these islanders the use of our fire arms. Two or three musquets, and as many four pounders were, by his orders, fired over the canoe which went away with the rudder: but it not being our intention, that the shot should take effect, the surrounding multitude were more surprized than terrified. At the approach of night, the most considerable part of our visitors retired to the shore; but many at their own earnest request, were permitted to sleep on board: but we had good reason to think, that curiosity, at least with some of them, was not the only motive; for the next morning several articles were missing, in consequence of which orders were given, not to permit so many to stay with us on any future night. On Sunday the 17th, by eleven o'clock, A. M. we were safely moored, in company with the Discovery, in 18 fathoms water. The bay where we lay at anchor, called by the natives Karakakooa, is a convenient harbour; and having suffered much in our masts and rigging, we were happy at last to find so proper a place to refit. We cast anchor within a quarter of a mile of the N. E. shore; the south point of the bay bearing S. by W. and the north point W. half N. After we were moored the ships continued

## 1930 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

to be much crowded with the natives, and surrounded by a vast multitude of them, besides hundreds that, like fish, were swimming about the two ships. We were struck with the singularity of this scene, and particularly pleased with enriching our voyage, with this important new discovery, owing to the opportunity of thus revisiting Sandwich Islands, and in consequence of not having succeeded in finding a northern passage homeward.

The bay of Karakakooa is situated in the district of Akona, on the west side of the island of Owhyhee. It extends about a mile in depth, and is bounded by two points of land, bearing S. E. and N. W. from each other, at the distance of half a league. The north point is flat and barren, on which is situated the village of Kowrowa. A more considerable village stands at the bottom of the bay, called Kakooa, near a grove of stately cocoa-trees. A high rocky cliff, inaccessible from the sea shore, runs between them. Near the coast, on the south side, the land has a rugged appearance; beyond which the country rises gradually, and abounds with cultivated inclosures, and groves of cocoa-trees. The habitations of the people are scattered about in great plenty. Round the bay the shore is covered with a black coral rock, except at Kakooa, where there is an excellent sandy beach, with a morai at one extremity, and a spring of fresh water at the other. The natives perceiving our intention to anchor in the bay, came off, as we have before observed, in astonishing numbers, expressing their joy by singing, shouting, and the most extravagant gestures. The decks, sides, and rigging of our ships were covered with them. Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, amused themselves the whole day in playing in the water. One of the chiefs who visited us, was named Pareea. Though a young man, we soon discovered him to be a person of great authority. He told Captain  
Cook

*London; Published as the Act directs, by Alex. T. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N<sup>o</sup> 16, Paternoster Row.*



Cook that he was Jakanee to the sovereign of the island, who was then on a military expedition at Mowee; from whence he was expected to return in a few days. Some presents from the commodore attached him to our interest, and we found him extremely useful. Before we had been long at anchor, the Discovery had so many people hanging on one side, that she was seen to heel considerably; and our people found it impossible to prevent the crowds from pressing into her. Apprehensive that she might receive some injury, Captain Cook communicated his sentiments to Pareea, who instantly cleared the ship of her incumbrances, and dispersed the canoes with which she was surrounded. From this circumstance it appeared to us, that the chiefs of this island exercise a most despotic power over the commonalty. An instance similar to this happened on board the Resolution; where the crowd so far impeded the ordinary business of the ship, that we found it necessary to apply to Kaneena, another chief, who had also attached himself particularly to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we suffered was no sooner mentioned, than he ordered the natives to quit the vessel immediately; when, without a moment's hesitation, we saw them all jump overboard, except one person who loitered behind, and by his manner expressed some degree of unwillingness to obey. Kaneena observing this contempt of his authority, took hold of him immediately, and threw him headlong into the sea. These two chiefs were exceedingly well proportioned, and had countenances remarkably pleasing. Kaneena was as fine a figure as we had ever seen. His height was about six feet, his features were regular and expressive, his deportment was easy, firm, and graceful, and he had lively dark eyes. Mention has already been made, that while we were cruising off this island, the inhabitants had acted fairly and honestly, without manifesting the least propensity to theft; which

was the more remarkable, because those with whom we had hitherto had any dealings were people of the lowest rank, such as fishermen and servants: but the case was now quite altered. The multitude of islanders who blocked up the ships, afforded an opportunity of pilfering without danger of discovery, and even if discovered, must have escaped with impunity from our inferiority of number. To the encouragement of their chiefs, this alteration might also be attributed; for, as we frequently traced the booty to some great men who had it in their possession, there is little doubt but these depredations were made at their instigation. When the Resolution had got into her station, the two chiefs, Pareea, and Kancena, brought a third on board, whose name was Koah. He was represented to us as a priest, and one who, in his early time of life, had distinguished himself as a warrior. He was a little old emaciated figure, having fore red eyes, and his body covered with a leprous scurf, occasioned by the immoderate use of the ava. Being conducted to the cabin, he approached the commodore with the greatest deference, threw a piece of red cloth over his shoulders, and retreating a few paces, made an offering of a small pig, at the same time pronouncing a discourse of a considerable length. This ceremony, during our continuance at Owhyhee, was often repeated, and, from a variety of circumstances, appeared to us to be a kind of religious adoration. Red cloth is what their idols are arrayed with, and a pig is their common offering to the Hatoos. At the conclusion of this ceremony, Koah dined with us, and eat heartily of what was provided for the table; but, like most of the islanders in these seas, he could hardly be induced to taste our wine or spirits a second time. In the evening, the commodore, Mr. King, and Mr. Bailey, accompanied him on shore. As soon as we landed on the beach, we were preceded by four men;

men, bearing each a wand tipped with dog's-hair, and pronouncing with a loud voice, a short sentence. The crowd which had assembled on the shore, retired at our approach, and not an individual was to be seen, except a few persons who had prostrated themselves on the ground, near the habitations of the adjacent village.

Previous to our account of the peculiar ceremonies respecting the homage paid to Captain Cook, it may not be unnecessary to describe the morai, already mentioned, situated on the beach of Kakooa. It consists of a square solid pile of stones, 40 yards in length, 20 broad, and 14 feet high. The top of it is flat, and it is surrounded with a wooden railing, whereon are displayed the skulls of those natives who had been sacrificed on the death of their chiefs. A ruinous wooden building is situated in the center of the area, connected with the railing by a stone wall, dividing the whole space into two parts. Five poles, about 20 feet high, supported an irregular kind of scaffold, on the side next the country; and on that towards the sea, were two small houses, with a covered communication. To the top of this pile we were conducted by Koah. At our entrance we saw two large wooden images, with most distorted features, having a long piece of wood of a conical form, inverted, proceeding from the top of their heads. Here Captain Cook was received by a tall young man, having a long beard, who presented him to the images, and chanted a kind of hymn, in which he was assisted by Koah. We were then led to that side of the morai where the poles were erected; at the foot of which 12 images were erected, and ranged in the form of a semicircle; the middle figure having a high table before it, like the whatta of Otaheite, on which we saw a putrid hog, and under it some cocoa-nuts, plantains, potatoes, bread-fruit, and pieces of sugar-cane. Captain Cook was conducted under this

stand by Koah; who, having took down the hog, held it towards him; when having again addressed him in a long and vehement speech, he suffered it to fall to the ground, and ascended the scaffold with him, though every moment in danger of falling. We now beheld, advancing in solemn procession, and entering the top of the morai, ten men bearing a live hog, and a piece of red cloth of considerable dimensions. Advancing a few paces they stopped, and prostrated themselves; and Kaireckea, the tall young man already mentioned, approaching them, received the cloth, and carried it to Koah, who wrapped it round the commodore, and made him an offering of the hog. The commodore was now aloft, in a situation truly whimsical, being swathed in red cloth, and hardly able to keep his hold on the rotten scaffolding. In this situation he was entertained with the chanting of Koah and Kaireckea, sometimes alternately and sometimes in concert. After this service was performed, which was of considerable duration, Koah let the hog drop; upon which he immediately descended with Captain Cook. He then conducted him to the images just mentioned, to each of which he expressed himself in a sneering tone, and snapped his fingers at them as he passed. He then presented him to that in the centre, which, from its being habited in red cloth, appeared to be in the highest estimation. Before this figure Koah fell prostrate, and requested of Captain Cook to do the same; which he readily submitted to, being determined to follow Koah's directions throughout the whole of a ridiculous ceremony, in which his curiosity and vanity were equally gratified. We were now conveyed into the other division of the morai, where a space of about 12 feet square was sunk three feet below the level of the area. When we had descended into this, the commodore was seated immediately between the two idols, one of his arms being supported by Koah,

and

and the other by Mr. King. A second procession of natives at this time arrived with a baked hog, a pudding, some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and other vegetables. As they drew near, Kaireekeca placed himself before them, and presented the hog to the commodore in the usual manner, chanting as before; and his companions making regular responses, but we observed their speeches and responses grew gradually shorter, and, towards the conclusion, Kaireekeca's did not exceed three or four words, which was answered by the word Orono. This was a common appellation among the natives. Sometimes it was applied by them to an invisible being, inhabiting heaven; at others it was used as a title of high rank in the island. At the conclusion of this offering, the natives seated themselves fronting us, and began to cut up the baked hog, to break the cocoa-nuts, and to peel the vegetables. Others were employed in chewing the ava, and making the liquor in the same manner as it is extracted and done at the Friendly Isles. Kaireekeca then chewed part of the kernel of a cocoa-nut, and wrapped it in a piece of cloth, with which he rubbed the captain's head, face, hands, arms and shoulders. The ava was afterwards handed round, and when we had all tasted it, Koah and Pareca pulled the flesh of the hog in pieces, and proceeded to put some of it in our mouths. Mr. King had no particular objection to being fed by Pareca, who was remarkably cleanly in his person; but Captain Cook, to whom a piece was presented by Koah, could not swallow a morsel, the putrid hog being strong in his recollection; and as the old man, from motives of civility, had chewed it for him, his reluctance was much increased. This ceremony being concluded, we quitted the morai, after distributing among the populace some pieces of iron, and other articles, with which they were much delighted. We were then conducted, in procession,

## 1736 COOK'S THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE

to the boats, the men with wands attending, and pronouncing sentences as before. We returned on board full of the idea of what we had seen, and perfectly satisfied with the honest dispositions of our new friends. Of the singularity and novelty of the various ceremonies performed upon this occasion, we can only form conjectures; but they were, in our opinion, highly expressive of respect, on the part of the inhabitants; and, as far as related to Captain Cook, they approached to adoration. Indeed the commodore now seemed to be considered by them as their E-a-thu-ah-nu-ch; for from this time an Indian Chief, by the king's order, was placed at the head of his pinnace, at whose command the natives, in their canoes, as he passed them, were all silent, and would prostrate themselves till he was out of sight; and this they would do when the captain was alone; but the chief had orders from the king, that whenever the captain came ashore in his pinnace, to attend him, and conduct him to his house, which the sailors now called Cook's Altar.

On Monday, the 18th, Mr. King went on shore, attended with a guard of eight marines, having received orders to erect the observatory in a proper situation; by which means the waterers, and other working parties, on shore, might be superintended and protected. When we had found a convenient spot for this purpose, almost in the centre of the village, Pareca offered to exercise his power in our behalf, and proposed that some houses should be taken, that our observations might not be obstructed. This friendly offer, however, was declined, and we made choice of a potatoe field adjoining to the morai, which was readily granted, and to prevent the intrusion of the natives, the place was consecrated by the priests, who placed their wands round the wall which enclosed it. This interdiction the natives call taboo, a term frequently repeated

*London Published by Alex<sup>r</sup> Hogg at the Kings Arms N<sup>o</sup> 16 Paternoster Row.*



*As seen by the Capt<sup>n</sup> COOK in SANDWICH ISLANDS*

repeated by these islanders, and seemed to be a word of extensive meaning. In this instance, it procured us more privacy than we could have wished. Not any canoes attempted to land near us; the natives only sat on the wall, not daring to come within the tabooed space, without permission from us. The men, indeed, at our request, would bring provisions into the field; but our utmost endeavours were ineffectual to induce the women to give us their company. Presents were tried, but without success. We endeavoured to prevail on Pareea and Koah to bring them: the Eatooa and Terrecooboo they said would kill them if they did. This circumstance afforded great amusement to those on board, whither multitudes of people, women particularly, flocked in shoals, inasmuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the vessel, in order to have room to perform their necessary duties. Two or three hundred women were sometimes obliged to throw themselves into the water, where they continued to swim and play, till they could be re-admitted. On the 19th Pareea and Koah left us, in order to attend Terrecooboo, who had landed on a distant part of the island. Nothing material happened on board, till Sunday, the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the sides of the ship, and the rigging was repaired. The salting of hogs was also a principal object of the commodore's attention; and as we had improved in this operation since the former voyages, a detail here of the process of it may not be thought improper. To cure the flesh of animals in tropical climates, by salting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction making so rapid a progress, as not to allow the salt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook appears to have been the first navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this business. His first attempts in 1774, in his second voyage to the Pacific Ocean, so far succeeded, as to

convince him of the error of the vulgar opinion ; and as his present voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time that provisions had been supplied for the ships, he was obliged to contrive some method of procuring subsistence for the crews, or relinquish the prosecution of his discoveries. He therefore renewed his attempts, and his most sanguine expectations were completely answered. The hogs we cured were of various sizes, from four to ten or twelve stone, fourteen pounds to the stone. They were always killed in the afternoon ; and, after scalding off the hair, and removing the entrails, the pig or hog was cut into pieces, from four to eight pounds each, and the bones taken out of the legs and chins ; in the larger hogs, the ribs were also taken out. The pieces were then examined circumspectly, and wiped, and the coagulated blood taken from the veins. After this they were given to the salters before they were cold ; and having been well rubbed with salt, they were placed in a heap on a stage in the open air, covered with planks, and pressed with very heavy weights. The next evening they were again well wiped, and carefully examined, when the-suspicious parts were taken away. This done, they were put into a tub of strong pickle ; after which they were examined once or twice a day ; and if it happened that any one piece had not taken the salt, which may be discovered by the smell of the pickle, they were instantly taken out and examined again, the found pieces being put into fresh pickle. This, however, did not often happen. At the end of six days, they were examined for the last time ; and after being slightly pressed, they were put into barrels, having a thin layer of salt between them. Mr. King brought home some barrels of this pork, that had been pickled at Owhyhee, in January, 1779, which was tasted in England, near Christmas, 1780, by several gentlemen, who were all unanimous in their opinion,

TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN, &c. 1939

opinion, that it was perfectly sound, sweet, and wholesome food. We have been informed by Mr. Mancouver, a midshipman on board the Discovery, and afterwards Lieutenant of the Martin sloop of war, that he tried the method here recommended, both with English and Spanish pork, during a cruise in the Spanish main, A. D. 1782, and it succeeded beyond his expectations.

END OF VOL. V.